



GENERAL AWARENESS

For All Competitive Exams





EDITION – **January-2025**

Copyright © 2024 by SIERRA INNOVATIONS PVT. LTD.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher. Breach of this condition is liable for legal action.

The moral right of the editor has been asserted.

Printed by SIERRA INNOVATIONS PVT. LTD. In India

For any complains, suggestions or feedback feel free to contact us on hello@toppersnotes.com

Head office – Toppersnotes
SIERRA INNOVATIONS PVT. LTD.
H- 176, Near Oswal Factory,
Malviya Nagar Industrial Area,
Malviya Nagar, Jaipur, Rajasthan-302017

Website- www.toppersnotes.com

Email- hello@toppersnotes.com

Phone – 9614-828-828

Table of Content

S No.	Chapter Title	Page No.
1	India–Size & Location	1
2	Physiographic Divisions of India	3
3	Indian Drainage System	20
4	Climate of India	34
5	Soil in India	40
6	Agriculture in India	43
7	Forests and Wildlife in India	46
8	Biodiversity and Conservation	54
9	Energy Resources in India	63
10	Mineral Resources in India	71
11	Industrial Regions of India	75
12	Transport in India	78
13	Harappan Civilization	83
14	Vedic Age	85
15	Jainism and Buddhism	88
16	Mahajanapadas (600–300 BC)	92
17	Mauryan Empire	93
18	Post–Mauryan Age	96
19	Sangam Age	98
20	Gupta Era	99
21	Post–Gupta Age	102
22	Early Medieval India (750–1200 AD)	104
23	Rajput Kingdoms	106

Table of Content

S No.	Chapter Title	Page No.
24	Arab Invasion	108
25	Delhi Sultanate	109
26	Mughal Empire	115
27	Maratha Empire and Other Regional States	120
28	Religious Movements in Medieval Period	125
29	Socio-Religious Reform Movements	131
30	Establishment of British Rule in India	138
31	Revolt of 1857	145
32	Moderate Phase of Indian National Congress	147
33	Extremist Phase (1905-1909)	149
34	The Mass Movement: Gandhian Era (1917-1925)	152
35	The Struggle for Swaraj (1925-1939)	155
36	Towards independence (1940-1947)	160
37	India on the Eve of Independence	166
38	Basics of Indian Constitution	167
39	Constitutional Amendment	175
40	Fundamental Rights	178
41	Directive Principle of State Policy	183
42	Fundamental Duties	185
43	President	186
44	Vice President	189
45	Prime Minister	190
46	Central Council of Ministers	191

Table of Content

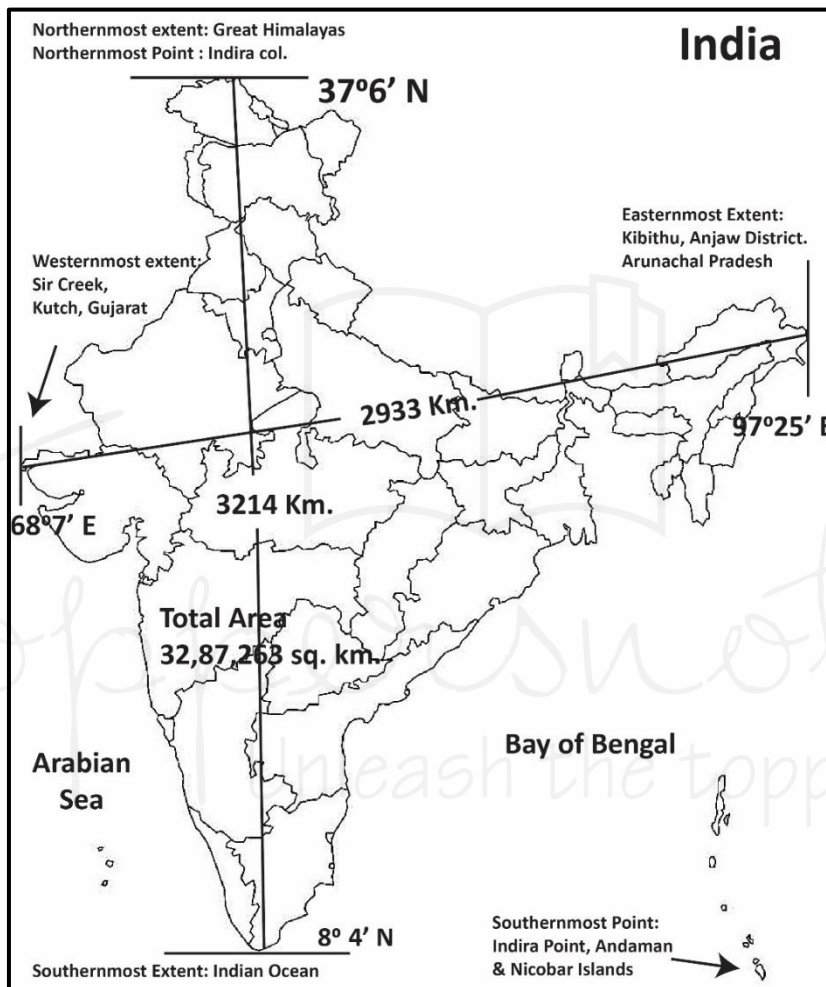
S No.	Chapter Title	Page No.
47	Parliament	192
48	Governor	199
49	Chief Minister	201
50	State Council of Ministers	202
51	State Legislature	203
52	Panchayati Raj	205
53	Municipalities	207
54	Supreme Court	209
55	High Court	210
56	Economic System and National Income	211
57	Five Year Plans in India	216
58	Poverty	218
59	Awards and Honours	221
60	Indian Dance	225
61	Fairs & Festivals	234
62	World Geography	239

1

CHAPTER

India-Size & Location

- **7th largest country** in the world.
- Situated in the **northern hemisphere (8°4'N to 37°6'N and 68°7'E to 97°25'E)**
 - India lies to the north of the equator between **6° 44' and 37°6'N latitude** and **68° 7' and 97° 25'** east longitude (including the islands).
- **Area: 32,87,263 sq. km (2.42% of the world)**
- **2nd most populated country in the world (17.5% of the world's population)**
- **Total land boundary = 15,200 km.**
- **Total Sea boundary = 7516.6 Km**
 - Without islands = 6100 Km



Border Countries:

North-west	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Afghanistan and Pakistan • Indo-Pak border: Radcliffe line • Pak - Afghanistan border: Durand Line
North	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • China, Bhutan and Nepal • Indo-China border: McMahon line
East	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Myanmar, Bangladesh • Longest boundary with Bangladesh
South	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sri Lanka • Separated by Palk Strait & Gulf of Mannar

States sharing International borders:

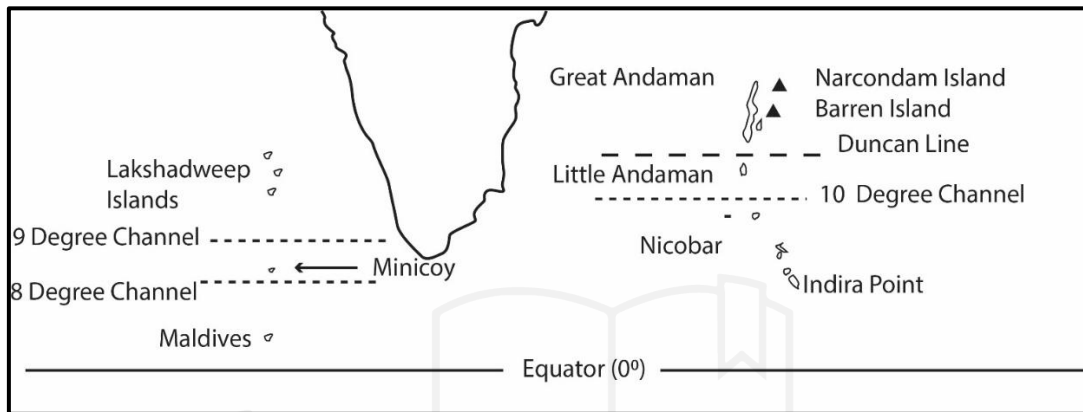
Bangladesh	5 States: West Bengal, Mizoram, Meghalaya, Tripura, and Assam (4096 km)
China	4 States and 1 UT: Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh and Ladakh (3488 km)
Pakistan	3 States and 2 UTs: J&K, Punjab, Gujarat, Rajasthan and Ladakh (3323 km)

Nepal	5 States: Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, West Bengal (1751km)
Myanmar	4 States: Arunachal Pradesh, Manipur, Mizoram, and Nagaland (1643 km)
Bhutan	4 States: Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Sikkim, and West Bengal (699 km)
Afghanistan	1 UT: Ladakh (106 km)

- **Indian Standard Meridian**
 - **82°30'E, Mirzapur(UP)** - India's Standard Meridian.

- **Ahead of meantime by 5 hours and 30 minutes.**
- **States through which IST Passes:** Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha and Andhra Pradesh.
- **Tropic of cancer (23°30'N)** - Gujarat, Rajasthan, MP, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, West Bengal, Mizoram, and Tripura.
- **Coastal states of India: 9** (West Bengal, Odisha, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Kerala, Karnataka, Goa, Maharashtra, and Gujarat)

Various Channels and their Location



- **Ten Degree Channel**
 - **Separates the Andaman Islands from the Nicobar Islands** in the Bay of Bengal
 - **150 km wide** from north to south and **10 km long** from east to west with a minimum depth of 7.3m.
- **Nine Degree Channel**
 - **Separates Minicoy island from the Lakshadweep archipelago.**
 - **200 km wide** with a **depth of 2597 metres.**
 - **Strategic importance:** Passage of major merchant shipping between Europe, the Middle East and Western Asia with South-East Asia and the far East.
- **Eight Degree Channel**
 - **Maritime boundary between the Maldives and India**
 - **Separates the islands of Minicoy and Maldives.**
 - Traditionally known as **Maliku Kandu** and **Māmalē Kandu Divehi.**

Duncan Passage

- A strait in the Indian Ocean.
- Located in between South Andaman and Little Andaman.
- Also lies within the EEZ of India, protected by the integrated tri-services Andaman and Nicobar Command of Indian Military.
- **Width: ~ 48km.**

2

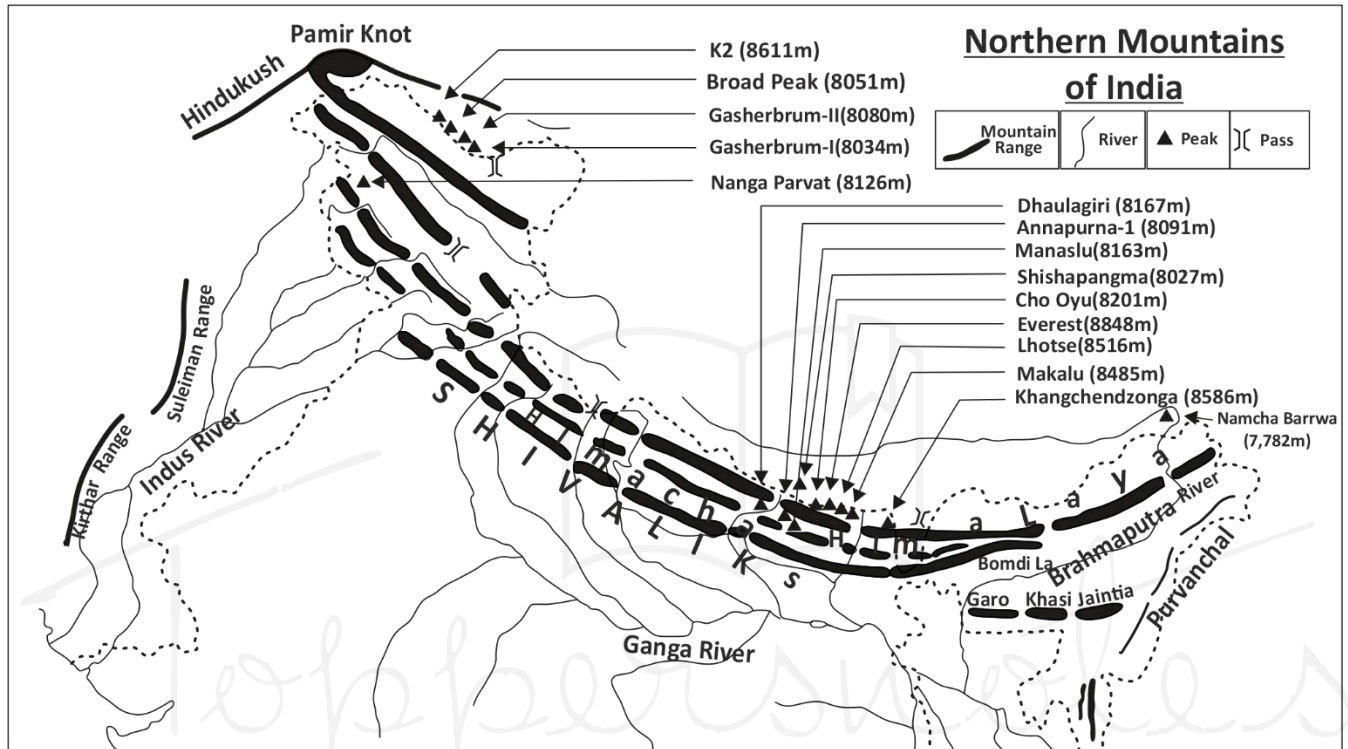
CHAPTER

Physiographic Divisions of India

Based on physical features, India is divided into six physiographic divisions:

- | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Himalayan Mountains | 2. Great Plains of India | 3. Peninsular Plateau |
| 4. Indian Desert | 5. Coastal Plains | 6. Islands |

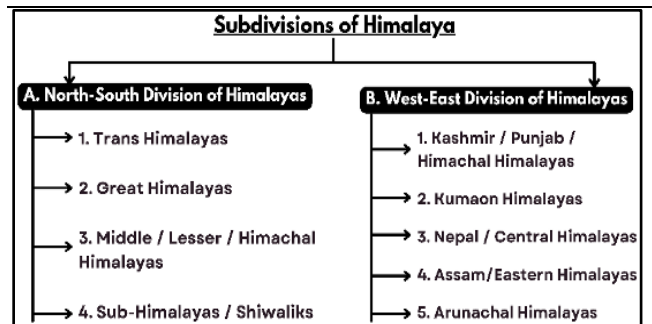
1. Himalayan Mountains



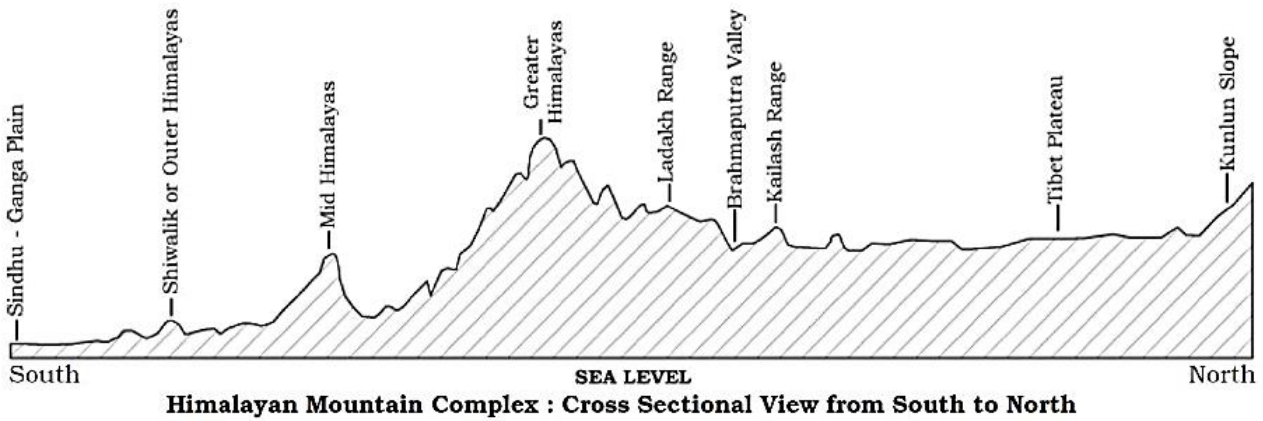
- **Highest and the youngest fold mountain ranges** of the world.
- **One of the highest earthquake-prone regions** of the world.
- **Length:** runs **west-northwest to east-southeast** in an arc **2,500 km long**.
 - **Western anchor:** **Nanga Parbat** (lies just south of the northernmost bend of the Indus River)
 - **Eastern anchor:** **Namcha Barwa** (lies immediately west of the great bend of the Yarlung Tsangpo River)
- **Width:** 400 km - 150 km (West- East).
- **Soaring heights, steep-sided jagged peaks, valley and alpine glaciers** often of stupendous size
- **Topography** deeply cut by **erosion**, seemingly **unfathomable river gorges, complex geologic structure, and series of elevational belts** (or zones)

- **Greater part of the Himalayas** lies below the snow line.
- The **mountain-building process** that created the range is still active.
- **Considerable stream erosion and gigantic landslides.**

Sub Divisions of the Himalayas



A. North-South Division of Himalayas



1. Trans-Himalayan Ranges:

- **Location:** North of the Great Himalayas
- Also known as **Tibetan Himalaya** because most of it lies in Tibet.
- **Lifted much before the Himalayas** between Jurassic and Cretaceous
- **Geologically not a part of the Himalayas.**
- **Start from Pamir Knot.**
- **Godwin Austen/ K2/ Qogir (8,611 m) - second highest peak in the world / highest peak in the Indian Union** found in Karakoram Range
- **Length- 1,000 km** in the east-west direction.
- **Average elevation - 5000 m** above mean sea level.
- **Average width - 40 km- 225 km** (extremities - central part).
- **Siachen glacier** - highest battlefield.
- **Glacier Baltaro** - largest Mountain glacier from the Karakoram range.
- **Karakoram Pass** - connects the **Aksai Chin**, an erosional plateau of an average height 5000m.
- **Main ranges:**

Karakoram Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Northernmost range of the Trans-Himalayan Ranges in India ● Also known as Krishnagiri range ● Extends eastwards from Pamir for about 800 km. ● Average elevation - 5,500 m and above.
Ladakh Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● North of the Zaskar Range ● Highest point - Rakaposhi ● Lies north of Leh. ● Merges with the Kailash range in Tibet. ● Important passes - Khardung La, and Digar La.
Zaskar Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A mountain range in the union territory of Ladakh. ● Separates Zaskar from Ladakh.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Average height - about 6,000 m. ● Acts as a climatic barrier protecting Ladakh and Zaskar from monsoon ● Major passes- Marbal Pass, Zojila Pass - extreme northwest. ● Major rivers- Hanle River, Khurna River, Zaskar River, Suru River (Indus), and Shingo River.
Kailas Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Offshoot of the Ladakh Range. ● Highest peak - Mount Kailash (6714 m). ● River Indus originates from the northern slopes of the Kailas range.

Ladakh Plateau

- **Cold desert**
- Lies to the **northeast of the Karakoram Range.**
- **Dissected into** many plains and mountains - **Soda Plains, Aksai Chin, Lingzi Tang, Depsang Plains and Chang Chenmo.**
- **Northwestern part** - Deosai mountains are the **end of the Trans-Himalayan region**

2. Great Himalayas:

- Also known as **Himadri.**
- **Average height** - 6000 m
- **Average width** - 25 km
- **Extension** - Mt. Namcha Barwa to Nanga Parbat (2400 km)- World's one of the longest-running fold mountain ranges
- **Features:** High relief, deep gorges, vertical slopes, symmetrical convexity, and antecedent drainage.
- **Terminates abruptly** at the **syntaxial bends.**
 - **Nanga Parbat** - north-west
 - **Namcha Barwa** - north-east.
- **Composed of metamorphic and sedimentary rocks.**

- **Core - Batholith** representing the intrusion of Magma (Granitic Magma)
- **Have asymmetrical folds** due to high compression, and they **have fractured rocks** in the **eastern part**.
- **14 of the 28 tallest peaks** in the world (> 8000 m) are situated here.
- **Major passes** - Zojila Pass (connects Srinagar with Leh), Shipki La Pass, Burzil Pass, Nathu La Pass etc.
- **Major glaciers** - Rongbuk glacier (largest in the Himadri), Gangotri, Zemu etc.
- **Separated from lesser Himalayas** by longitudinal **valleys** filled with sediments known as **Doons**.
 - Eg. Patli Dun, Chaukamba Dun, Dehradun etc.

3. Middle/ Lesser/ Himachal Himalaya:

- **Most rugged** mountain system.
- Lies **between** the **Shivaliks** in the south and the **Greater Himalayas** in the north.
- **Composed of highly compressed and altered rocks**.
- **Average altitude** - 3,700 - 4,500 metres.
- **Average width** - 50 to 80 Km.
- **Pir Panjal range - longest**
 - **Extends from Jhelum - upper Beas River** for over 300 km.
 - Rises to 5,000 metres and contains **mostly volcanic rocks**.
- **Passes:**
 - **Pir Panjal Pass** (3,480 m), the **Bidil** (4,270 m), **Gulabgarh Pass** (3,812 m) and **Banihal Pass** (2,835 m).
 - **Banihal Pass**- Jammu-Srinagar highway and Jammu-Baramulla railway.
- **Rivers:** Kishanganga, the Jhelum and Chenab.
- **Important Valleys**

Valley of Kashmir	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Between the Pir Panjal and the Zaskar Range (average elevation- 1,585 m) ● Composed of alluvial, lacustrine [lake deposits], fluvial [river action] and glacial deposits. ● Jhelum River meanders through these deposits and cuts a deep gorge in Pir Panjal.
Kangra Valley	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Extends from the foot of the Dhauladhar Range to the south of Beas.
Kullu Valley	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the upper course of the Ravi ● A transverse valley.

- **Most important range** - Dhaula Dhar and Mahabharat ranges.

- **Includes** famous valley of Kashmir, the Kangra and Kullu Valley in Himachal Pradesh.
 - Well known for its hill stations.
- **Cut across by the Jhelum and Chenab rivers**.
- **Dhauladhar ranges** – an extension of Pir Panjal into Himachal Pradesh - cut across by the river Ravi.
- **Mussoorie ranges** - divide the waters of Sutlej and Ganga
- Have **steep, bare southern slopes** [prevents soil formation] and gentler, **forest-covered northern slopes**.
- **Uttarakhand**- marked by **Mussoorie and Nag Tibba ranges**.

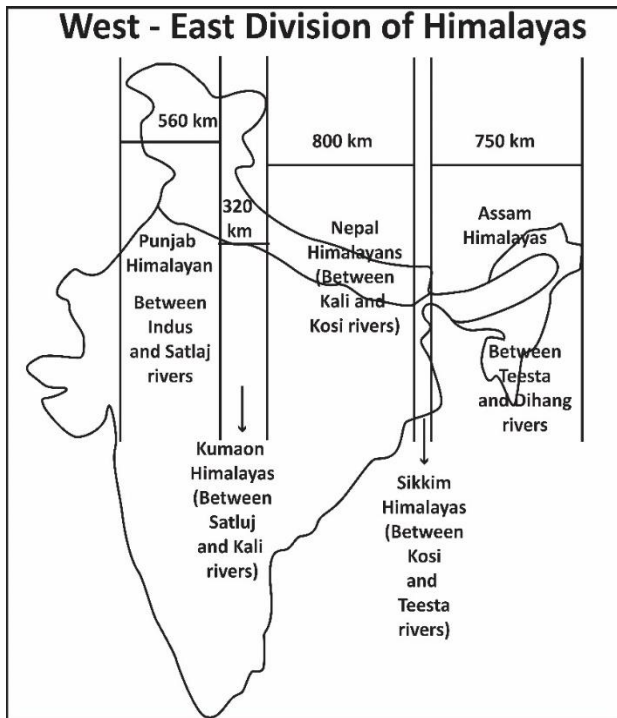
Important ranges of Lesser Himalayas	Region
Pir Panjal Range	Jammu and Kashmir (south of Kashmir Valley)
Dhauladhar Range	Himachal Pradesh
Mussoorie Range and Nag Tibba Range	Uttarakhand
Mahabharat Range	Nepal

4. Sub-Himalayas/ Shivaliks:

- Also known as **Outer Himalayas**.
- **Between Great Plains and Lesser Himalayas**.
- **Altitude**- 600-1500 metres.
- **Length**- 2,400 km - **Potwar Plateau to Brahmaputra valley**.
- **Southern slopes** - steep
- **Northern slopes** - gentle.
- **Width** - 50 km - 15 km (Himachal Pradesh -Arunachal Pradesh).
- **Almost unbroken except** for 80-90 km – **Tista and Raidak River valley**.
- Covered with **thick forests from North-East India up to Nepal**.
- **Southern slopes** in Punjab and Himachal Pradesh- almost **NO forest cover**.
- **Highly dissected by seasonal streams** - Chos.
- **Valleys** - part of **synclines** and **hills** - part of **anticlines**
- **Different names:**

Region	Name of Shivaliks
Jammu Region	Jammu Hills
Dafla, Miri, Abor and Mishmi Hills	Arunachal Pradesh
The Dhang Range, Dundwa Range	Uttarakhand
Churia Ghat Hills	Nepal

B. West-East Division of Himalayas



1. Kashmir / Punjab / Himachal Himalayas

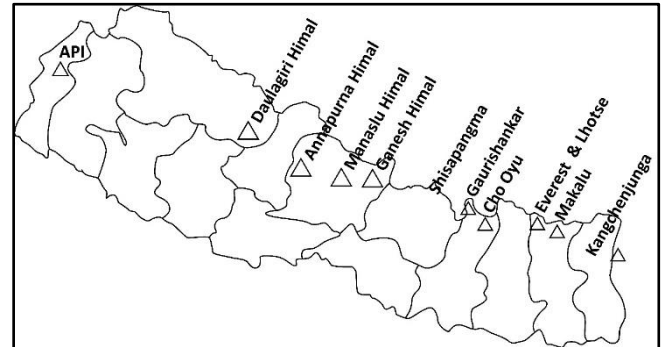
- Located **between Indus and Satluj gorge**
- **Length**- 560 kms
- **Width** - 320 kms
- **Zaskar range** - northern boundary and **Shivaliks** - Southern boundary
- **Characterized by** ridge and valley topography (Kashmir Valley is the syncline basin) formed by the Lacustrine deposits (**Karewas**- helpful in **growing saffron**- from Pulwama to Pampore) of Jhelum.
- **Major ox-bow lakes** - Wular lake, Dal Lake, etc.
- Also known as "**Vail of Kashmir**"
- **Rainfall** upto 100cm in **summers** and **snow** during **winters**
- **Only gateway to Kashmir** - **Banihal pass** - Jawahar tunnel (Second Largest in India)
- **Major passes**- Burzil pass, Zozila pass.

2. Kumaon Himalayas

- Located between **Satluj and Kali gorges**
- **Length**- 320 kms
- **Major mountain ranges** - Nag Tibba, Dhaula Dhar, Mussoorie, and the Greater Himalayas.
- **Major peaks** - Nandadevi, Kamet, Badrinath, Kedarnath, etc.
- **Major rivers** – Gangotri, Yamunotri, Pindari, etc.
- **Characteristics:**
 - **Snowfall** in winters
 - **Coniferous** forests above **3200m** and **Deodar** Forest between **1600-3200m**.
 - Has **tectonic valleys**- Kullu, Manali, and Kangra.
 - **Rainfall** of about 200cm in summers
 - **More prone to Seismicity** and landslides.

3. Nepal/ Central Himalaya

- **Length**- 800 km
- **Between Kali** in the west and **Tista** in the east.
- **Great Himalayas** attain a **maximum height** in this portion.
- **Major peaks**- Mt. Everest, Kanchenjunga, Makalu, Annapurna, Gosainthan and Dhaulagiri.
- **Lesser Himalaya** is known as **Mahabharat Lekh** here.
- **Major rivers**- Ghaghara, Gandak, Kosi, etc.
- **Major valleys**- Kathmandu and Pokhra lacustrine valleys (previously lakes).



4. Assam/ Eastern Himalayas

- **Length**- 750km
- Located between **Tista** in the **west** and **Brahmaputra** (Dihang gorges) in the **east**.
- Occupy **mainly Arunachal Pradesh** and **Bhutan**.
- **Narrow longitudinal valleys**
- **Rainfall > 200cms**.
- Show a **marked dominance of fluvial erosion** due to heavy rainfall.
- **Landslides** and **earthquakes** are very **common** as rocks are fractured
- **Inhabited by tribes**
- **Important peaks** - Namcha Barwa (7756 m), Kula Kangri (7554 m), Chomolhari (7327 m).
- **Major hills** - Also known as hills, Dafla hills, Miri hills, Abor hills, Mishmi hills, Namcha Barwa, Patkai bum, Manipur hills, Blue Mountain, Tripura range, and Braille range.
- **Major passes**- Bomdi La, Yong Yap, Diphu, Pangsau, Tse La, Dihang, Debang, Tunga, and Bom La.

5. Arunachal Himalayas

- **Form the eastern frontier** of the **Eastern Himalayas**.
- **Namcha Barwa** - **extreme east** of Arunachal Pradesh.
- **Earlier known as Assam Himalayas**.
- **Himalayan range** enters Arunachal Pradesh **from Bhutan** in the West Kameng district.
- **Characteristics**
 - **High ridges** and **low valleys**
 - **Altitude** - 800 m to 7,000 m above sea level.
 - **Extend** from the east of the Bhutan Himalayas - Diphu pass in the east.
 - **Dissected by the Brahmaputra**, which flows through a deep gorge after crossing Namcha Barwa.
- **Major tribes**- Monpa, Abor, Mishmi, Nyishi and the Nagas- practice Jhumming.

Purvanchal Himalayas

- Geologically considered **part of the Himalayas**
- Has **structural differences**, thus, **separated from the main Himalayan ranges**.
- Lies **south of the Brahmaputra valley**.
- Belong to **Arakan Yoma orogenesis**.
- Have **loose, fragmented sedimentary rocks** like shale, mudstone, sandstone, quartzite

- **Most fractured parts** of the Himalayas.
- **Naga fault line**- earthquakes and landslides
- **Rainfall** - 150-200 cm
- **Densely forested**
- **Elevation** decreases from **north to south**.
- **Convex to the west**.
- **Low hills** where Jhum cultivation is prevalent.
- **Major Hills:**

Dafila Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: north of Tezpur and north Lakhimpur ● Bounded on west by the Aka Hills and on the east by the Abor Range.
Abor Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: region of Arunachal Pradesh in NE of India, near China border ● Bordered by Mishmi Hills and Miri Hills. ● Drained by the Dibang River, a tributary of the Brahmaputra.
Mishmi Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: southward extension of the Great Himalayan ranges. ● Northern and eastern parts touch China.
Patkai Bum Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: India's NE border between Arunachal Pradesh and Myanmar. ● "Patkai" - "to cut chicken" in Tai-Ahom language. ● Originated by the same tectonic processes that resulted in the formation of the Himalayas in the Mesozoic. ● Have conical peaks, steep slopes and deep valleys ● Not as rough as the Himalayas. ● Whole region is surrounded by forests composed of sandstones.
Naga Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: extending into Myanmar forms a divide between India and Myanmar. ● Highest peak - Saramati. ● Receive a heavy monsoon rainfall and densely forested.
Manipur Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: north of Nagaland, Mizoram in the south, upper Myanmar in east and Assam in the west bound Manipur Hills. ● Border between Manipur and Myanmar. ● Loktak Lake - only floating national park of the world. ● Keibul-Lamjao national park situated here.
Mizo Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location- south-eastern Mizoram state. ● Formerly known as Lushai Hills. ● Highest part- Blue Mountain. ● Part of the North Arakan Yoma system. ● Also known as 'Molasses basin' - made up of soft unconsolidated deposits. ● Shifting agriculture and some terrace cultivation practised.
Tripura Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● series of parallel north-south folds, decreasing in elevation to south. ● Merge into greater Ganges-Brahmaputra lowlands (aka Eastern Plains).
Mikir Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location- south of the Kaziranga National Park, Assam. ● Part of the Karbi Anglong Plateau. ● Mikir Hills - oldest landform in Assam. ● Radial drainage pattern ● Major rivers- Dhansiri and Jamuna. ● Highest peak – Dambuchko.
Garo Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: Meghalaya state. ● Highest peak: Nokrek Peak.
Khasi Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of Garo-Khasi Range in Meghalaya. ● Cherrapunji - East Khasi Hills. ● Highest peak: Lum Shyllong.
Jaintia Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: further to the east of the Khasi Hills.
Barail Hill	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Location: North Cachar Hill District. ● Southwestern extension of the Patkai Range. ● Runs in a south-westerly direction from southern Nagaland and parts of northern Manipur up to the Jaintia Hills of Meghalaya.

Himalayan Passes

1. Passes of Jammu and Kashmir and Ladakh

Banihal Pass (Jawahar Tunnel)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A famous pass in Jammu and Kashmir. Situated in Pir- Panjal Range. Connects Banihal with Qazigund.
Zoji La	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connects Srinagar with Kargil and Leh. Border Road Organization- clears and maintains the road, especially during winter.
Burzil Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Srinagar- Kishan Ganga Valley Joins the Valley of Kashmir with the Deosai Plains of Ladakh.
Pir-Panjal Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A traditional pass from Jammu to Srinagar. Closed after the partition. Shortest roadway access to Kashmir valley from Jammu.
Qara Tagh Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Located in the Karakoram Mountains. A subsidiary of the ancient silk route.
Khardung La	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Highest motorable pass in the country (5602 m). Connects Leh and Siachen glaciers. Closed during the winter.
Thang La	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Located in Ladakh. Second highest motorable mountain pass in India.
Aghil Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> North of Mount Godwin-Austen in Karakoram. Connects Ladakh with Xinjiang province of China.
Chang-La	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connects Ladakh with Tibet.
Lanak La	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aksai Chin in Ladakh region. Connects Ladakh and Lhasa. Chinese authorities have built a road to join Xinjiang with Tibet.
Khunjerab Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kashmir and China On the Indo-China border
Mintaka Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kashmir and China Tri Junction of India-China and Afghanistan border

2. Passes of Himachal Pradesh

Shipki La Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Passes through Sutlej Gorge. Connects Himachal Pradesh with Tibet. India's 3rd border post for trade with China (Lipu Lekh and Nathula Pass)
Bara-Lacha Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Himachal Pradesh- Leh-Ladakh Situated on the National Highway in Jammu and Kashmir. Connects Manali and Leh.
Debsa Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Joins Spiti and Parvati Valley. Between the Kullu and Spiti of

	<p>Himachal Pradesh.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bypass route of Pin-Parvati Pass.
Rohtang Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High road transportation- high jams Connects Kullu, Spiti, and Lahaul.

3. Passes of Uttarakhand

Lipu Lekh	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connects Uttarakhand with Tibet. Important border post for trade with China. The pilgrims for Kailash-Manasarovar travel through this pass.
Mana Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Located in the Greater Himalayas. Connects Tibet with Uttarakhand. Remains under snow for six months during winter.
Mangsha Dhura Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connects Uttarakhand-Tibet. Known for landslides. Pilgrims for Manasarovar cross this route.
Muling La	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seasonal pass Connects Uttarakhand with Tibet Snow covered during the winter season
Niti Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Joins Uttarakhand with Tibet. Remains snow-covered during the winter season.
Trail's Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Situated at the end of the Pindari glacier. Connects the Pindari valley to Milam valley. Steep and rugged.

4. Passes of Sikkim

Nathu La Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Located on the India- China border. Forms a part of an offshoot of the ancient silk route. One of the trading borders posts between India and China.
Jelep La Pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Passes through the Chumbi valley. Connects Sikkim with Lhasa, the capital of Tibet.

5. Passes of Arunachal Pradesh

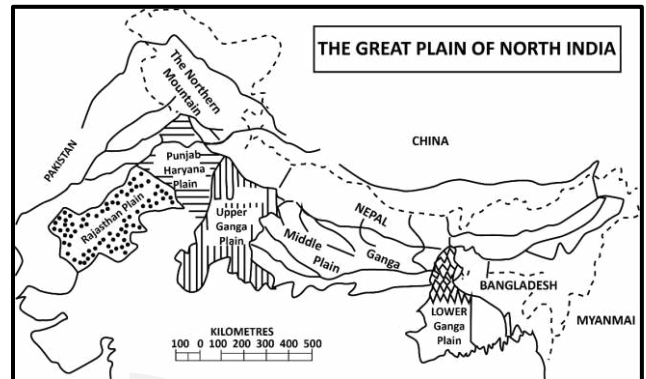
Bomdi-La	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connects Arunachal Pradesh- Lhasa, the capital city of Tibet. Located in the east of Bhutan.
Dihang pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Located in the Northeastern states of Arunachal Pradesh. Connects Arunachal Pradesh with Myanmar (Mandalay)
Diphu pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An alternate route to Myanmar. Remains open throughout the year for transportation and trade.
Lekhapani	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remains open throughout a year for transport and trade. Connects Arunachal Pradesh with Myanmar.
Pangsang Pass	Connects Arunachal Pradesh and Myanmar .

Yonggyap Pass	Connects Arunachal Pradesh with Tibet
Kumjawng Pass	Connects Arunachal Pradesh with Myanmar
Hpungan Pass	Connects Arunachal Pradesh with Myanmar
Chankan Pass	Connects Arunachal Pradesh with Myanmar
Tuju Pass:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Manipur. ● Connects Imphal to Myanmar. 	

2. Great Plains of India

- Lie to the **south of Shiwalik** separated by the Himalayan Front Fault (HFF).
- A **transitional zone between the Himalayas and Peninsular India.**
- **Aggradation plain** formed by **alluvial deposits of the Indus, Ganga, Brahmaputra** and their tributaries.
- Stretches for about **2400 km from west to east.**

- **Width-** 90-100 in Assam, 160 km near Rajmahal (Jharkhand), 200 km in Bihar, 280 km near Allahabad and 500 km in Punjab. (Increases from east to west.)
- **Consists largely of alluvial deposits** brought down by rivers of the Himalayan and the Peninsular region.
 - **Maximum depth > 8000 metres** - Ambala, Yamunanager and Jagadhri (Haryana).
- Merges into the **Thar Desert** in the **southwest.**
- A **low watershed of the Delhi ridge** (278 m) + **Yamuna River separates the Satluj plains** (a part of the Indus plain) from the **Ganga plains.**



Divisions of the Great Plains

A. North-South Division of Great Plains of India

1. Bhabar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Along the foot of Siwaliks with remarkable continuity from Indus to Tista. ● 8-16 km wide belt consisting of gravel and unassorted sediments ● Deposited by Himalayan rivers in the foreland zone due to sudden slope break. ● Himalayan rivers deposit their loads along the foothills in the form of alluvial fans. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Coarser sediments merged to build up piedmont plain/ Bhabar. ● Most unique feature - porosity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Porous due to the deposition of a huge number of pebbles and rock debris across the alluvial fans. ○ Not suitable for agriculture ● Comparatively narrow in the east
2. Tarai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 10-20 km wide marshy region in the south of Bhabar and runs parallel to it. ● Wider in eastern parts of the Great Plains - Brahmaputra valley due to heavy rainfall. ● Re-emergence of underground streams of the Bhabar belt ● Most of Terai land (especially in Punjab, Uttar Pradesh and Uttarakhand) has been reclaimed and turned into agricultural land over some time. ● Receives high rainfall and has excessive humidity. ● Has underground streams → ground marshy. ● Suitable for wheat, maize, rice, rice, sugarcane, etc.
3. Khadar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Younger alluvium of flood plains of numerous rivers ● Also known as Bet/betlands (in Punjab). ● Contains new alluvial deposits along the course of the river. ● Alluvium – light-coloured and poor calcareous matter consisting of sand, silt, mud and clay deposits. ● Suitable for extensive cultivation. ● Rivers in the Punjab-Haryana plains have broad floodplains of Khadar flanked by bluffs known as Dhayas.
4. Bangar or Bhangar Plains	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Uplands (alluvial terrace) formed by deposition of older alluvium. ● Lies above the flood limit of the plains. ● Main constituent: clay. ● Rich in humus - high yield.

- **Contains** Calcium Carbonate nodules known as **‘Kankars’** - impure and found in doabs
- **Regional variations:**
 - **Barind plains**- the deltaic region of Bengal
 - **Bhur formations** - middle Ganga and Yamuna doab.
 - **‘Reh’, ‘Kollar’ or ‘Bhur’** - Drier areas- exhibit small tracts of saline and alkaline efflorescence.

B. Regional Classification of Great Plains

1. Sindh Plain

- Lies in **Pakistan**
- Mainly **formed of the Bhangar Plains.**
- **Dhors: Long narrow depressions** - remnants of the course of **former rivers.**
- **Dhand: Alkaline lakes on some Dhors.**

2. Rajasthan Plains

- **Occupied by Thar Desert.**
- An **undulating plain** (average elevation - 325 m above mean sea level).
- **Desert region known as Marusthali** forms a greater **part of the Marwar plain.**
- Has a few outcrops of **gneisses, schists and granites**
 - Proof that it is **geologically a part of the Peninsular Plateau.**
- **Eastern part is rocky**, while the **western part has shifting sand dunes.**
- **Eastern part of Thar Desert till Aravalli Range - Rajasthan Bangar-** semi-arid plain.
- **Drained by several short seasonal streams** from the Aravali and **supports agriculture** in some patches of fertile tracts.
- **Luni** – a significant **seasonal stream** which **flows into Rann of Kutch.**
- **Tract north of Luni - thali** or sandy plain.

3. Punjab Plain

- Form the **western part of northern plain.**
- Majorly in **Pakistan.**
- **Divided into many Doabs.** Formed by **5 important rivers** of the Indus system.
- **Literally means “(The Land of Five Waters”** referring to: **Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Sutlej, and Beas.**

Sindh Sagar Doab	between the Indus and Jhelum rivers.
Jech Doabs/ Chaj Doab	between the Jhelum and Chenab rivers.
Rechna Doab	between the Chenab and Ravi rivers.

Bari Doabs	between the Ravi and Beas rivers.
Bist Doab	between the Beas and Sutlej rivers.

- **Total area** - 1.75 lakh sq km.
- **Average elevation** - 250 m above mean sea level.
- **Eastern boundary** - Delhi-Aravali ridge.
- **Northern part** [Shivalik hills] is **intensively eroded** by numerous **streams** called **Chaos.**
 - Resulted in **enormous gullying.**
- **South of Satluj river - Malwa plain** of Punjab.
- **Area between the Ghaggar and Yamuna rivers - ‘Haryana Tract’.**
 - **Water divide b/w Yamuna and Satluj** rivers.

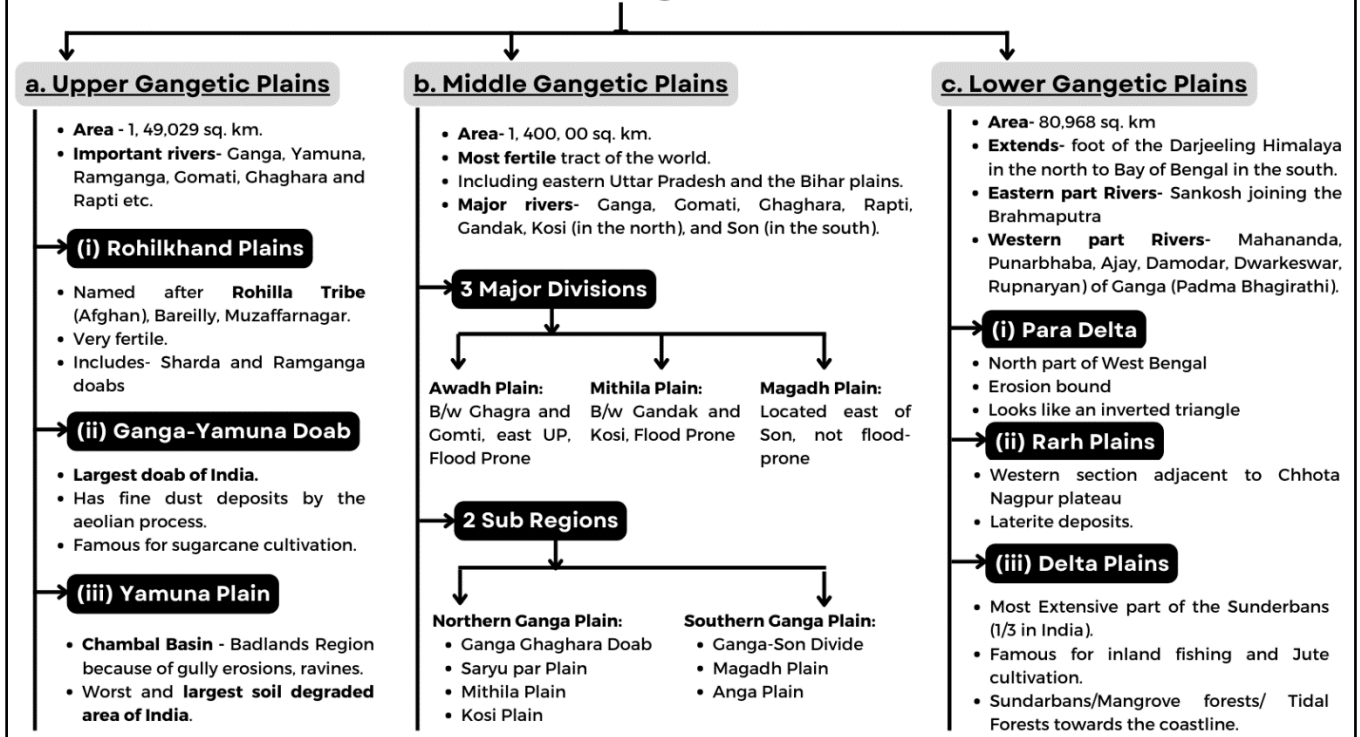
Other Doabs of India:

- **Malwa Doab:** Covers Madhya Pradesh and parts of north-eastern Rajasthan.
- **Raichur Doab:** A triangular region of Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka lying between Krishna and its tributary Tungabhadra River.

4. Ganga Plain

- **Extend from Yamuna River** in west to **western borders of Bangladesh** (~ 1,400 km).
- **Average width** - 300 km.
- **Maximum height** - Saharanpur (276m) - decreases towards Sagar Islands (3 m).
- **Largest unit of Great Plain** of India - from **Delhi to Kolkata** (about 3.75 lakh sq km).
- **Major Himalayan river-** Ganga.
- **Peninsular rivers** - Chambal, Betwa, Ken, Son, etc. (join Ganga river system - contribute to formation of this plain).
- **Slope** - east and south east.
- **Rivers flow sluggishly in lower sections of Ganges** resulting in levees, **bluffs, oxbow lakes, marshes, ravines**, etc.
- **Rivers keep shifting their courses** making this area **prone to frequent floods.**
 - **Kosi river-** ‘Sorrow of Bihar’.

Divisions of Ganga Plains



5. Brahmaputra/Assam Plains

- Area- 56,274 sq. km
- **Easternmost part** of Great Plains
- Aggradation plain built up by the **Brahmaputra and its tributaries.**
- **Extend** from Sadiya (in the east) to Dhubri (near the Bangladesh border in the west).
- **Majuli** (area 929 km²)- **largest river island** in the world.
- **Large marshy tracts** → formation of **terai or semi-terai conditions.**
- **2 sub-regions:**
 - Upper Assam Valley
 - Lower Assam Valley

3. Indian Desert

A. Sandy Thar Desert

- **India**- ~ 85% of Thar Desert
- **Rest**- in Pakistan.
- 4.56% of the **total geographical area** of India.
- **Geographical characteristics:**
 - **Location:** partly in **Rajasthan** and partly in **Punjab and Sindh.**
 - **Area:** > 2,00,000 sq. km.
 - **Rainfall**< 150 mm per year- arid climate with **low vegetation cover.**
 - Forms a **natural boundary** along the **border** Between **India** and **Pakistan.**
 - Came into **existence** in the **Pleistocene age.**
 - Believed to be **submerged in sea** during the **Mesozoic era.**
 - **Evidence** - wood fossils park at Aakal and marine deposits around Brahmsar, near Jaisalmer.

- **Underlying rock structure** of desert – the **extension** of the **Peninsular plateau.**
- **Major desert land features** - mushroom rocks, shifting dunes and oasis (mostly in its southern part).
- Also known as **Marustali** (the dead land) and **Bagar.**
- Comprises of **aeolian wind deposits**
- **Dry climate** and **alluvial deposits**
- **2 parts:**
 - **Northern part** - sloping towards Sindh.
 - **Southern part** - towards Rann of Kutch.
- **Most rivers** in this region are **ephemeral.**
- **Sand dunes** - elevation 150 m
- **Metamorphic Rocks**
- **Short seasonal streams** originating from Aravallis
- **Oasis** in its **southern part**
- **High** and **low dunes** separated by sandy plains and low barren hills, or bhakars, rise abruptly from the surrounding plains.
 - **Dunes** - continual motion and varying shapes and sizes.
 - **Barchan/Barkhan**- crescent-shaped sand dune produced by the action of wind
- **Climate:**
 - **Subtropical desert climate** - persistent **high pressure** and **subsidence.**
 - **Southwest Monsoon rainfall** in the summer seasons.
 - **Low annual rainfall** (4-20 inches) as compared to the other parts of India.
 - **Coldest month** - January
 - **Hottest month** - May and June.

- **Average temperature -**
 - **Summers-** 75-70 degrees Celsius
 - **Winters-** 39-50 degrees Celsius
- **Biodiversity and Vegetation:**
 - **Major features:**
 - **Drought-resistant scrub trees** like khejri and propolis
 - **Animals** like blackbucks, gazelle, and partridges
 - **Migratory birds** such as ducks, geese, and grouse.
 - **Herbaceous plants** like cactus, neem, khejri, acacia nilotica-can accommodate **varying temperatures** and **difficult climatic conditions**.
 - **Wild animals** like leopard, Asiatic wild cat (*Felis silvestris ornata*), chousingha (*Tetracerus quadricornis*), chinkara (*Gazella bennettii*), Bengal desert fox (*Vulpes bengalensis*), Blackbuck (antelope) and several species of **reptiles**.

- **Harsh natural environment** and **extreme temperature variations** - severely inhibit vegetation growth.

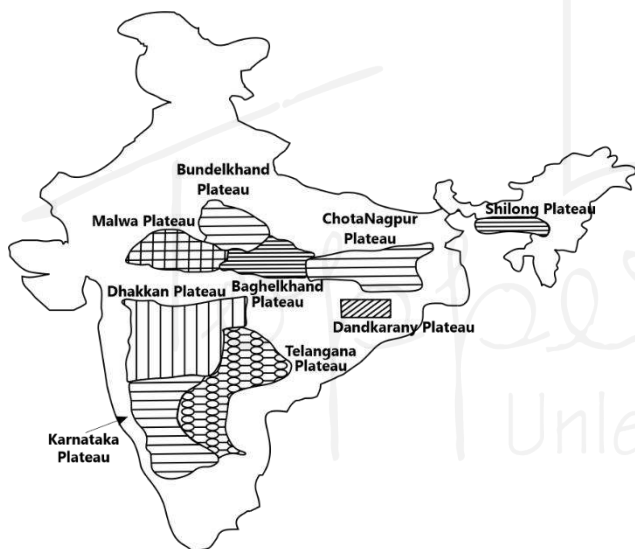
B. Cold Desert

- Located in **Kashmir and Himachal Pradesh**.
- Somewhere **Between Tibet and India**
- **Harsh climatic conditions** - low rainfall and high elevation (3000 – 5000m above Sea Level).
- **Blizzards, snowstorms and avalanches are common**.
- **Soil is not very fertile**
- **Very short growing seasons**.
- **Minimal water resources** - glacier-fed streams.

C. White Salt Desert of Kutch

- Also known as **White Rann** or Great Rann of Kutch.
- **Area-** 2898 square miles
- **Covers-** Gujarat and Sind region in Pakistan.
- **Overall covering of white salt** furnishing it a **snow-covered aura**.
- **Extreme temperatures:**
 - **Summers:** 50 degree celsius
 - **Winter-** < 0 degree celsius.

4. Peninsular Plateau



- Roughly **triangular** in shape.
- **Extension:**
 - **Apex** - at Kanyakumari.
 - **NW-** Delhi ridge
 - **East-** Rajmahal hills
 - **West-** Gir range
 - **South-** Cardamom hills
- An **extension** also seen in **northeast** i.e. **Shillong** and **Karbi-Anglong plateau**.
- **Area** - 16 lakh sq km (India as a whole is 32 lakh sq km).
- **Height-** 600-900 m above sea level (varies from region to region).
- Most rivers flow **west to east**, indicating general slope.
- **Ranges:**

- **Exception:** Narmada-Tapti flows - east to west.
- One of the **oldest** and **most stable landforms** of earth.
- **Highly stable block** composed mostly of **Archaean gneisses** and **schists**.
- Made up of different **patland plateaus** like Hazaribagh plateau, the Palamu plateau, the Ranchi plateau, the Malwa plateau, the Coimbatore plateau and Karnataka plateau, etc.
- **Important physiographic features:** tors, block mountains, rift valleys, spurs, bare rocky structures, series of hummocky hills and wall-like quartzite dykes offering natural sites for water storage.
- **3 groups on the basis of relief features**

A. Central Highlands

- **Northern part** of the peninsular plateau.
- **Also known as** Madhya Bharat Pathar/ Madhya Bharat Plateau/ Central Highlands.
- **East of the Marwar** or Mewar Upland.
- **Location:**
 - **North of Narmada River**.
 - **West - Aravallis**.
 - **South- Satpura** ranges (formed by a series of scarp plateaus)
- **General Elevation:** 700-1,000 m
- **Slopes** - north and northeastern directions.
- **Rivers:**
 - **Chambal river** - rift valley.
 - **Kali Sindh-** flows from Rana Prataph Sagar.
 - **Tributaries-** Banas, Parwan and Parbati.

Aravalli	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One of the oldest mountain ranges. • Sedimentary, metamorphosed rocks. • Elevation- 400-600 m (few hills well above 1,000 m). • Presently, seen as a discontinuous ridge from Delhi to Ajmer • Highest peak- Gurushikhar, Mt Abu (1722m). • Regional names- 'Jarga' near Udaipur and 'Delhi Ridge' near Delhi.
Vindhya range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Source of many north-flowing rivers that meet Yamuna. • Represents the water divide of central India. • Major river: Mahi <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Origin from north side of Vindhya ○ A west-flowing river. • As an escarpment running parallel to the Narmada-Son valley • Location: Gujarat, Rajasthan border to MP., UP, Chhattisgarh and Jharkhand • 3 major divisions: Bharner hills, Kaimur hills and Parasnath hills • General elevation: 300- 650 m. • Most made up of sedimentary rocks of ancient ages. • Watershed Between Gangetic and peninsular river systems.
Satpura range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run Between Narmada and Tapi, parallel to Maharashtra-MP border. • Found from Gujarat (Rajpipla hills) to Chhattisgarh. • Major part in MP • 3 divisions: Rajpipla hills, Mahadev hills and Maikal hills • A block mountain having India's biggest rift valley. • Major rivers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ North - Narmada ○ South - Tapti • Major folds: Maikal Hills, Mahadeo Hills near Pachmarhi, Kalibhit, Asirgarh, Bijargarh, Barwani and Arwani (extends to Rajpipla Hills in Eastern Gujarat). • Highest peak- Dhupgarh (1,350 m) near Pachmarhi (Mahadev Hills). • Amarkantak (1,127 m) - highest peak -Maikal Hills- origin of Narmada and Son.
Kaimur Range	Eastern portion of the Vindhya Range in MP, UP & Bihar; runs parallel to river Son
Mahadeo Range	Forms the central part of the Satpura Range, located in MP, Highest peak: Dhoopgarh
Maikal Range	Eastern part of the Satpuras range (MP)
Ajanta Range	Maharashtra, south of river Tapi, sheltering caves of world-famous paintings of Gupta period
Rajmahal Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Located in Jharkhand made up of lava basaltic rocks • Point of Ganges bifurcation

• **Major Plateaus**

Marwar upland or Mewar Plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to the east of Aravallis in Rajasthan • A rolling plain carved by the Banas River and its tributaries Berach river Khari rivers. • Average elevation - 250-500 m above sea level. • Composed of sandstone, shales and limestones of Vindhyan period.
Madhya Bharat Pathar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • East of Marwar upland. • Also known as Central Highland. • Major river- Chambal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Kali-Sindh, Banas, and Parbati.
Malwa plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lies in Madhya Pradesh Between Aravali and Vindhya. • Composed of an extensive lava flow- black soils. • Narmada river - southern boundary. • Forms a triangle based on the Vindhyan Hills, bounded by <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Aravali Range - west ○ Madhya Bharat Pathar- north ○ Bundelkhand- east. • 2 systems of drainage; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Arabian sea (The Narmada, the Tapi and the Mahi) ○ Bay of Bengal (Chambal and Betwa, joining the Yamuna).
Bundelkhand plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lies along the borders of UP and MP. • Intensive erosion, semi-arid climate - unfit for cultivation. • Divided by deep valley uplands of the 'Bundelkhand Gneiss', consisting of granite and gneiss. • Boundaries: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Yamuna river - north

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Madhya Bharat Pathar - west ○ Vindhyan Scarp lands- east ○ South-east and Malwa Plateau - south. ● Average elevation- 300-600 m above sea level ● Slopes down from Vindhyan Scarp toward Yamuna River. ● Characterized by senile (caused by old age) topography. ● Rivers: Betwa, Dhasan and Ken.
Baghelkhand plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Lies north to east of the Maikal range. ● 3 States - UP, MP, and Chhattisgarh ● Made of limestone and sandstone in the west and granite in the east. ● Separates Ganga basin from Mahanadi basin. ● Bounded by the Son river in the north. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Rihand Dam and Govind Ballabh Pant Sagar reservoir (largest manmade lake in India). ● Contains Dharwar and Gondwana rocks. ● Major coal fields- Sohagpur, Shahdol coal field ● Central segment acts as a water divide Between Son drainage system (north) and Mahanadi River system (south). ● General elevation : 150 m to 1,200 m
Chota Nagpur plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● North-east part of the Peninsular plateau. ● Composed mainly of Gondwana rocks. ● Average elevation: 600 to 700 m above sea level. ● Consists of a series of step-like sub-plateaus known as patlands. ● Mineral rich plateau ● Also known as Ruhr of India. ● Major rivers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Son - north-west boundary. ○ Damodar, Subarnarekha, North Koel, South Koel and Barkar. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Damodar- flows through the rift valley from west to east. ● Gondwana coal fields (most coal supply in India) found here. ● Rajmahal Hills - northeastern border <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Covered by lava flows (Basaltic). ○ Spread in a north-south direction ○ Average elevation - 400 m .
Kathiawar plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In Kathiawar region of Gujarat ● Has many pipe-like volcanic openings giving rise to many hill ranges like Girnar range, Junagarh range, Pavagadh range etc. ● Lake Nalsarovar (bird sanctuary) - Northeast boundary. ● Little Rann- north. ● Volcanic hills- Mandav hills and Balda hills. ● Highest point: Mt. Girnar.

B. Deccan Plateau

- **Triangular in shape**.
- **Boundaries**
 - Satpura and the Vindhya- north-west
 - Mahadev and Maikal- north
 - Western Ghats - west
 - Eastern Ghats - east.
- **Average elevation** - 600 m.
 - Rises to **1000 m in south** but subsides to **500 m in the north**.
- **Broadly divided into**:

- **Slope** - west to east (evidenced by flow of rivers).
- **Largest** plateau in **India**
- **Volcanic** in origin.
- **Sedimentary layers** Between layers of solidified lava- **inter-trapping structure**
- **Black soil belt** known as **Deccan trap**.
 - Good for **cotton** and **sugarcane** cultivation
 - Home to rich **mineral resources**
 - Good **hydroelectric power capacity**.

Maharashtra Plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Northern part of Deccan Plateau. ● Underlain by basaltic rocks of lava origin. ● Resembles a rolling plain due to the weathering. ● Horizontal lava sheets → formation of typical Deccan Trap topography. ● Covered by black cotton soil known as regur.
Karnataka Plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Also known as Mysore plateau. ● Tapers to south Between Western and Eastern Ghats; merges with Nilgiris. ● Lies to south of Maharashtra plateau.

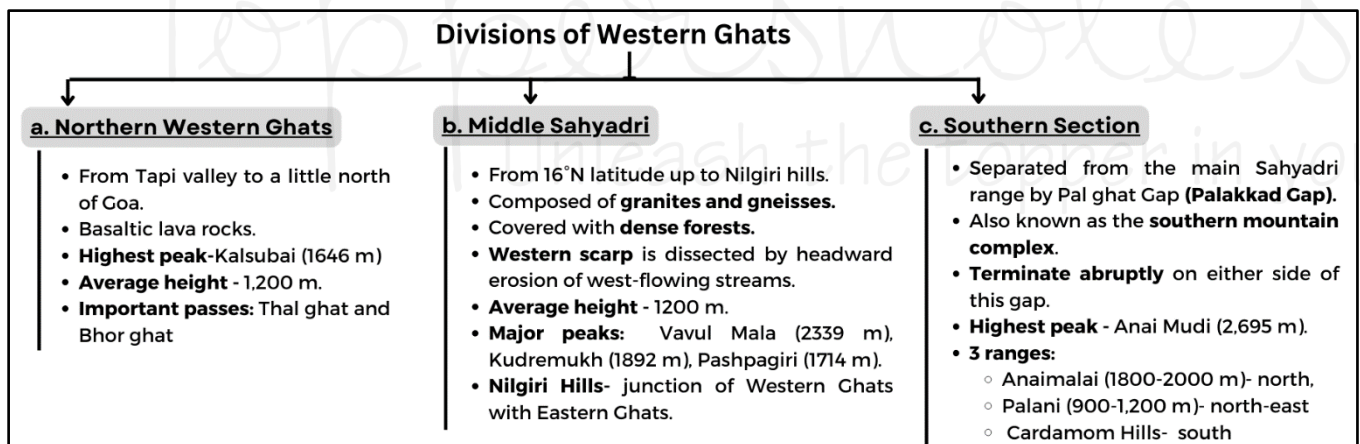
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Baba Budan hills - iron ores ● Resembles a rolling plateau. ● Average elevation - 600-900 m. ● Intensely dissected by rivers from the Western Ghats. ● Highest peak- Mullayanagiri - Baba Budan Hills - Chikmagalur. ● 2 parts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Malnad- a hilly region covered with dense forests. ○ Maidan- rolling plain with low lying granitic hills.
Telangana plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Consists of Archaean gneisses. ● Average elevation - 500-600 m. ● Southern part is higher than the northern counterpart. ● Divided into Ghats and Peneplains ● Made up of Dharwar rocks & Gondwana rocks (Godavari valley). ● Major rivers- Godavari, Krishna, and Penna . ● Rich in mineral resources. ● Good rainfall (average of 100 cm/year).

C. Northeastern Plateau/ Meghalaya Plateau

- **Extension** seen in **Karbi Anglong hills** of Assam.
- Receives **maximum rainfall** from the **south-west monsoon**.
- **Garo-Rajmahal Gap** separates this plateau from the **main block**.
 - Formed by **down-faulting**
 - **Filled by sediments** deposited by **Ganga** and **Brahmaputa**.
- Western, central and eastern parts known as **Garo Hills** (900 m), **Khasi-Jaintia Hills** (1,500 m) and **Mikir (Rengma) Hills** (700 m).
- **Highest point**- Shillong (1,961 m).

D. Western Ghats

- Formed by **subduction of Arabian basin** and tilting of peninsula in east and northeast during Himalayan uplift.
- One of the **eight biological diversity hotspots** in the world.
- **Run from Tapi valley** (21° N latitude) to **north of Kanyakumari** (11° N latitude) - 1,600 km.
- **Extent**: Gujarat, Maharashtra, Goa, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Kerala.
- **UNESCO World Heritage site**.
- **Influence Indian monsoon** by intercepting the rain-laden South-west monsoon winds.
- known as **Sahyadri till 11° N**.



E. Eastern Ghats

- **From Odisha to North of Nilgiri hills**
- Run **parallel to eastern coastal plains** of India.
- **Discontinuous** and **dissected by rivers** that drain into Bay of Bengal.

- **Lower in elevation** than western ghats.
 - **Highest peak** - Jindhagada peak (1690 meters).
 - Also known as **Arma Konda** or **Sitamma Konda**.
- **Main crop** - Rice.

Nilgiri Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Referred as Blue Mountains, a range of mountains in the westernmost part of Tamil Nadu at the junction of Karnataka and Kerala ● Hills are separated from the Karnataka plateau to the north by the Moyar River and from the Anamalai Hills and Palni Hills to the south by the Palghat Gap
Cardmom Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of Western Ghats, in southeast Kerala and southwest Tamil Nadu

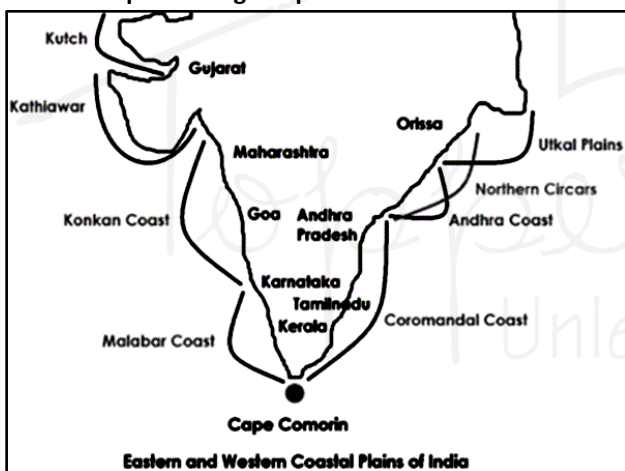
Pachamalai Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Also known as the Pachais Eastern Ghats in Tamil Nadu
Anamalai Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Also known as Elephant Hill a range of mountains in the Western Ghats in Tamil Nadu and Kerala with the highest peak Anaimudi

5. Coastal Plains

- Area-** 7516.6 km (**Mainland coastline is 6100 km and Island coastline of 1197 km**).
- States-** Gujarat, Maharashtra, Goa, Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Odisha, West Bengal and **UTs--** Daman and Diu and Puducherry.
- Coastal plains in India are of 2 types:**

A. Eastern Coastal Plains

- Location:** b/w Bay of Bengal and the Eastern Ghats
- Width:** 100 – 130 kms
- Extends from the Ganga delta to Kanyakumari.**
- Marked by** well-developed deltas of Godavari, Mahanadi, Kaveri, and Krishna.
- Important geographical features** - Chilika Lake and Pulicat Lake (lagoon).
- Wider and drier** → resulting in **shifting sand dunes**.
- Very fertile** for Agriculture.
 - Delta of river Krishna - Granary of South India.
- Emergent in nature** - **Continental shelf** extends up to 500 km into the sea, which makes it **difficult for development of good ports and harbours**.



- Divisions:**

Utkal coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Extending Between Chilika and Kolleru Lake Much wider than western coastal plains. Intense rainfall. Vulnerable to cyclones. Major crops: rice, coconut and banana
Northern Circar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Northern part Between Mahanadi and Godavari, Krishna rivers.
Andhra coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Between Kolleru and Pulicat Lake. Forms a basin area for Krishna

	and Godavari rivers.
Coromandel coast or Payan Ghat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Between Pulicat Lake and Kanyakumari in Tamil Nadu. Remains dry in summer. Receives rainfall during winters.
Golkonda Coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Between the Godavari and Krishna River

B. Western Coastal Plains

- Stretch from **Gulf of Cambay** (Gulf of Khambhat) in the north to **Cape Comorin** (Kanyakumari).
- Stretch for **1600 km north to south**
- Width** - 10 to 25 km. (**Widest off the Bombay coast**. Rich in oil.)
- Straight** coastline.
- Affected by **South-West Monsoon** winds over a period of 6 months. Thus, **wetter** than their eastern counterpart.
- More indented** than eastern coast
 - Provides **natural conditions** for development of **ports and harbours**.
 - Eg.** Kandla, Mazagaon, JLN port Navha Sheva, Marmagao, Mangalore, Cochin, etc.
- Characterized by a **large number of coves** (a very small bay), **creeks** (a narrow, sheltered waterway such as an inlet in a shoreline or channel in a marsh) and a few **estuaries**. **Eg.** estuaries of Narmada and Tapi.
- Rivers do **not** form any **delta**. Instead form a chain of waterfalls.
- Kayals** – **Backwaters or shallow lagoons** or the inlets of the sea and lie **parallel to the coastline**.
 - Used for **fishing, inland navigation and tourism**.
 - Largest** - Vembanad lake.
- Submergent** coasts.
- 4 divisions:**

Kutch and Kathiawar coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Extension of Peninsular plateau But treated as a part of Western Coastal Plains as they are now levelled down. Kutch formed by the deposition of silt by the Indus. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Covered with shallow water during the monsoons Divided into Great Rann (north) and Little Rann (east). Kathiawar- south of Kutch.
Konkan coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Between Daman (north) to Goa (south).

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rice and cashew- 2 important crops.
Kanada coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Between Marmagao and Mangalore ● Rich in iron deposits.
Malabar coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Between Mangalore to Kanyakumari. ● Relatively broad. ● Consists of lagoons running parallel to the coast in southern Kerala.

6. Islands of India

- **1,382 off-shore** identified islands.

A. Andaman and Nicobar Archipelago

- In **Bay of Bengal**
- **Extended** in a north-south direction Between **6° 45' N to 13° 45' N**.
- Composed of ~ **265** big and small islands [203 Andaman + 62 Nicobar Islands]
- **3 main groups** i.e. North, Middle, and South.
- **Duncan passage** - separates Little Andaman from South Andaman.

- Andaman group of islands in the north separated by **Ten Degree Channel** from Nicobar group in the south.
- **Grand Channel** - Between Great Nicobar Islands and Sumatra islands of Indonesia.
- **Coco Strait** - Between North Andaman Islands and Coco Islands of Myanmar.
- **Port Blair**- capital of Andaman Nicobar Islands- in South Andaman.
- **Volcanic island**- Barren and Narcondam Islands (only active volcano in India).
- **Highest peak**- Saddle peak (737 m) in North Andaman.
- **Tropical marine climate** influenced by seasonal flow of monsoon winds.
- **Major earthquake zone**.
- Also known as **Emerald Islands**.
- **Home** to the **only** known paleolithic people, the **Sentinelese**.
 - One of the last humans on earth untouched by modern civilization.
- **State Animal**- dugong (sea mammal)
- **Major islands of Andaman and Nicobar:**

Narcondam Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● India's easternmost Island ● A small volcanic island of the northern Andaman Sea. ● Dormant volcano with a conical shape ● No remains of a crater at the top (710 m above sea level)- second tallest point after the Saddle Peak ● Proximity to Myanmar - great strategic and geopolitical significance
Barren Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Located in Andaman Sea, south of the Narcondam Island. ● Only active volcano in the Indian subcontinent. ● Also the only active volcano from Sumatra to Myanmar. ● Most recent eruption – 2020 ● Uninhabited ● 2 km wide caldera at the top
Landfall Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Northernmost island of Andaman and Nicobar Islands. ● Separated from Coco Island of Myanmar by the Coco Channel. ● Separated from North Andaman Island by the Cleugh Passage. ● Limited tourism.
North Andaman Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Northern island of Great Andaman. ● Highest point- Saddle Peak (731 metres) present here. ● Northern tip known as Cape Price ● Part of the Arakan Yoma ● Main town - Diglipur ● Main economic activities – Rice and Orange production.
Middle Andaman Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Between North Andaman and South Andaman ● Home to Jarawa tribe. ● Geologically part of the Arakan Yoma ● Dependent on Fishing and agriculture ● Towns: Rangat, Billiground and Mayabunder
South Andaman Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Southernmost island of great Andaman Group ● 3rd largest after Middle and North.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Port Blair - Capital city of Andaman and Nicobar- south-eastern part of the island (less mountainous than others) ● Majority of population of Andaman and Nicobar live here.
Rutland Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Between South Andaman and Little Andaman ● North of the Duncan Passage ● Rich in marine life ● Formerly home to the Jangil (Rutland Jarawa), an indigenous Andamanese tribe. ● Presently, no permanent indigenous settlement.
Little Andaman	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 4th largest of the Andaman Group. ● Separated from Rutland Island in Great Andaman by Duncan Passage. ● Between Duncan Passage and 10 Degree Channel ● A counterpart of Great Andaman island group. ● Home to Onge people.
Interview Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In Andaman Islands. ● West of Austen Strait - separates North and Middle Andaman Island
Swaraj Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Formerly known as Havelock Island. ● One of the largest islands in Ritchie's Archipelago ● Located Between Peel Island Neil Island. ● East of Great Andaman within Andaman Islands. ● Named after Henry Havelock, a British general. ● Main settlers - Bengalis (5,354 people) ● Radhanagar Beach - named "Best Beach in Asia" by Time in 2004
Car Nicobar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Northernmost of Nicobar Islands ● South of 10 Degree Channel ● Flat fertile island with clusters of coconut plants ● Major crops: coconut and areca nut ● More than half of the total Nicobar population lives here.
Kamorta Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In Nicobar Islands chain. ● Has INS Kardip - naval forward operating base of joint-services Andaman and Nicobar Command.
Nancowry Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Central part of the Nicobar group ● Part of Tribal Reserve Area ● Has magnificent landlocked - one of the safest natural harbours in the world.
Katchal Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of the Nicobar Island ● East of the Nancowry Island. ● Inhabited by Nicobari Tribes and Migrated Tamilians.
Little Nicobar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of Nicobar Islands ● Separated from Great Nicobar Island by St. George's Channel.
Great Nicobar Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Largest island of Nicobar group ● Southernmost tip- Indira Point (Pygmalion Point) ● Separated from Sumatra Island by Great Channel. ● Mt.Thuillier – highest point in the Nicobar (642m) ● Has Great Nicobar Biosphere Reserve
Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Formerly known as Ross Island. ● Belongs to South Andaman administrative district. ● 3 km east from central Port Blair. ● Controlled by Indian Navy.
Chowra Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Located to the north of Teressa island and to the south of Battimalv Island in the Indian Ocean. ● Also known as Choura, Tatat or Sanenyo.

Ritchie's Archipelago:

- A **cluster of smaller islands** lying **20 km east** of Great Andaman.
- **Includes** - Neil Island and Havelock Island.
- **Ross Island** was renamed **Netaji Subhas Chandra Bose Dweep**, **Neil Island** as **Shaheed Dweep**, and **Havelock Island** as **Swaraj Dweep**.

B. Lakshadweep Islands

- Situated in the **Arabian Sea**
- A group of 36 islands having an area of **32 square kilometers**
- **Extent** -8 N - 12 N latitude.
- **Earlier known as** Laccadive, Minicoy, and Amindivi Islands.
- **Present name** adopted on **1 November 1973**
- Union Territory and comprises **12 atolls, 3 reefs, 5 submerged banks, and 10 inhabited islands.**
- 280 - 480 km **off the Kerala coast.**
- **Part of Reunion Hotspot volcanism.**

- Made up of **coral deposits.**
- Have **storm beaches** consisting of unconsolidated pebbles, shingles, cobbles, and boulders.
- **Minicoy Island**- south of 9-degree channel - **2nd largest island.**
- **Pitti Island**- a bird sanctuary- important **breeding place** for **sea turtles** and for brown noddy, lesser crested tern, and greater crested tern.
- **Low elevation** - do not rise > 5 meters above sea level.
- **Flat topography**
- Relief features like **hills, streams, valleys, etc. absent.**
- **Major islands**

Agatti Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A 7.6 km long island. ● Situated on a coral atoll known as Agatti atoll. ● Agatti Aerodrome - only airport of Lakshadweep
Andrott/ Androth Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A small inhabited island ● First island of Lakshadweep to embrace Islam ● Biggest island of Lakshadweep ● Cradle of many civilizations, architectural monuments, lighthouses etc. ● Economy- Fishing
Bangaram Atoll	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A tiny teardrop shaped island. ● Lying close to Agatti and Kavaratti. ● Popular tourist resort ● Low Population - around 60
Bitra Island/ Bitrā Par	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A coral atoll belonging to the Amindivi Subgroup of islands. ● A small shrine dedicated to an old Arab saint Malik Mulla who was buried in the island. ● Population ~ 300 people.
Chetlat Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A coral island belonging to Amindive Subgroup of islands. ● Tourist destination ● 37 km to the northwest of Kiltan Island.
Kadmat/ Cardamom Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A coral island belonging to Amindive subgroup of islands. ● Surrounded on eastern and western sides by a lagoon ● A marine protected area.
Kalpeni Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● An inhabited Atoll. ● First island in Lakshadweep where woman were allowed to go to school.
Maliku Atoll/ Villingili Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Only two islands in this atoll – Minicoy and Viringili ● An uninhabited islet in Lakshadweep. ● Located at the southwestern end of Minicoy’s reef, in Maliku Atoll.
Minicoy Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Locally known as Maliku. ● Only inhabited island of Maliku Atoll ● Second largest island of lakshadweep ● Separated from the rest of Lakshadweep by the Nine Degree Channel.
Aminidivi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Northernmost of Lakshadweep group ● 5 islands: Amini, Kiltan, Chetlat, Kadmat and Bitra
Laccadive / Cannanore Islands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One of 3 island subgroups in Lakshadweep. ● Central subgroup of Lakshadweep. ● Islands: Suheli Par, Pitti, Kalpeni, Andrott, Agatti, Kavaratti.

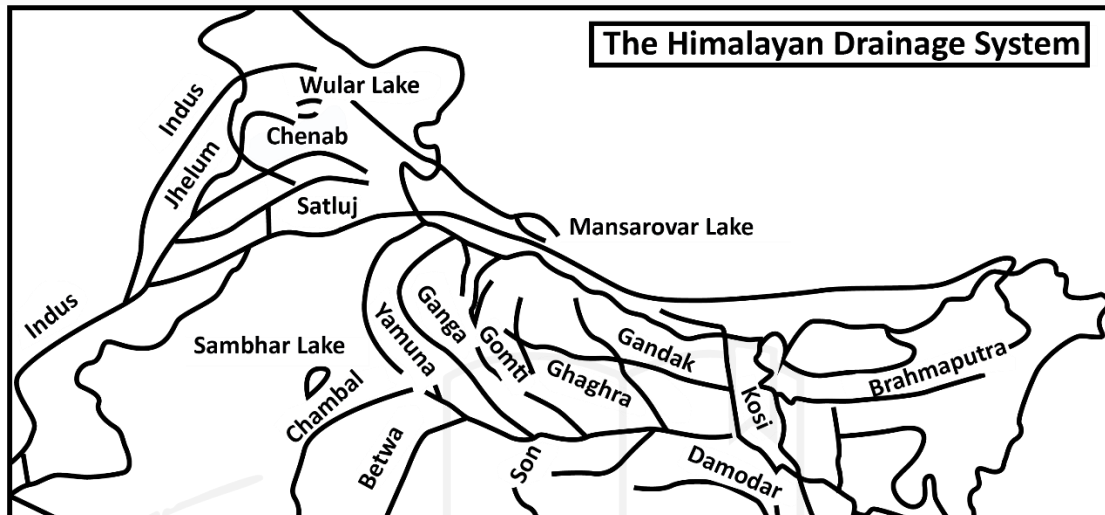
3

CHAPTER

Indian Drainage System

A. Himalayan Drainage System

- 3 main Himalayan rivers - Indus, the Ganga and Brahmaputra.
- Long and are joined by many tributaries
- River + tributaries = river system.



1. Indus River System

- Originate from a glacier near Bokhar Chu in Tibetan region near Mansarovar Lake.
- Altitude - 4,164 m
- Course:
 - Flows northwest and enters Ladakh at Demchok.
 - At Dungti, river takes a sharp southwest turn and cuts through Ladakh range.
 - Takes a northwestern course and continues to flow towards Leh region of Ladakh.
 - After Leh, continues northwest and reaches the town of Batalik in Kargil district.
 - Joined by Zaskar River at Leh.
 - Near Skardu, joined by Shyok at 2,700 m.
 - Enters into Baltistan region through city of skardu and continues to flow northwest towards the city of Gilgit
 - At Gilgit, takes a south bend and then turns west and then fully enters the northwest frontier province of Pakistan k/a Khyber Pakhtunkhwa.
 - Kabul River empties into the Indus River near Attock, Pakistan.
 - Main river in eastern Afghanistan and Khyber Pakhtunkhwa province of Pakistan.

- Takes a southwestern course and continues to flow across Khyber Pakhtunkhwa province.
- Flows through plain in western and southern Punjab province of Pakistan, continues to head towards Sindhu province of Pakistan.
- Just above Mithankot, receives water from Panjnad (Panchnad)—the Jhelum, the Chenab, the Ravi, the Beas, and the Satluj.
- Sindh, river accumulates a lot of sediments and forms the Indus River delta before draining into Arabian sea near Karachi.
- Blind Indus River Dolphin found only in the Indus River.
- Right-bank tributaries: Shyok, Gilgit, Hunza, Nubra, Kabul, Khurram, Tochi, Gomal, Sangar, Kunar
- Left-bank tributaries: Zaskar, Suru, Soan, Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas, Satluj rivers.

• Major rivers related to Indus River System

Shyok River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: From Rimo Glacier of Karakoram Range. • Flows through Northern Ladakh region in Jammu and Kashmir. • Length: 550km. • Tributary of Indus River.
Nubra River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main tributary of Shyok River. • Origin: from the Nubra Glacier

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Meanders towards southeast to join Shyok River at the base of Ladakh range ● Nubra Valley- 3048m - formed out of the Nubra River
Gilgit River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Right-bank tributary of Indus. ● Flows through Ladakh region of Jammu and Kashmir ● Originates from a glacier near extreme N-W boundary of Himalayas ● Catchment area: bleak and desolate ● Bunji - main human settlement along the river
Chenab River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: near the Bara Lacha Pass in Lahaul-Spiti of Zaskar Range. ● Formed by the confluence of Chandra and Bhaga rivers at Tandi (Lahaul and Spiti District of Himachal Pradesh) ● Upper reaches k/a Chandrabhaga ● Flows through Jammu region into Punjab plains in Pakistan ● Waters allocated to Pakistan under Indus Water Treaty ● Baglihar Dam on this river ● Crossed in Jammu and Kashmir by world's highest railway bridge k/a Chenab Bridge.
Jhelum River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tributary of Chenab ● Length - 813km ● Origin: from a spring at Verinag at the foot of Pir Panjal in S-E part of the valley of Kashmir. ● Largest tributary- Kishenganga (Neelum). ● Waters allocated to Pakistan under Indus Waters Treaty ● Ends in a confluence with Chenab in Pakistan.
Ravi River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: Dhauladhar range in Chamba district of HP. ● Source in Kullu hills near Rohtang Pass in Himachal Pradesh. ● Follows a northwesterly course. ● A perennial river having a total length - 720km ● Waters allocated to India under Indus Waters Treaty ● Ranjit Sagar Dam (also known as Thein dam) on this river ● Right bank tributaries - Budhil, Tindahan Beljedi, Saho and Soul ● Major left bank tributary - Chirchind Nala.

Sutlej River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Also known as Red River. ● Origin: From Rakas Lake in Southern slopes of Kailash Mountain near Mansarover Lake. ● Enters HP at Shipki La and flows in S-W direction through Kinnaur, Shimla, Kullu, Solan, Mandi, and Bilaspur districts. ● World's highest gravity dam- Bhakra Nangal Dam, on this river. ● Waters allocated to India under Indus Water Treaty <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Mainly used for power generation and irrigation
Beas River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● An important river of the Indus River System ● Emerges from Rohtang pass in Himachal Pradesh ● Before entering Pakistan merges with Sutlej River at Hari-Ke-Pattan (Punjab) ● Length - 460km - covers 256km through Himachal Pradesh.

2. Ganga River System

- **Formed** from **6 headstreams** (Alaknanda, Mandakini, Nandakini, Bhagirathi, Dhaul Ganga, and Pinder) and their **confluences**.
- Bhagirathi- source **stream**
- **Origin**: Foot of Gangotri Glacier, at **Gaumukh** (3892m).
- **Fans out** into 350 km wide **Ganga delta**
- **Empties** into the **Bay of Bengal**.
- **Joined** by **Yamuna** at **Allahabad**.
- Turns **south-east** near **Raj Mahal Hills**.
- At **Farakka**, **bifurcates** into **Bhagirathi-Hugli** in **West Bengal** and **Padma-Meghna** in **Bangladesh**
- **Ceases** to be known as the **Ganga** after **Farraka**.
- **Brahmaputra/ Jamuna** joins **Padma-Meghna** at **Chandpur, Bangladesh**.
- **Total length** from source to its mouth - 2,525 km
- **Devprayag- Bhagirathi + Alaknanda = Ganga**.
 - **Alaknanda** originates from **Satopanth glacier** above **Badrinath**.

Panch Prayag

Vishnuprayag	Alaknanda + Dhaul Ganga
Nandprayag	Alaknanda + Mandakini
Karnaprayag	Alaknanda + Pinder
Rudraprayag	Alaknanda + Mandakini
Devprayag	Alaknanda + Bhagirathi = GANGA

Ganga – Brahmaputra Delta

- Before **entering Bay of Bengal**, **Ganga + Brahmaputra**, forms the **largest delta of world**.

- **b/w Bhagirathi/Hugli and Padma/Meghna.**
- **Area - 58,752 sq km.**
- **Coastline highly indented.**

- **Major part is a low-lying swamp flooded by marine water during high tide.**

Major Left bank tributaries:

Ramganga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tributary of Ganga River. • Drains south-western Kumaun. • Origin: southern slopes of Dudhatoli Hill in Chamoli, Uttarakhand. • Fed by springs from underground water reservoirs. • Major geomorphic features: incised meanders, paired and unpaired terraces, interlocking spurs, waterfalls, rock benches, cliffs, and towering ridges • Flows through dun valley of Corbett National Park. • Meets the Ganga near Kannauj.
Gomti	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Gomat Taal (also known as Fulhaar jheel) near Madho Tanda, Pilibhit, UP. • Meets the Ganges in Ghazipur. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Location of famous Markandey Mahadeo temple. • Most important tributary - Sai River (confluence near Jaunpur)
Ghaghara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: in the glaciers of Mapchachungo. • Source: near Gurla Mandhata peak, south of Mansarovar in Tibet • Trans-Himalayan origin. • Also Known as Karnali or Kauriala. • Cuts through the Himalayas in Nepal. • Joined by Sharda at Brahmaghat in India • Major left-bank tributary of Ganga (confluence at Chhapra in Bihar). • Length: 1080 km
Kali	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rises in the high glaciers of trans-Himalaya. • Forms the boundary b/w Nepal and Kumaon. • Known as Sarda after it reaches the plains near Tanakpur.
Saryu/Sarju	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Flows through UP. • Origin: at a ridge south of Nanda Kot Mountain, Bageshwar district in Uttarakhand. • Left-bank tributary of Ghaghara
Rapti	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rises south of a prominent E-W ridgeline midway b/w Dhaulagiri and Mahabharat Range in Nepal • Fed by underground water • Recurrent floods - so, known as "Gorakhpur's Sorrow"
Gandak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Union of Kali and Trisuli rivers • Merges with Ganga River opposite Patna at Sonepur. • Burhi Gandak flows parallel to and east of Gandak River • Upper catchment area: bleak and desolate (rain shadow area of Himalayas) • Middle and lower courses- V-shaped valleys, incised meanders, and have paired and unpaired terraces on either sides.
Burhi Gandak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: from Chautarva Chaur near Bisambharpur, West Champaran, Bihar • Flows parallel to and east of Gandak River in an old channel. • No major or medium project over the river
Kosi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Also known as Saptakoshi (has 7 Himalayan tributaries) • Antecedent transboundary river flowing through Nepal and India • One of largest tributaries of Ganga (Confluence at Kursela in Kathiar district) • Catchment Area: Mt. Everest and Kanchenjunga. • Unstable nature - "The Sorrow of Bihar".

Major Right Bank Tributaries

Son	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: near Amarkantak in MP, east of headwater of the Narmada River • Lower valley of Son - extension of Narmada Valley. • Tributaries: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Right – Gopad River, Rihand River, Kanhar River, North Koel River ○ Left – Ghaggar River, Johila River, Chhoti Mahanadi River
------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Chief tributaries - Rihand and North Koel.
Rihand	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: from Matiranga Hills (southwest of the Mainpat plateau) ● Joins Son at Sonbhadra, UP. ● Rihand Dam across Rihand River for hydropower generation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reservoir of dam k/a Govind Ballabh Pant Sagar.
North Koel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rises on the Ranchi plateau and enters Palamu division below Netarhat near Rud ● Meanders through the northern part of Betla National Park
Yamuna	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Largest and the most important tributary. ● Origin: Yamunotri glacier on Bandarpunch Peak in Garhwal region in Uttarakhand (6000 m).

Yamuna River System

- **Origin:** Yamunotri Glacier on southwestern slopes or Bandarpunch peak in the Mussoorie range of lower Himalayas.
- **States:** Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh, Haryana enters Delhi.

- **Merges with** the **Ganga** near Triveni Sangam, **Allahabad** (Prayagraj).
- **Largest tributary** of the **Ganga** in northern plains.
- **Major tributary:** **Tons** (rises from the Bandarpunch glacier).
- **Total length** till Allahabad: 1,376 km.
- **Highly fertile** alluvial, Yamuna-Ganges **Doab region**.

Major tributaries

Tons	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Longest tributary of Yamuna ● Flows through Garhwali, western part of Uttaranchal. ● Originates at an elevation of 3900 m. ● Joins Yamuna below Kalsi near Dehradun, Uttarakhand. ● One of the most major perennial Indian Himalayan rivers. ● Biggest tributary of Yamuna.
Giri River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Important tributary. ● Main source of water in South-Eastern Himachal Pradesh. ● Joins Yamuna upstream of Paonta below Mokkampur.
Hindon River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Important tributary. ● Sandwiched b/w Ganga on the left and Yamuna on the right. Originates from upper Shiwalik (Lower Himalayas). ● A purely rain fed river ● Catchment area - 7,083 sq. km.
Betwa River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Originates at an elevation of 470 m in Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh. ● Joins Yamuna River near Hamirpur. ● Catchment area: 46,580 sq km ● Basin is saucer shaped with sandstone hills around the perimeter. ● Major tributaries: Halali and Dhasan
Dhasan River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Right bank tributary of Betwa. ● Originates in Begumganj tehsil of Raisen district in Madhya Pradesh. Forms southeastern boundary of Lalitpur, Uttar Pradesh. ● k/a Dasharna in ancient period.
Ken River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● An inter-state river (Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh). ● Originates near village Ahirgawab in Jabalpur, Madhya Pradesh. ● Joins Yamuna River, near Chilla village of U.P. ● Catchment area: 28,058 sq km. ● Tributaries: Sonar, Bearma, Kopra, Bewas, Urmil, Mirhasan, Kutni, Kali, Gurne, Patan, Siameri, Chandrawal, Banne, etc.
Sind River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One of second largest right bank tributaries of Yamuna. ● Rises in Vidisha District of Madhya Pradesh. ● Flows generally in north- east direction. ● Important tributaries - Parwati and Kunwari on its left bank and Pahuj on the right bank. ● Probably river Sindhu mentioned in epic Vishnu Purana.

Chambal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● k/a Charmanvati in ancient time ● Largest of the rivers flowing through Rajasthan state. ● Rises in Vindhyan range near Mhow in Indore District of Madhya Pradesh. ● Catchment area - 1,39,468 sq.km. ● River Banas- a major left bank tributary joins near village Rameshwar. Outfalls into Yamuna southeast of village Sehon in Etawah District of Uttar Pradesh. ● Major dams: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Gandhi Sagar - boundary of Madhya Pradesh and Rajasthan. ○ Rana Pratap Sagar - Rawat Bhata (Rajasthan). ○ Jawahar Sagar Dam. ○ Kota Barrage ● Major tributaries: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Kali Sindh: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Originated in northern slopes of Vindhya Hills. ■ States- M.P. and Rajasthan. ■ Catchment area- 7944 sq km. ○ Parwan River: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Important tributary of Kalisindh River. ■ Origin: Malwa Plateau. ■ Joins Kali Sindh near Ramgarh village, Kota district. ■ Catchment area - 2892 sq km. ○ Parwati River: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Origin: northern slopes of Vindhyan hills, M.P. ■ Boundary b/w MP and Rajasthan. ■ Joins Chambal at Pali village, Kota. ○ Banas River: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Origin: Khamnor hills of Aravali range. ■ A major tributary of Chambal. ■ Joins Chambal in Sawai Madhopur. ■ Catchment area - 45,833 sqkm. ○ Shipra River/ Ksipra / Markandeya <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ In Madhya Pradesh.
----------------	---

3. Brahmaputra River System

- **One of the largest rivers** in the world.
- **Tibet**- k/a **Yarlung Tsangpo**.
- **Enters** by the names of **Siang** and **Dihang** in India.
- **Source** of origin: **Chemayundung glacier** of Kailash range near Mansarovar Lake.
- **Mouth:** Drains into **Bay of Bengal** before forming a huge delta along with the Ganga.
- **Course:**
- **Tibet**- runs **parallel** to **Himalayas** for about **1,200 km**.
- **Turns** into **south** and **creates** a **deep gorge** through Himalayas **near Namcha Barwa**.
- **Enters India** under the name of the **Dihang**.
- **Sadia** - **receives Dibang** coming from north and **Lohit** coming from east.

- **Enters Assam valley** where it is k/a **Brahmaputra**.
- **Flows west** up to **Dhubri** and further below, runs to south and **enters Bangladesh**.
- **Braided channel**.
- **Regional names** of Brahmaputra:

Region	Name
Tibet	Tsangpo (meaning 'The Purifier')
China	Yarlung Zangbo Jianguin
Assam Valley	Dihang or Siong, South of Sadiya: Brahmaputra
Bangladesh	Jamuna River
Bangladesh	Padma River: Combined Waters of Ganga and Brahmaputra
Bangladesh	Meghna: From the confluence of Padma and Meghna

Major tributaries

Subansiri River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Also known as Gold River - famous for its gold dust. ● Flows through Lower Subansiri District in Arunachal Pradesh.
Kameng River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Originates in the Tawang district, Arunachal Pradesh. ● Flows through West Kameng District, Arunachal Pradesh, and Sonitpur District of Assam.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Forms boundary b/w East Kameng and West Kameng Districts.
Manas River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A transboundary river in Himalayan foothills b/w southern Bhutan and India. Joins Brahmaputra at Jogighopa 2 major reserve forest areas: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Royal Manas National Park in Bhutan Manas Wildlife Sanctuary.
Sankosh River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rises in northern Bhutan. Drains into Brahmaputra in Assam Upper catchment: glaciated. Middle and lower courses: V-shaped valleys.
Teesta River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Origin: Tso Lhamo lake in North Sikkim. Major tributary - Rangeet River - Joins Teesta at Tribeni.
Dibang River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One of the principal tributaries of Brahmaputra river Origin: Southern flank of Himalayas close to Tibet border.
Lohit River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Origin: eastern Tibet. Flows through Mishmi hills to meet Siang at head of Brahmaputra valley.
Dhansiri River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Main river of Golaghat District of Assam and Dimapur District of Nagaland Originates from Nagaland Perennially waterlogged swampy regions.
Kopili River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An interstate river in Northeast India flowing through Meghalaya and Assam. Largest south bank tributary of the Brahmaputra in Assam.

Major River Valley Projects/Dams/Barrages

Arunachal Pradesh	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tawang Hydel Power Project Subansiri Lower Hydel Power Project Ranganadi Hydel Power Project Paki Hydel Power Project Papumpap Hydel Power Project Dhinkrong Hydel Power Project Upper Lohit Hydel Power Project Damway Hydel Power Project Kameng Hydel Power Project
Sikkim	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rangit Hydel Power Project Teesta Hydel Power Project
Assam	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kopili Hydel Power Project
Meghalaya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New Umtru Hydel Power Project
Nagaland	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Doyang Hydel Power Project
Manipur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loktak Hydel Power Project Tipaimukh Hydel Power Project
Mizoram	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tuibai Hydel Power Project Tuirial Hydel Power Project Dhaleshwari Hydel Power Project

B. Peninsular River System

- **Much older than Himalayan rivers** {Discordant}.
- **Mainly Concordant** except for a few rivers in the upper peninsula region.
- **Non-perennial rivers**- maximum discharge in the rainy season.
- At **mature stage** (Fluvial Landforms) and have almost reached their base level (Vertical downcutting is negligible).

- **Main water divide** by **Western Ghats**.
- **Low velocity** of **water** and **load-carrying** capacity of streams **due to low gradient**.
- **East flowing rivers**- Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Cauvery -form deltas.
- **West flowing rivers**- Narmada and Tapi - form estuaries.
- **Rivers that drain into Bay of Bengal:** Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, Cauvery.
- **Rivers that drain into Arabian Sea:** Narmada, Tapi, Mahi.
- **Rivers that drain into the Ganges:** Chambal, Betwa, Ken, Son and Damodar

Major Peninsular Rivers

1. Godavari

- **Second-longest course** in India with **brownish water**.
- **also known as** Dakshin (South) Ganga or Vriddh (Old) Ganga.
- **Seasonal** - dried during summers, and widens during monsoons.
- **Origin:** Trimbakeshwar, near Nasik in Maharashtra.
- **Flows southeast** across south-central India.
- **States:** Madhya Pradesh, Telangana, Andhra Pradesh, and Odisha.
- **Drains into the Bay of Bengal.**
- **Forms a fertile delta** at Rajahmundry.
- **Asia's largest rail-cum-road bridge**, which links **Kovvur** and **Rajahmundry** on it.

Left Bank tributaries	Right Bank		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Banganga • Kadva • Shivana • Puma • Kadam 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nasardi • Darna • Pravara • Sindpana • Manjira 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pranhita • Indravati • Taliperu • Sileru • Sabah 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maneru • Kinnerasani

• **Major tributaries**

Manjra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Right-bank tributary. • Origin: Balaghat range, near Ahmednagar, at an altitude of 823 m. • States: Maharashtra, Karnataka and Telangana. • Drains into Godavari River at Basara near Nizamabad.
Penganga/ Panuganga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Ajanta ranges in Aurangabad district in Maharashtra. • States: Maharashtra and Andhra Pradesh. • Deeply entrenched and cannot be navigated. • Passes through Penganga Wildlife Sanctuary. • Saistrakund waterfalls are situated on it.
Wardha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One of the biggest rivers in Vidarbha region of Maharashtra. • Origin: Satpura Range near Multai in Betul District of Madhya Pradesh. • States: Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra • Wardha + Wainganga = Pranhita. • Drains into the Godavari River
Wainganga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Literally means "arrow of water". • Origin: southern slopes of the Mahadeo Hills, Satpura Range, Madhya Pradesh • States: Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra • Drains into the river Godavari.
Indrawati	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Thuamul Rampur rises in Eastern Ghats in Kalahandi in Odisha. • Forms boundary b/w Maharashtra and Chhattisgarh. • Merges with Godavari at Bhadrakali in Dantewada District. • also known as lifeline of Bastar district. • Not good for navigation - rocky bed. • Largest tributary - Pamer Chinta. • Never dry up in summer. • Chitrakoot Falls is located here.

- **Projects on Godavari River:**
 - **Srirama Sagar, Godavari barrage, Upper Penganga, Jaikwadi, Upper Wainganga, Upper Indravati, Upper Wardha.**
 - **On-going projects** - Pranahita-Chevella and Polavaram.
- **Industry in Godavari Basin**
 - **Major urban Centers** - Nagpur, Aurangabad, Nashik, Rajahmundry.
 - Mostly **based on agricultural produce** - rice milling, cotton spinning and weaving, sugar, and oil extraction.
 - **Cement and some small engineering industries** also exist.
- **Floods and Droughts**
 - **Faces flooding problems** in its lower reaches.
 - **Cyclone-prone.**
 - **Delta areas face drainage congestion** due to flat topography.
- **Major tributaries:**

2. **Krishna**

- **Second-largest east-flowing peninsular river.**
- **Origin:** Mahabaleshwar.
- **States:** Maharashtra, Karnataka, Telangana, Andhra Pradesh
- **Causes heavy soil erosion** during monsoon.
- **Bounded by Balaghat range** (north), **Eastern Ghats** (south and the East), and **Western Ghats** (west).
- **Total length-** 1,400 km.
- **Drains into Bay of Bengal.**
- **Major dams-** Almatti Dam, Srisailem Dam, Nagarjuna Sagar Dam, and Prakasam Barrage.
- **Fed by seasonal monsoon rains.**
- **Right bank:** Venna, Koyna, Panchganga, Dudhganga, Ghataprabha, Malaprabha and Tungabhadra
- **Left Bank:** Bhima, Dindi, Peddavagu, Halia, Musi, Paleru, and Munneru

Bhima	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Bhimashankar hills near Karjat on the western side of Western Ghats (known as Sahyadri), in Maharashtra. • States: Maharashtra, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh states.
--------------	--

Musi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● also known as Muchukunda River ● Origin: Ananthagiri Hills near Vikarabad, Rangareddi district, 90km west of Hyderabad ● 1920 - Osmansagar reservoir constructed. ● Major dam: Himayat Sagar.
Koyna	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: Mahabaleshwar in Satara district of Maharashtra. ● Flows in a North-South direction ● Famous for Koyna Dam -largest hydroelectric project in Maharashtra <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reservoir – Shivsagar Lake ● Meets the Krishna River at Karad. ● Slow-flowing.
Pancchganga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Flows through borders of Kolhapur. ● Formed by 4 streams: Kasari, Kumbhi, Tulsi, and Bhogawati. ● Drains into the Krishna at Kurundvad.
Dudhganga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Right-bank tributary ● Important river of the Kolhapur district ● Kallammawadi Dam built in collaboration with the Karnataka State.
Ghataprabha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: Western Ghats ● States: Karnataka and Maharashtra ● Drains into Krishna River at Almatti. ● Ghataprabha Project - hydroelectric and irrigation dam across the river
Malaprabha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: Kanakumbi of Belgaum District in Karnataka. ● Joins Krishna at Kudalasangama in Bagalkot district in Karnataka ● Navilatirtha Dam- near Munavalli in Belgaum District. ● Reservoir- Renukasagara ● World heritage Site- Aihole Pattadakal and Badami on this river.
Tungabhadra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ancient name: Pampa ● Formed by confluence - Tunga and Bhadra River, ● Raichur Doab- wedge of land that lies b/w Tungabhadra and Krishna.

3. Narmada

- **Largest** (1312km.) **west-flowing river** of **peninsular** India.
- **Largest Rift valley river** in India.
- **Largest Estuary River** in India.
- **Flows westwards** through a rift valley **b/w Vindhya Range**(north) and **Satpura Range** (south).
- **Rises from the Maikala range near Amarkantak** in **Madhya Pradesh**.
- **States**- Gujarat, Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh
- **Waterfalls:** Kapildhara, Dugdhadhara, Dhuadhaar, Mandhar, Dardi, Shahatradhara
- **Major Projects:**
 - **Sardar Sarovar**-(Bharuch), Gujarat- Biggest project in Narmada River
 - **Indira Sagar**- Khandwa, Biggest in M.P.
 - **Omkareshwar**- Khandwa
 - **Maheshwar**-Khargone
 - **Bargi**- Jabalpur
 - **Tawa Dam**- Hoshangabad.
- **Basin** - 98,796 sq. Km.
- **Largest island:** Aliabet.

● **Partly navigable**

Left Tributaries	Right Tributaries
● Burhner	● Hiran
● Banjar	● Tendoni
● Sher	● Barna
● Shakkar	● Kolar
● Dudhi	● Man
● Tawa	● Uri
● Ganjal	● Hatni
● Kundi	● Orsang
● Goi	
● Karjan	

4. Mahanadi:

- **3rd largest** of peninsular India.
- **Largest river of Odisha.**
- **Mahanadi** - compound of **2 Sanskrit words** "maha" - " great" and "nadi" -" river".
- **States**- Chhattisgarh, Odisha, Jharkhand, Maharashtra, and Madhya Pradesh
- **Catchment**- 1.4 lakh Sq.km.
- **Boundaries**- Central India hills (north), Eastern Ghats (south and east), and Maikala range (west).
- **Source** - northern foothills of Dandakaranya, Raipur, Chhattisgarh

- In terms of **water potential** and **flood-producing capacity**, it ranks **second** to the **Godavari**.
- **Major part** covered with **agricultural land- 54.27%** of total area.
- One of the **most-active silt-depositing streams** in the Indian subcontinent.
- **Hirakud Dam** (one of the largest dams in India) has formed a man-made lake 35 miles (55 km) long.
- **Drains into Bay of Bengal** at False Point by several channels.
- **Upper course** - saucer-shaped basin k/a 'Chhattisgarh Plain'.
- **Surrounded by hills on north, west, and south**- large number of tributaries join the main river.
- **Left bank Tributaries:** Seonath, Hasdeo, Mand, and Ib.
- **Right bank Tributaries:** Ong, Tel, and Jonk.
- **Major tributaries:**

Seonath	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Panabaras Hill (625 m) - flows towards the north-east. • Feeds Durg District, Chhattisgarh.
Hasdeo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Chhattisgarh • Drainage area - 9856 sq km • Surrounded by rocks and hilly areas, thin forest areas.
Mand	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Left-bank tributary • Joins Mahanadi in Chandrapur before the river reaches Hirakud dam. • Drainage area- 5200 sq km • Mand River dam - Raigarh, Chhattisgarh.
Ib	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Left-bank tributary. • Origin: Raigarh district of Chhattisgarh • Drainage area - 12,447 sqkm • Famous for coal.
Tel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Nabarangpur district. • Second-largest River of Odisha.
Ong	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Right-bank tributary. • Flows across Odisha and joins Mahanadi at Sambalpur 11 km up-stream of Sonepur where Tel merges. • Drainage area - 5128 sq km.

- **Major Projects:**
 - Mahanadi main canal
 - Tandula reservoir in Chhattisgarh.
 - Hirakud dam
 - Mahanadi delta project
 - Hasdeo Bango

- **Major tributaries:**

Hemawati	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Western Ghats • State: Karnataka
Shimsha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Devarayanadurga hills in Tumkur District of Karnataka • Markonahalli Dam-on River Shimsha in the Kunigal Taluk of Tumkur district • Shimsha Hydro Electric Project on this river
Arkavathy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Origin: Nandi Hills of Chikkaballapur district of Karnataka

- Mahanadi Reservoir Project.

5. **Cauvery**

- Also known as '**Dakshi Bharat ki Ganga**' or '**the Ganga of the South**'.
- **Origin:** **Talakaveri**, Brahmagiri range, Cherangala village, Coorg, **Karnataka**.
- **Length:** 800 km.
- **States-** TN, Karnataka, Kerala and Puducherry
- Breaks into a large number of **distributaries forming a wide delta** k/a "**garden of southern India**"
- **Boundaries-** Western Ghats (west), Eastern Ghats (east and South) and by ridges separating it from Krishna and Pennar basin (north).
- **Basin** - 3 parts – Western Ghats, Plateau of Mysore, and Delta.
- **Delta** - most fertile tract.
- **Soils** - black soils, red soils, laterites, alluvial soils, forest soils, and mixed soils.
- **Rainfall** - S-W Monsoon and partially from N-E Monsoon.
- A **perennial** river
- **Water** used for **irrigation** and **hydroelectric power generation**.
- **Drains into the Bay of Bengal.** T
- **Agricultural area-** 66.21% of the total area.
- **Left Bank tributaries:** Harangi, Hemavati, Shimsha, and Arkavati.
- **Right Bank tributaries:** Lakshmantirtha, Kabbani, Suvarnavati, Bhavani, Noyil, and Amaravati.
- **Descends from South Karnataka Plateau to Tamil Nadu Plains** through **Shivasamudram waterfalls** (101 m high).
 - River **divides** into **2 branches**
 - Used for **power generation** at **Shivanasamudra**.
- **2 branches join** after the fall and flow through a wide gorge- '**Mekedatu**' (Goats leap).
- **Hogenekkal Falls-** Southerly direction and enters **Mettur Reservoir**.
- **Bhavani joins** Cauvery on **Right bank below Mettur Reservoir-** enters **Tamil Nadu plains**.
- **Noyil and Amaravathi** join on **right bank - widening** of river - k/a '**Akhanda Cauvery**'.
- After crossing Tiruchirapalli district, **river divides into two parts**
 - **Northern branch** - '**The Coleron**'
 - **Southern branch** - **Cauvery**.
- 2 branches **join again** to form '**Srirangam Island**'.
- **GrandAnicut** built by cholas- on **Cauvery branch**.
- **Below GrandAnicut**, Cauvery branch **splits into** - **Cauvery** and **Vennar**.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Drains into Chikkarayappanahalli Lake near Kanivenarayanapura ● Chunchi waterfall on this river ● 2 reservoirs- Hesaraghatta (or Hesseraggatta), thippagondanahalli Reservoir.
Lakshmana Tirtha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: Irupu Falls (also Iruppu Falls), Brahmagiri Range, Kodagu, Karnataka. ● Borders Wayanad , Kerala.
Kabini/ Kabani/ Kapila	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Origin: Pakramthalam hills in Wayanad, Kerala ● Confluence of Panamaram and Mananthavady River. ● Backwaters - rich in wildlife. ● Forms an island- Kuruva Island
Suvarnavathy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● State- Karnataka ● Catchment area - 1787 sq km ● Suvarnavathy dam near Attigulipura, Chamarajanagar Taluk.
Noyyal River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Original name - Kanchinadi ● Origin: Vellingiri hills, Western Ghats, Tamil Nadu ● Drains into Kaveri River ● Joins Cauvery at Kodumudi in Erode District.
Amaravathi/ Pournami	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Longest tributary of Kaveri River. ● Origin: Kerala/Tamil Nadu Anaimalai Hills and the Palni Hills in Tirupur district. ● Joins Kaveri at Thirumukkudal, about 10 kilometres from Karur. ● Amravati Dam - across the Amaravathi River. ● Severely polluted due to a large amount of textile dyeing and bleaching units.

6. Tapi or Tapti

- Also known as “**Taap harne wali**” or **Surya Putri** or Tapi.
- **Second largest west-flowing river** of **Peninsular India**
- Known as ‘the **twin**’ or ‘the **handmaid**’ of the **Narmada**.
- **Origin:** Multai (Betul district) reserve forest, Madhya Pradesh
- **Drains into the Arabian Sea** through the Gulf of Cambay [Gulf of Khambhat].
- **States:** MP, MH. and Gujarat.
- **Right Bank:** Suki, Gomai, Arunavati and Aner.
- **Left Bank:** Vaghur, Buray, Panjhra, Bori, Girna, Purna, Mona and Sipna.
- **Important Projects:**
 - **Hathnur Dam** (Maharashtra)
 - **First stage of Upper Tapi Project.**
 - In **Jalgaon** district of Maharashtra.
 - **Kakrapar Weir** (Gujarat): **Commissioned** in the year **1954** as **stage – I** of the **Ukai project.**
 - **Ukai Dam** (Gujarat): **Stage II** of the multipurpose **Ukai Project.**
 - **Girna Dam** (Maharashtra)
 - Across **river Girn**
 - Near **Panzan village** in Nandgaon taluka of Nasik district.

- A **multipurpose scheme- irrigation** and subsidiary **power generation** (power generation yet to be started).
- **Dahigam Weir** (Maharashtra)
 - **Across river Girna.**
 - **Near Dahigaon** village in Pachora Taluka, **Jalgaon** district, Maharashtra.

7. Other Major rivers of Peninsular India

a. **Sabarmati**

- **States** - Rajasthan and Gujarat.
- **Boundaries:**
 - **North and north-east:** Aravalli hills
 - **West:** Rann of Kutch
 - **South:** Gulf of Khambhat.
- **Triangular basin** (Sabarmati River - base and source of Vatrak River- apex point).
- **Origin:** Aravalli hills, Udaipur, Rajasthan.
- **Left bank** tributaries: Wakal, Hathmati and Vatrak
- **Right Bank** tributaries: Sei
- **Drains in Gulf of Khambhat in Arabian Sea.**
- **Projects:** Sabarmati reservoir (Dharoi), Hathmati reservoir and Meshwo reservoir project.



b. Mahi

- **States:** Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan and Gujarat
- **Boundaries:**
- **North:** Aravalli hills
- **East:** Malwa Plateau
- **South-** Vindhya
- **West:** Gulf of Khambhat
- A major interstate west flowing rivers of India.
- **Origin:** northern slopes of Vindhya near village Bhopawar, Sardarpur tehsil in Dhar district of Madhya Pradesh.
- **Right bank** tributary- Som
- **Left bank** tributary- Anas and Panam
- **Drains** into **Arabian Sea** through the Gulf of Khambhat.

c. Luni

- **Only river basin** of any significance in **Western Rajasthan**.
- **Origin:** western slopes of Aravalli ranges near Ajmer.
- Drains into the **Rann of Kutch**.
- **Most tributaries** join it on left side.

- **Catchment area-** Rajasthan.
- **Left bank tributaries:** Lilari, Guhiya, Bandi (Hemawas), Sukri (Hemawas), Sukri, Mithri, Jawai, Khari Bani Sukri Bandi and Sugi
- **Right Bank tributary:** Jojari (Mithri).
- **Drainage area:** 32879 sq.km.
- **States:** Rajasthan and Gujarat

d. Ghaggar

- A **seasonal river** b/w **India** and **Pakistan**- flows only during monsoon.
- K/a **Ghagger** before **Ottu barrage** and **Hakra** downstream of barrage.
- **Origin:** Kalka Hills of Shivalik Range in Himachal Pradesh
- **Length:** 465 Kms
- **Discharge:** Sand dunes in Bahawalpur district of Pakistan
- **States:** Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, and Rajasthan
- **Tributaries:** Kaushalya River, Markanda, Sarsuti, Tangri and Chautang.

Lakes

Lake	State	Type	Features
Kolleru Lake	Andhra Pradesh	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The largest lake in India. Located b/w Krishna and Godavari delta. Wetland of international importance in 2002 - Ramsar convention.
Sambhar Lake	Rajasthan	Saline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> India's largest inland Salt Lake. Ramsar wetland Mahabharata mentions the Sambhar Lake as part of the kingdom of the demon king Brishparva.
Pushkar Lake	Rajasthan	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In Pushkar in Ajmer district of Rajasthan. A sacred lake of the Hindus. Thousands of pilgrims come to bathe in the waters of the lake during the festival of Kartika Poonima in November.
Lonar Lake	Maharashtra	Saline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formed 50,000 years ago after a meteorite hit the Earth. Recently, its colour turned pink overnight. Some experts suggest that the pink colour might be due to the presence of algae and low level of water
Pulicat Lake	Andhra Pradesh	Saline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Second largest brackish – water lake or lagoon in India. The large spindle-shaped barrier island named Sriharikota separates the lake from the Bay of Bengal.
Loktak Lake	Manipur	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in North -East India Keibul Lamjao - only floating national park in the world floats over it- last natural refuge of the endangered sangai of Manipur brow-antlered deer.
Sasthamkotta Lake	Kerala	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The purity of the lake water for drinking use is attributed to the presence of a large population of larva called cavaborus that consumes bacteria in the lake water.
Vembanad Lake	Kerala	Freshwater & Saline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Longest lake in India Largest lake in the state of Kerala. The Nehru Trophy Boat Race is conducted in a portion of the lake.
Chilka Lake	Odisha	Saline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Largest coastal lagoon in India Second largest lagoon in the world. Largest wintering ground for migratory birds on the Indian subcontinent. A brackish water coastal lake.
Dal Lake	Jammu Kashmir	Saline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> k/a "Jewel in the crown of Kashmir" or "Srinagar's Jewel". Asia's largest Tulip garden is on the banks of Dal Lake. Mughal gardens, Shalimar Bagh and the Nishat Bagh are on its banks.
Nalsarovar Lake	Gujarat	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Declared a bird sanctuary in 1969.
Tsomo Lake	Sikkim	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> also known as Changu Lake A glacial lake in East Sikkim. Venue for the Guru Purnima festival in which Jhakris of Sikkim assemble at the lake area to derive benefits from the healing qualities of the lake waters.
Bhimtal Lake	Uttarakhand	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Largest lake in Kumaon region. "C" shaped.
Barapani Lake	Meghalaya	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> also known as Umiam Lake.

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formed in 1965 due to the UmiamUmtru Hydroelectric Power Project -the first Hydel power project in the Northeast region of India.
Naini Lake	Uttarakhand	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kidney-shaped or crescent-shaped. Situated in the Nainital
Periyar Lake	Kerala	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formed by the construction of dam across the Mullaperiyar River in 1895. An Elephant reserve and Periyar Wildlife Sanctuary on its banks.
Hussain Sagar Lake	Telangana	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Built by Hazrat Hussain Shah Wali in 1562, during the rule of Ibrahim QuliQutub Shah. Connects Hyderabad and Secunderabad.
Salim Ali Lake	Maharashtra	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Renamed after great ornithologist, naturalist Salim Ali (birdman of India).
Kanwar Lake	Bihar	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asia's largest freshwater oxbow lake.
Nakki Lake	Rajasthan	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In Mount Abu in Aravalli range. Mahatma Gandhi's ashes were immersed in it and Gandhi Ghat was constructed.
Bhojtal Lake	Madhya Pradesh	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> also known as Upper Lake Lies on western side of Bhopal. Largest artificial lake in Asia.
Wular Lake	Jammu Kashmir	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Largest Freshwater Lake in India. Formed as a result of tectonic activity and is fed by the Jhelum River.
Pulicat Lake	Border of Andhra Pradesh & Tamil Nadu	Saline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Second-largest brackish water lake on Coromandel Coast. Barrier island of Sriharikota separates it from the Bay of Bengal.
Ashtamudi Lake	Kerala	Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A lagoon in the Kollam district of Kerala. A wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention.

Waterfalls

- An area where **water flows over a vertical drop** or a series of steep drops in the course of a stream or river.
- Occur where **meltwater drops over edge** of a tabular iceberg or ice shelf.

Major Waterfalls in India

Sahastradhara Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Near Dehradun, Formed by liquefaction of limestone rocks
Elephanta Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At Shillong (Meghalaya) Looks like face of elephant; so named as Elephanta waterfall by British
Chuliya Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kota On River Chambal
Dhuandhar Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At Jabalpur (Madhya Pradesh) on river Narmada Represents rejuvenation
Rajrappa Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At Ramgarh (Jharkhand) At the confluence of Damodar and Bhairavi rivers
Hundru Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On river Suvarnrekha at Ranchi (Jharkhand) Represents nick point and rejuvenation
Joranda Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At Simlipal National Park of Mayurbhanj district of Odisha
Duduma Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On river Machkund, nearby Koraput district (Odisha) Also known as Matsya Tirth

Kapildhara Falls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Amarkantak district of MP • 6 km from the Narmada Kund • Named after famous sage Kapil ('Sankhya Philosophy')
Yenna fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mahabaleshwar in Maharashtra
Dudhsagar fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On Mandovi river in Goa
Gokak fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A horseshoe shaped waterfall • At Belgaum district of Karnataka on river Gokak
Mekedatu fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • At river Kaveri in Bangalore (Karnataka)
Jog fall (Gersoppa)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • At river Sharavati at Maharashtra • On Karnataka border (Highest in India)
Shivasamudram fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On river Kaveri at Bangalore
Hogenakkal fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On river Kaveri at Tamilnadu
Pykara fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On river Pykara on Nilgiri hills at Ooty
Vattaparai fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Palani national park on river Pazhayar in Kanyakumari (Tamil Nadu)
Soochipara fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A 3-tiered waterfall in Wayanad district of Kerala
Meenmutty fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Literally means "where fishes are blocked" in Malayalam • Located in Kerala
Vazhachal fall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Located on Chalakydy river in Kerala



4

CHAPTER

Climate of India

- **Tropical climate** but its **northern part** (north of tropic of cancer) is situated in the **temperate belt**.
- **Indian subcontinent separated** from rest of **Asia** by **Himalayan** ranges - **block cold air masses** moving southwards from **Central Asia**. So, during **winters**, **northern half** of **India** is **warmer** by **3°C - 8°C** than other areas located on same latitudes.
- **Summer - climate in southern parts - equatorial dry climate**.
- **North Indian plains** - hot dry wind k/a '**loo**' blowing from the **Thar, Baloch, and Iranian Deserts**, **increase temperatures** as much as southern parts of country.
- **Seasonal reversal of winds** in Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal gives **India** a **typical tropical monsoon climate**.

Seasons in India

1. Winter Season

- **Duration:** January to March
- **Average Temperature:**
 - 10–15-degree Celsius - northwest;
 - 20–25 degree Celsius - southeast;
 - Lowest temperature- 0.6 degrees Celsius in Jammu and Kashmir.
- **Cold regions** - under **westerly winds** blowing from west to east along with an altitude of 9-3 km.
- **Western cyclonic disturbances** by westerly winds in **Mediterranean Sea** catalyses presence of winters in India.

2. Summer Season

- **Duration:**
 - April -July -northwest India
 - March -June in other parts
- **Average temperature:**
 - April - hottest in the west
 - May - hottest month in the rest of India.
- **Maximum temperature**- 50 degrees Celsius
- **Coastal areas** - 36 degrees Celsius.
- **Intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ)** experiences a **low pressure** during **July**.
- **Wind inflow scatters** in different directions **leading to warm winds** over the Indian subcontinent.

- **Also known as loo** - blows over north Indian surface during mid-afternoons.
- **Kerala and Tamil Nadu** experience **pre-monsoon** or **mango showers**.

3. Monsoon Season

- Four months with **massive thunderstorms**.
- **Thunderstorms** are a **result** of the **southeast trade blowing winds**.
- Occurs **primarily** in the **low-pressure areas** of the **south**.
- **Arrives** in India **through Bay of Bengal** and **Arabian Sea** around May
- A **strong impact** on **agricultural activities** in India.

4. Post-Monsoon Season

- Occurs **during October** and **November** (just before the winter season).
- Brings **dry, dense, and cool air** to the **central parts** of **Asia**.
- Results in **clear skies**.
- **Average temperature** - 28 - 34 degrees Celsius.
- **Tamil Nadu** and **Kerala** experience substantial precipitation.

Indian Monsoon

- **Climate of India** - '**tropical monsoon**' type.
- **Term** derived from **Arabic word 'mousim'** / **Malayan word 'monsin'** meaning **season**.
- Characterized by a **seasonal reversal** in the direction of **wind**.
- **Flow from sea to land** during **summer** and from **land to sea** during **winter** due to difference in temperature and pressure system.
- **Prominent within tropics** on **eastern sides**
- **Asia** - **outside the tropics** in **China, Korea and Japan**.

Mechanism

No theory has been able to **explain the phenomenon of monsoon fully**.

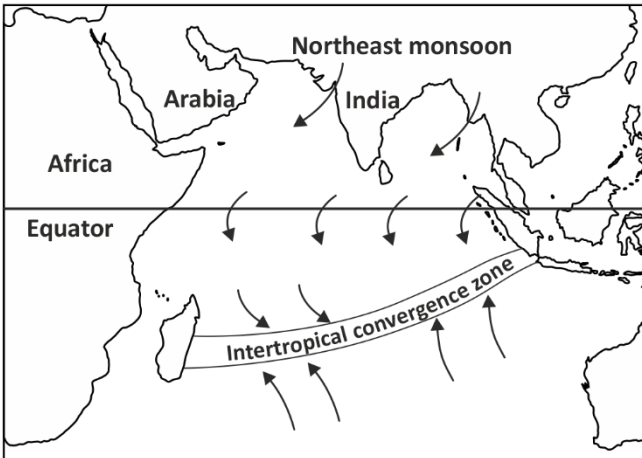
1. Classical Theory/ Thermal Concept

- By **Sir Edmund Halley** in 1686.

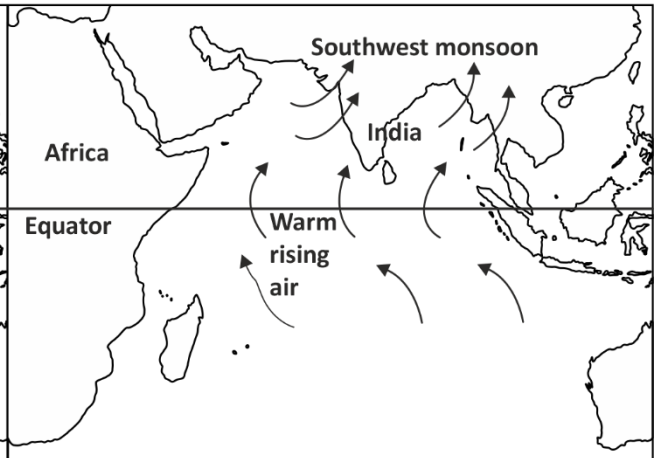
- **Monsoons** are **land and sea breezes** on gigantic scale **produced by differential seasonal heating** of **continental** and **oceans**.

- **Considers monsoon** as a **result of differential rates of heating and cooling** of **land and sea**.

Winter



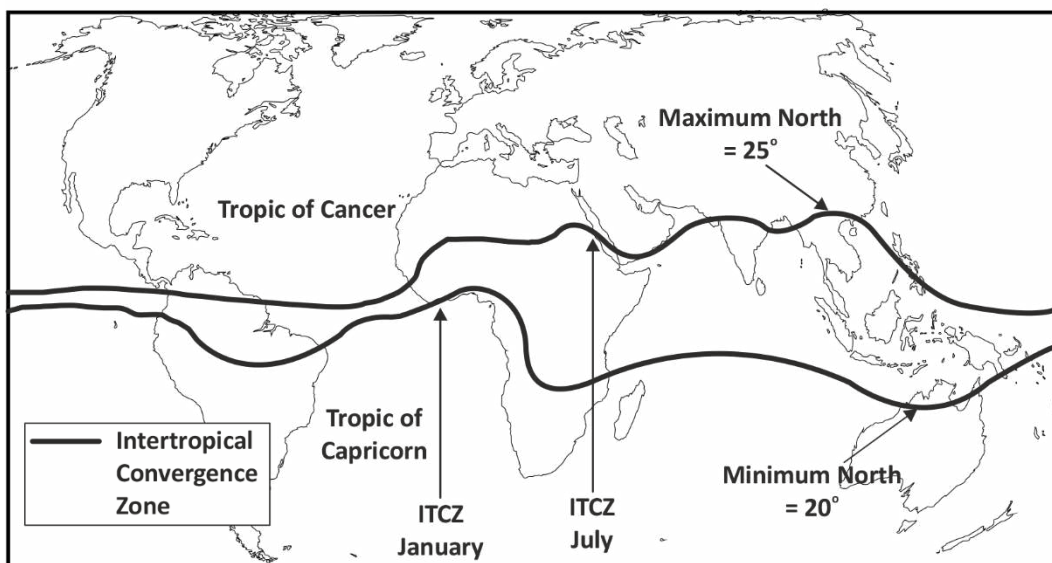
Summer



2. Shifting of ITCZ Theory

- Propounded by **H. Flohn** of Germany in **1951**.
- **Monsoon system** of tropical Asia is a **consequence of the seasonal changes in planetary wind system**.
 - Seasonal changes **caused by seasonal swing of temperature and pressure belts** due to changes in **overhead position of sun**.
- **March -September** - sun is **overhead the equatorial area in tropics** - **intense heating** which creates a belt of **low pressure region**.
 - This low pressure belt **attracts north-east trade winds from northern hemisphere** and **south-east trade winds from southern hemisphere**.
- **Convergence of these two trade winds** leads to **ascending of air** creating a **low pressure situation**. k/a **Inter-tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ)**.

- **Change in apparent position of sun** towards **tropic of cancer** → **change in ITCZ**.
- **July** - ITCZ is located around **20°N-25°N latitudes** (over the Gangetic plain) k/a **monsoon trough**.
 - This **monsoon trough** creates **low pressure area over north and northwest India**.
- Due to **shift of ITCZ**, **south-east trade winds of southern hemisphere cross equator** between **40° - 60°E longitudes**.
- **Change their direction** due to **Coriolis force** and **start blowing from southwest to northeast** k/a 'southwest monsoon'.
- **Winter** → apparent movement of sun toward **tropic of Capricorn** → **ITCZ moves southward** → **reversal of wind direction** in Indian subcontinent.
- **Wind blows from northeast to southwest** k/a **winter monsoon/ 'northeast monsoon'**.



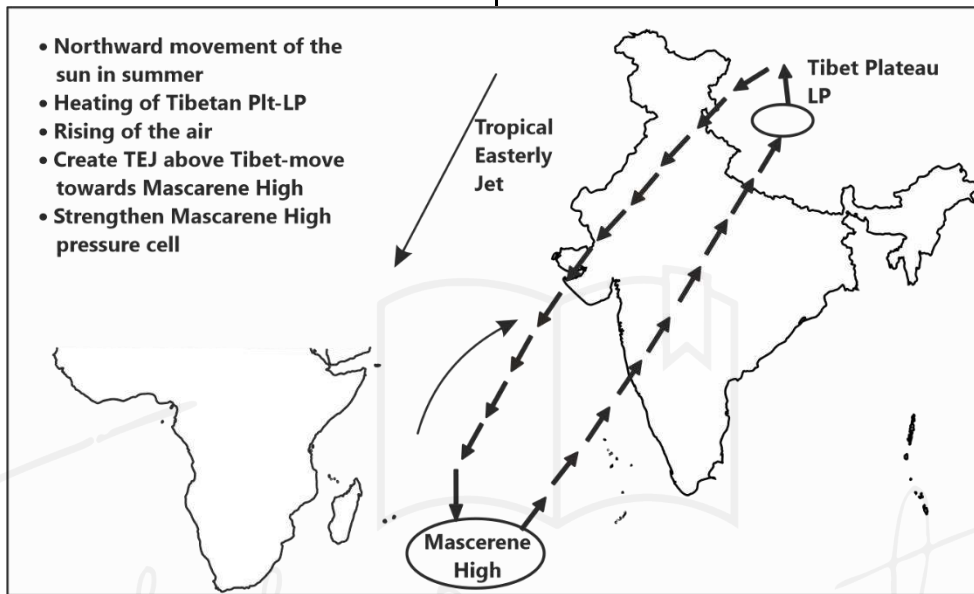
Average Position of ITCZ in January and July

3. Recent Concepts:

A. Role of Tibetan Plateau:

- **Area** - 2.5 million sq. km.
- **Average height** - 4000-5000 m.
- **Characterized by poor vegetation cover** and surrounded by **snow-clad mountain ranges** → **intense heating** in summer - 2 - 3-degree C warmer than air over nearby region.
- **Heating** leads to a **clockwise air circulation** in the **middle troposphere** and **two-wind streams originate**.
 - One blows **southward** and develop into **tropical easterly jet stream (TEJ)**.
 - Other blows in an opposite direction towards North Pole and becomes **westerly jet stream** over **Central Asia**.

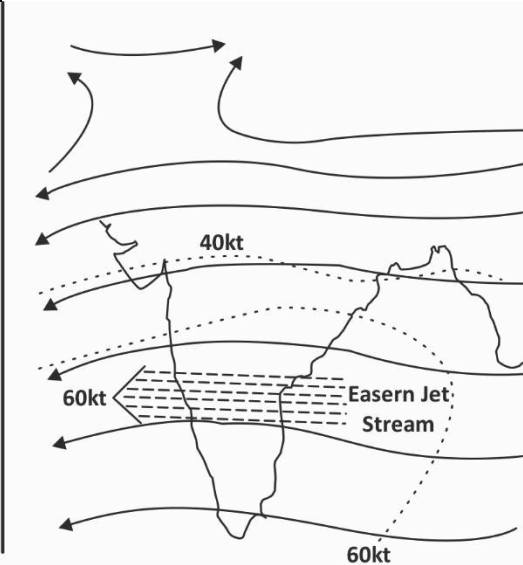
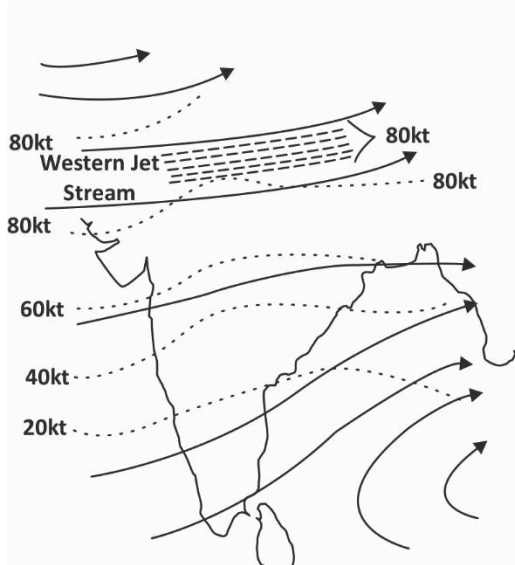
- **Summer** → apparent movement of sun towards tropic of cancer → **temperature** over Tibetan Plateau **remains high** for a sufficiently long duration.
- **Air ascends to upper troposphere** → **high pressure area** in upper troposphere → creation of **anticyclonic conditions** and **land-ocean pressure differences**.
- **Pressure gradient** leads to **movement of air mass** to Indian sub-continent as **equatorial easterly jet stream**.
- After **reaching Mascarene Islands**, near Madagascar, it **starts descending** and comes to the **Indian sub-continent** as a south west monsoon.



B. Role of Jet Stream:

- This concept states that **burst of monsoon depends** upon **upper air circulation**.
- **2 prominent jet streams** affect monsoon winds:
- **Subtropical westerly jet stream:**
 - **Dominates in winters** in upper troposphere circulation of northern latitudes.
 - Can be **located over Indian sub-continent** at a height of **~12 km**.

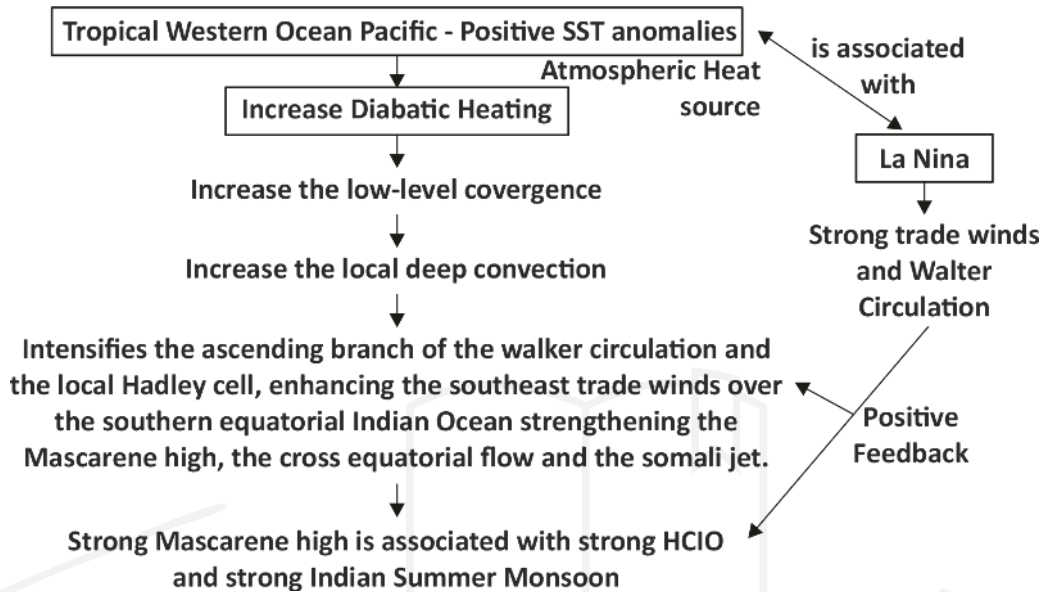
- **Himalayan mountain system** splits jet stream into **two parts**.
- **Equatorial easterly jet stream:**
 - **Dominates during Indian monsoons**.
 - **Appears as a band of strong easterlies** extending from south East Asia across the **Indian Ocean and Africa** to the Atlantic.



C. Role of ENSO:

- Indian monsoon is also influenced by EL-Nino, southern oscillation and Somali current.
- El Nino - reversal of normal conditions in Pacific Ocean's sea surface temperature.
- No direct correlation b/w bad monsoon and El Nino, both are generally associated.
 - Years when India faced severe drought not ElNino years and vice-versa.

- Southern Oscillation -see-saw pattern of atmospheric pressure b/w eastern and western Pacific Ocean.
 - Has a period varying from 2-7 years?
 - Measured with Southern Oscillation Index (SOI) by measuring pressure difference b/w two points in Pacific Ocean (Tahiti and Darwin).
 - A negative value of SOI implies high pressure over north Indian Ocean during winter season and a poor monsoon.



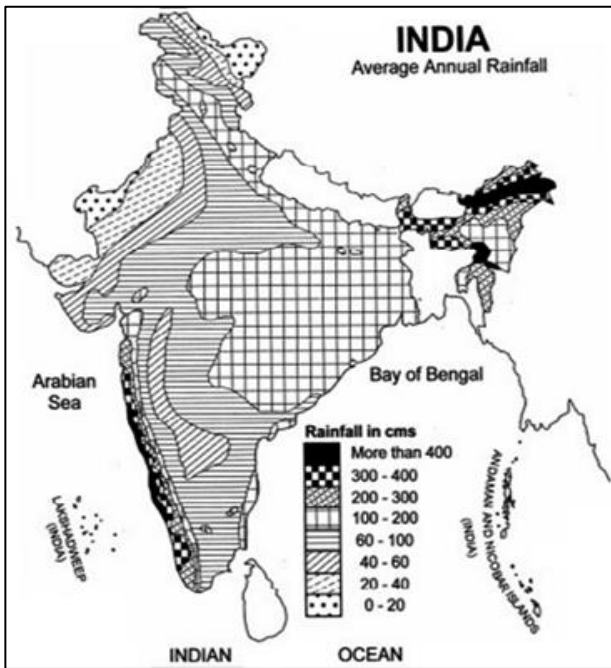
- Somali current changes its direction of flow after every six months.
- North-East Monsoon - Somali Current flows to south-west.
- South-West Monsoon - major western boundary current, comparable with the Gulf Stream.
- Normally, a low pressure area along the eastern coast of Somalia.
- Every six or seven year - low pressure area in western Arabian Sea becomes a high pressure area.
 - Pressure reversal - weaker monsoon in India.

- an eastern pole in the eastern Indian Ocean south of Indonesia.
- Involves a periodic oscillation of sea-surface temperatures (SST), b/w "positive", "neutral" and "negative" phases.
- Positive phase:
 - > average sea-surface temperatures and greater precipitation in the western Indian Ocean region
 - cooling of waters in eastern Indian Ocean which tends to cause droughts in adjacent land areas of Indonesia and Australia.
- Negative phase: warmer water and greater precipitation in the eastern Indian Ocean, and cooler and drier conditions in the west.
- Positive and negative IOD both seen coupled with La Nina.
- So, no direct correlation b/w IOD and ENSO.
- Affects the strength of monsoons over Indian subcontinent.

D. Indian Ocean Dipole:

- Also known as the Indian Nino.
- A coupled Ocean-atmosphere phenomenon in the Indian Ocean.
- Defined by difference in sea surface temperature b/w two areas:
 - a western pole in the Arabian Sea (western Indian Ocean)

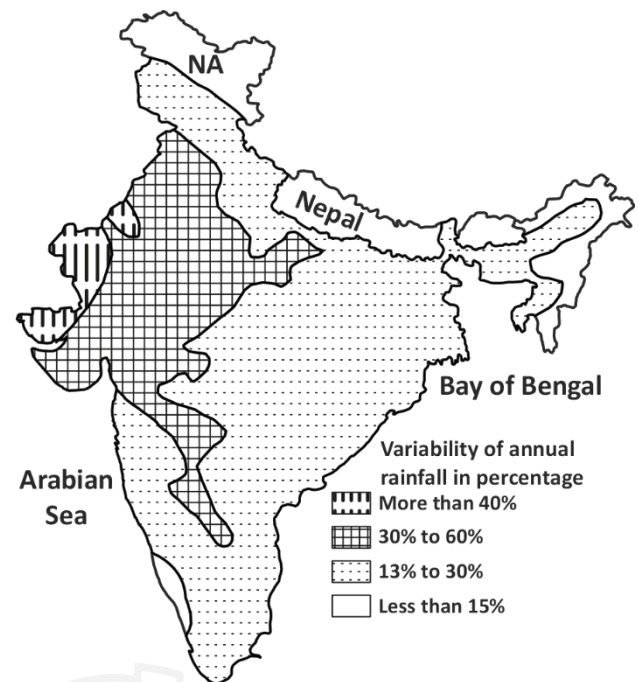
Rainfall Distribution in India



- **Uneven distribution** in India.
- **India** divided into **4 regions** on the basis of the distribution of rainfall:

Category	Rainfall (cm)	Regions
Heavy Rainfall	More than 200	Western Coast, Western Ghats, Sub-Himalayan Region of North-East, Garo, Khasi and Jaintia Hills of Meghalaya. In Some Parts, Rain Exceeds 1000 cm.
Moderate rainfall	Between 100 to 200	100 cm isohyet extends from Gujarat to south up to Kanyakumari parallel to Western Ghats. Northern Andhra Pradesh, eastern part of Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Odisha, some parts of Jammu and Kashmir
Low rainfall	Between 60 to 100	Most parts of Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, eastern Rajasthan, southwestern Uttar Pradesh
Inadequate rainfall	Less than 60	Punjab, Haryana, northwestern Rajasthan, Kutch, Kathiawar

Variability of Annual Rainfall



- Refers to **variations in rainfall from the average amount**.
- **Study** of variability of rainfall in an agricultural country such as India is very **important**.
- **Actual rainfall** of a place in a year **deviates** from its **average rainfall** by **10 - > 60 %**.
- **Highest variability** in areas where **average annual rainfall** is **lowest** such as desert areas of Rajasthan (**60% variability**).
- **Areas** with average annual rainfall **> 200 cm** (Meghalaya plateau, Western Ghats)- annual **variability < 10 %**.
- **Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Maharashtra** etc. (**15-30%** annual variability).
- **Variability increases** from **western coast** to **interior** of the **Peninsular region** and from West Bengal and Odisha towards north and north-west

Some basic Terms Related to Pre-Monsoon	
Term	Description
Mango Showers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pre-monsoon showers in Karnataka and Kerala • Help in the ripening of mangoes • Also known as April rains or summer showers • Result of thunderstorms over the Bay of Bengal • Come in the second half of the month of April • Prevent mangoes from dropping prematurely from trees

Cherry Blossom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Karnataka and associated region ● Local thunderstorms ● Caused due to the meeting of humid sea winds and hot dry local wind ● Occur in the month of April & May ● Help in the ripening of coffee plants
-----------------------	---

Kal Baishakhi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pre monsoon Showers ● In Bengal & Assam
Norwesters	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Shallow cyclonic disturbances that travel to India from Mediterranean Sea and Persian Gulf ● Cause rainfall in the East India viz. Assam, West Bengal, & Orissa during winter season





 Toppernotes

 Unleash the topper in you

5

CHAPTER

Soils in India

Types of Soils in India

1. Alluvial Soils

- **Largest soil group** covering about **15 lakh sq km (46 % area)**.
- **Characteristics:**
 - **Immature** and have **weak profiles**.
 - **Vary from loamy to sandy-loam** in **drier regions** and **clayey loam** towards the **delta**.
 - **Rare pebbly** and **gravelly soils**.
 - **Kankars are present** in some regions along river terraces.
 - **Good porosity** and **texture** provide **good drainage** and other conditions favourable for agriculture.
 - **Constantly replenished** by recurrent floods.
- **Chemical properties:**
 - **Poor** in **nitrogen**.
 - **Adequate Potash, phosphoric acid, and alkalis**.
 - **Iron oxide** and **lime vary** within a wide range.
- **Distribution:**
 - Occur all along the **Indo-Gangetic-Brahmaputra plains** except where the top layer is covered by desert sand.
 - Also occurs in **deltas** of **Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, and Cauvery**, known as deltaic alluvium.
- **Crops:**
 - Best suited for agriculture.
 - **Rice, wheat, sugarcane, tobacco, cotton, jute, maize, oilseeds, vegetables, and fruits** are grown

2. Black Soils

- **Region of high temperature** and **low rainfall**.
- Covers **15 % area**
- **Black colour** - due to **Titani-ferrous magnetic compounds** in basalt.
- **Characteristics:**
 - **Highly argillaceous** (relating to, or containing > 62% clay or clay minerals).
 - **Highly retentive** of **moisture** - swells greatly on accumulating moisture.
 - **Summer - moisture evaporates - soil shrinks - broad and deep cracks -oxygenation** of soil to sufficient depths - **extraordinary fertility**.
- **Chemical Composition:**
 - **Alumina**- 10 %,
 - **Iron Oxide** - 9-10 %,
 - **Lime and magnesium carbonates** - 6-8%,
 - **Potash** - variable (< 0.5 %)
 - **Poor** in **phosphates, nitrogen, and humus**.
- **Distribution:**

- **Deccan lava plateau region**.
- **States-** Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, parts of Karnataka, Telangana, Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, and Tamil Nadu.
- **Crops:**
 - **Best suited for cotton**-also known as regur and black cotton soils.
 - **Other** - wheat, jowar, linseed, Virginia tobacco, castor, sunflower, & millets.
 - **Rice** and **sugarcane** where **irrigation** facilities are available.
 - **Vegetables** and **fruits** are also grown.

3. Red Soil

- Occupies **2nd largest area** in the country (**18.5 %**).
- **Color-** due to **ferric oxides** (Top layer - red and horizon - yellowish).
- **Texture: Sandy to clay** and **loamy**.
- Also known as **omnibus group**.
- **Characteristics:**
 - **Rainfall is highly variable**.
 - **3 subtypes:**
 - **Red & Yellow soil** – Nagaland, Mizoram, Manipur Hills, parts of Malabar coast,
 - **Red Sandy Soil** – Drier plateaus like Karnataka, TN, Telangana, and Rayalseema.
 - **Red Alluvial Soil** – Along river valleys
- **Chemical Composition:**
 - Poor in **phosphate, lime, magnesia, humus** and **nitrogen**.
 - Rich in **iron** and **potash**
- **Distribution:** From **Tamil Nadu** in the south to **Bundelkhand** in the north and **Raj Mahal** in the east to **Kathiawar** in the west.
- **Crops:**
 - **Rice, sugarcane, and cotton** cultivation with **proper irrigation**.
 - **Millets** and **pulses** are grown in **drier areas**
 - **Rubber** and **coffee plantation farming** (Karnataka and Kerala).

4. Laterite Soil

- **Characteristics:**
 - **Brown** in colour
 - Composed of a **mixture of hydrated oxides of Aluminum and Iron**.
 - **Iron oxides** in **nodules** form
- **Chemical composition:**
 - **Rich** in **Iron and Aluminum**.
 - **Poor** in **Nitrogen, Phosphorus, Potash, Lime, and Magnesia**.

- **Moderate to low humus** (leached due to high bacterial activity and heavy precipitation) and water-retaining capacities.
- **Distribution**
 - **Western Ghats** (Goa and Maharashtra).
 - In the **Belgaum** district of **Karnataka** and the laterite plateau of **Kerala**
 - **Odisha** - Eastern Ghats,
 - **Amarkantak plateau** region, MP
 - **Panchmahal** district, **Gujarat**;
 - **Santhal Pargana** divisions, **Jharkhand**
- **Crops:**
 - **Groundnut, cashew nut**, etc.
 - **Karnataka** - **coffee, rubber**, and **spices** farming.

5. Forest Soil/ Mountain Soil

- **Characteristics:**
 - **Thin layered and profiles and horizons poorly developed**
 - **Fast drainage** - vulnerable to soil erosion
- **Chemical composition:**
 - **Adequate humus** content
 - **Deficient in other nutrients.**
- **Distribution**
 - Found **over 900m altitude**
 - **Himalayas, Himalayan foothills, mountain slopes of Western Ghats, Nilgiris, Annamalai, and Cardamom hills**
- **Crops:**
 - **Rubber** plantation, **bamboo** plantation and **tea, coffee**, and **fruits** farming
 - Large area also given to **shifting agriculture**
 - **Silvi pastoral farming** was also sustained.

6. Desert Soil

- **Characteristics:**
 - **Lacks moisture** content.
 - **Sandy** with low organic matter.
 - **Less microorganisms.**
- **Chemical composition:**
 - **Low Humus & Nitrogen** (but some are available as nitrates).

- **Rich in iron, lime and bases.**
- **Sufficient phosphorus.**
- **Low soluble salts.**
- **Distribution:** Arid and semi-arid areas of **Rajasthan, West Aravallis, Northern Gujarat, Saurashtra, Kutch, Western Haryana**, and the **southern part of Punjab.**
- **Crops:**
 - **High agricultural return** if irrigated.
 - **Bajra, pulses, fodder**, and **guar.**

7. Saline and Alkaline Soil

- **Characteristics:**
 - **Infertile**
 - Also known as **Reh, Usar, Kallar, Rakar, Thur**, and **Chopan.**
 - **Lack of moisture, humus, and living microorganisms**
- **Chemical composition:**
 - **Contains large amounts of Sodium chloride and sodium sulphate.**
 - **Poor in potash and phosphate.**
- **Distribution:** Rajasthan, Haryana, Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, and Maharashtra.
- **Crops:** Mainly **leguminous**

8. Peaty and Marshy Soil/ Bog Soil

- **Characteristics**
 - Heavy due to the dominance of **clay and mud.**
 - **Rich in moisture** content.
 - **Infertile** due to:
 - **Greater salt content of salt.**
 - **Regular inundation** by high tide.
 - **No organic activity.**
- **Chemical composition:**
 - **Rich in organic matter.**
 - **Poor in potash and phosphate.**
- **Distribution:** **Delta region of India, Alleppey (Kerala), Almora (Uttaranchal)**
- **Crops:**
 - **Bengal delta- jute and rice.**
 - **Malabar** - **spices, rubber, big-sized rice**

Soil Conservation

- **Methods for soil conservation:**

Crop Rotation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To grow a different crop on a piece of land each year. ● Conserves soil fertility as different crops require different nutrients from the soil.
Strip Cropping	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Crops cultivated in alternate strips parallel to one another. ● Some strips were allowed to lie fallow while other crops were sown in other strips. ● Various crops are harvested at different intervals - the entire area is never left bare or exposed. ● Tall growing crops - windbreaks ● Strips - increasing water absorption by slowing down runoff.
Contour Ploughing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ploughing done at right angles to hill slope such that ridges and furrows break water flow down the hill.
Checking Shifting Cultivation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● By persuading tribal people to turn to settled agriculture.
Ploughing in Right Direction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ploughing the land in a direction perpendicular to wind direction reduces wind velocity; protects topsoil from erosion.
Mulching	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Bare ground between plants covered with a protective layer of organic matter like grass clippings, straw, etc.

Contour barriers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stones, grass, and soil build barriers along contours. • Trenches made in front of barriers to collect water which intercepts downslope flowing water and soil particles.
Rock dam	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rocks piled up across a channel to slow down the flow of water. • Prevents gullies and further soil loss.
Terrace farming	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Terraces cut along the hill slope. • Made on steep slopes. • Can reduce surface run-off and soil erosion.
Contour Bunding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Involves construction of banks along contours.
Intercropping	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Different crops are grown in alternate rows and sown at different times to protect the soil from rain wash.
Shelter belts or Windbreaks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coastal and dry regions - rows of trees planted to check wind movement to protect soil cover.
Sand fences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Barriers made of small, evenly spaced wooden slabs. • Reduce wind velocity and trap blowing sand. • Can be used as perimeter controls.
Afforestation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prevention of forest destruction along with growing new forests or increase area under forests.
Dams	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Constructing dams across rivers in proper places checks speed of water and saves soil from erosion.



Toppernotes
Unleash the topper in you

6

CHAPTER

Agriculture in India

Agricultural Revolutions in India

Revolution	Product related	Person associated with
Protein Revolution	Higher Production (Technology driven 2nd Green revolution).	Coined by PM Narendra Modi and FM Arun Jaitley.
Yellow Revolution	Oilseed Production (Especially Mustard & Sunflower).	Sam Pitroda
Black Revolution	Petroleum products.	
Blue Revolution	Fish Production	Dr. Arun Krishnan.
Brown Revolution	Leather / Cocoa / Non-Conventional Products.	
Golden Fiber Revolution	Jute Production	
Golden Revolution	Fruits / Honey Production / Horticulture Development	Nirpakh Tutej.
Grey Revolution	Fertilizers.	
Pink Revolution	Onion Production / Pharmaceuticals / Prawn Production.	Durgesh Patel.
Evergreen Revolution	Overall Production of Agriculture.	Started in 11th 5 year Plan.
Silver Revolution	Egg Production / Poultry Production	Indira Gandhi.
Silver Fiber Revolution	Cotton.	
Red Revolution	Meat Production / Tomato Production.	Vishal Tewari.
Round Revolution	Potato.	
Green Revolution	Food Grains.	Norman Borlong, M.S. Swaminathan, William Goud (UK).
White Revolution (Operation Flood)	Milk Production.	Verghese Kurien.

Cropping Seasons in India

Cropping Season	Major Crops cultivated	
	Northern States	Southern States
Kharif (June-September)	Rice, cotton, Bajara, Maize, Jowar, Tur	Rice, Maize, Ragi, Jowar, Groundnut
Rabi (October-March)	Wheat, Gram, Rapeseeds and Mustard, Barley	Rice, Maize, Ragi, Groundnut, Jowar
Zaid (April-June)	Vegetables, Fruits, Fodder	Rice, Vegetables, Fodder

Important Crops of India

1. Rice

- **India**- 21.6 % of rice production in the world - second after China.
- **Temperature**: Between 22-32°C with high humidity.
- **Annual rainfall** - 100 – 200 cm.
- **Soil**- clayey loamy soil as it can hold the moisture for a long time.
- **Labour intensive**.
- **States**: West Bengal > Punjab > Uttar Pradesh > Andhra Pradesh > Bihar.
- **Southern states and West Bengal**- 2/3 crops of rice in an agricultural year.
 - **West Bengal** - k/a 'aus', 'aman' and 'boro'.
- **Staple food crop** of majority of Indian people.
- **Government initiatives**: National Food Security Mission, Hybrid Rice Seed Production and Rashtriya Krishi Vikas Yojana.

2. Wheat

- **India** - 12 % of total wheat production of world.
- **Temperature**: Between 10-15°C (Sowing time) and 21-26°C (Ripening & Harvesting) with bright sunlight.
- **Rainfall**: Around 75-100 cm.
- **Soil**: Well-drained fertile loamy and clayey loamy (Ganga-Satluj plains and black soil region of the Deccan)
- **States**: Uttar Pradesh > Punjab > Madhya Pradesh > Haryana > Rajasthan.
- **India** - second largest producer after China.
- **Second most important cereal crop** after China and main food crop, in north and north-western India.
- **Government initiatives**: Macro Management Mode of Agriculture, National Food Security Mission and Rashtriya Krishi Vikas Yojana

3. Maize

- **Temperature:** 21-27°C
- **Rainfall:** High rainfall.
- **Soil:** Old alluvial soil.
- **States:** Karnataka > Maharashtra > Madhya Pradesh > Tamil Nadu > Telangana
- **India - 7th largest** producer worldwide.
- Used both as **food** and **fodder**.
- **Occupies only ~ 3.6 %** of the total cropped area.
- **Sown all over India** except eastern and north-eastern regions

4. Milets

- **Temperature:** 27-32°C
- **Rainfall:** 50-100 cm.
- **Soil :** Inferior alluvial or loamy soil-less sensitive to soil deficiencies.
- **States:** Rajasthan > Karnataka > Maharashtra > Madhya Pradesh > Uttar Pradesh
- **Types:**
 - **Jowar-**
 - **Rain-fed** crop
 - **Grown in moist areas** with less or no irrigation.
 - **States:** Maharashtra > Karnataka > Madhya Pradesh > Tamil Nadu > Andhra Pradesh.
 - **Bajra-**
 - **Sandy soils and shallow black soil.**
 - **States:** Rajasthan > Uttar Pradesh > Gujarat > Madhya Pradesh > Haryana.
 - **Ragi- Red, black, sandy, loamy and shallow black soils.** (dry regions)
- **Also known as** coarse grains.
- Very rich in **iron, calcium, other micronutrients**
- **Government initiatives:** National Agricultural Insurance Scheme, Initiative for Nutritional Security through Intensive Millets Promotion

5. Pulses

- **Temperature:** 20-27°C
- **Rainfall:** 25-60 cm.
- **Soil :** Sandy-loamy soil.
- **States:** Madhya Pradesh > Rajasthan > Maharashtra > Uttar Pradesh > Karnataka.
- India - **largest producer & consumer.**
- **Major** source of **protein** in a vegetarian diet.
- **Major pulses** - tur (arhar), urad, moong, masur, peas and gram.
- Help in **restoring soil fertility** by fixing nitrogen from the air.
- **Government initiatives:** National Food Security Mission for Pulses, Pulses Development Scheme and Technological Mission on Pulses.

6. Cotton

- **Temperature:** 20-35°C
- **Rainfall:** 50 - 80cm
- **Soil:** Black Soil of Deccan plateau, alluvial and red soils
- **States:** Maharashtra, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Punjab,

Haryana and Uttar Pradesh.

- **Most important industrial crop** of India.
- **Cultivated** in about **45% of the total sown area** in the country.

7. Jute

- **Temperature:** 24°C - 35°C
- **Rainfall:** 125 – 200cm
- **Soil:** clay to sandy loam, but loamy alluvial are best suited.
- **States:** West Bengal (largest producer in India), Bihar, Assam, Odisha and Meghalaya.
- Also known as **golden fibre** and is **India's major cash crop.**
- Obtained from the **inner bark of jute plant.**
- **Uses-** gunny bags, mats, ropes, yarn, carpets and other artefacts.
- A **soil-exhausting crop** like sugarcane lowers soil fertility rapidly.
- **India- largest producer in the world.**
- **Important Varieties:** Mesta

8. Sugarcane

- **Temperature:** 21-27°C
- **Rainfall:** 75-100cm.
- **Soil:** Red volcanic soils, alluvial soils
- **States:** Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Bihar, Punjab and Haryana.
- A **tropical & sub-tropical crop.**
- **North India- sub-tropical** variety - **low sugar** content.
- **South India - tropical** variety - **high sugar** content and high yield.
- A **soil-exhausting crop** - regular application of manure or fertilisers.
- India - **original homeland of sugarcane**
- Has the **largest area** under sugarcane in the world.
- India - **second largest producer** after Brazil.

9. Tobacco

- **Temperature:** 15- 40°C
- **Rainfall:** 50-100 cm or irrigation facilities
- **Soil:** Alluvial soils, black clayey or loamy soils
- **States:** Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Bihar.
- Brought to **India by the Portuguese.**
- **Uses:** Making cigarettes, cigars, beedi etc.
- **Stem is used as potash fertilizer** and powder as an insecticide.
- **> 1/3rd of tobacco** in the country is produced by **Andhra Pradesh alone.**

10. Groundnut

- **Temperature:** 21-35°C
- **Rainfall:** 40-125 cm
- **Soil:** Well-drained sandy loam or clay loam soil
- **States:** Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Maharashtra and Rajasthan.
- **Gujarat - largest** producing state (40%).
- **Most important** oil seed of India.
- **Thrives** best in the **tropical** climate.
- **Highly susceptible** to **frost, drought, continuous**

rain and stagnant water.

11. Sesamum

- **Temperature:** 25-35°C
- **Rainfall:** 50-75 cm
- **Soil:** Sandy loam soils
- **States:** Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Gujarat.
- **Comprises 45 -50 % oil used for cooking** and manufacturing perfumery and medicines.
- **India – the world's largest area** under Sesamum - **largest producer** (1/3rd of world production).
- Mainly a **Rainfed crop** in India.

12. Mustard:

- **Temperature:** 18°C - 25°C
- **Rainfall:** 350-550mm
- **Soil:** Alluvial loam, Sandy to heavy clay soil
- **States:** Rajasthan, Haryana, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, West Bengal
- **Second most crucial** oilseed crop of India after Groundnut.
- Generally grown as a **Rabi crop**.
- **India - largest area** and **highest production**.

13. Linseed:

- **Temperature:** 15°C- 30°C
- **Rainfall:** 700-750 mm
- **Soil:** Silty loam, clay loam and silty clays
- **States:** Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, Bihar, Maharashtra, Odisha, Uttar Pradesh, West Bengal and Assam
- **Rabi crop**

14. Soyabean

- **Temperature:** 15°C- 32°C
- **Rainfall:** 60-65 cm
- **Soil:** Sandy-loam soils
- **States:** Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Rajasthan, Karnataka, Chattisgarh and Telangana.

15. Sunflower

- **Temperature:** 20°C- 25°C
- **Rainfall:** ~ 50 cm
- **Soil:** Well-drained sandy loams, black soils and alluvial soils
- **States:** Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Maharashtra, Bihar, Odisha, Tamil Nadu

16. Tea

- **Temperature:** 13°C and 28-32°C
- **Rainfall:** 150cm-250cm
- **Soil:** Well-drained and deep loam
- **States:** Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu, Kerala, Tripura, Arunachal Pradesh, Himachal Pradesh, Karnataka, Sikkim, Nagaland, Uttarakhand, Manipur, Mizoram, Meghalaya, Bihar, Orissa.
- Most suitable soils are **slightly acidic** and **without calcium**.

- **Tea shrubs** grow **better** when **shielded** from **strong sunlight** or **violent winds**.

- **Capital-intensive**

17. Coffee

- **Temperature:** 15- 28°C
- **Rainfall:** 150cm-250cm
- **Soil:** Fertile volcanic red earth or deep sandy loam.
- **States:** Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Odisha as well as in the North East states.
- Predominantly an **export-oriented commodity**
- **65% to 70%** of the coffee produced in the country is exported.
- **Main Varieties:** Arabica and Robusta.

18. Rubber

- **Temperature:** 20 to 34 °C
- **Rainfall:** ~250cm
- **Soil:** Laterite or loamy.
- **States:** Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Tripura, Assam and Meghalaya, Odisha, Karnataka, Maharashtra and West Bengal
- Made from the **latex of a tree called Hevea Brasiliensis**.
- **Cheap** and **adequate supply of skilled labour** is needed for this plantation crop.

19. Arecanut

- **Temperature:** 14- 36°C
- **Rainfall:** 75-450 mm
- **Soil:** Gravelly laterite soils of red clay type, fertile clay loam soils.
- **States :** Karnataka, Kerala, Assam, West Bengal and Meghalaya
- Popularly known as **betel nut** or **Supari**.

20. Coconut

- **Temperature:** 27 ± 5° C
- **Rainfall:** ~ 200 cm
- **Soil:** laterite, alluvial, red sandy loam, coastal sandy, and reclaimed soils with a pH ranging from 5.2 to 8.0.
- **States:** Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.
- **India** ranks **third** in the **area** and **production** of coconut in the **world**.

21. Spices

- India - **world's largest producer, consumer** and **exporter** of spices.
- Almost **all spices grow splendidly in India**.
- A total of **52 spices** under purview of the **Spices Board**.
- **India**- some states **grow spices** having **high value** in national and **international markets**.
- **Eg. Kashmiri saffron** - Geographical Indication (GI) tag status

7

CHAPTER

Forests and Wildlife in India

Forests in India

1. Tropical Evergreen Forests

a) Moist Evergreen Forests:

- **Region:** Found in southern India along the Western Ghats, Andaman and Nicobar Islands, and the northeastern region.
- **Climatic Conditions:** Found in warm and humid areas with annual precipitation of over 200 cm and mean annual temperature above 22°C.
- **Trees:** Trees reach heights up to 60 m or above in these forests.
 - There is **no definite time for trees to shed their leaves**, flowering, and fruition; these forests appear **green all year** round.
 - **Species found:** Rosewood, Mahogany, Aini, Ebony, etc.

b) Semi Evergreen Forests:

- **Region:** Found in the less rainy parts of the regions where moist evergreen forests are found; Western Ghats, Andaman and Nicobar Islands, and the Eastern Himalayas.
- **Trees:** a mixture of **moist evergreen and moist deciduous trees**.
 - The **undergrowing climbers** provide an **evergreen character** to these forests.
 - **Main species:** White Cedar, Hollock and Kail.

c) Dry evergreen:

- **Region:** Found in the Shivalik Hills and foothills of the Himalayas up to 1000 m in the north.
 - Found along Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka coast in the south.
- **Climatic Conditions:** Usually have a prolonged hot and dry season and a cold winter.
- **Trees:** Have mainly **hard-leaved evergreen** trees with **fragrant flowers**, along with a few deciduous trees.
 - Trees have a **varnished look**.
 - **Species Found:** pomegranate, olive, and oleander.

2. Tropical Deciduous Forests (Monsoon Forests)

a) Moist Deciduous Forests:

- **Region:** These forests are found in the north-eastern states along the foothills of Himalayas, eastern slopes of the Western Ghats and Odisha.
- **Rainfall:** Found in the regions which record rainfall between 100–200 cm.
- **Trees:** Tall trees with **broad, branched trunks**.

- Some of the taller trees **shed their leaves in the dry season**.
- **Species found:** Teak, Sal, Shisham, Hurra, Mahua, Amla, Semul, Kusum, and Sandalwood etc.

b) Dry Deciduous Forests:

- **Region:** Found throughout the northern part of the country except in the north-east.
 - Also found in Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, and Tamil Nadu.
- **Rainfall:** Covers vast areas of the country, where rainfall ranges between 70–100 cm.
 - On the wetter margins, it transitions to the moist deciduous, while on the drier margins, to thorn forests.
- **Trees:** As the dry season begins, the **trees shed their leaves entirely** and the forest appears like a vast grassland with naked trees.
 - **Species Found:** Tendu, Palash, Amaltas, Bel, Khair, Axlewood, etc.

3. Thorn Forests

- **Rainfall:** The forests occur in areas that receive annual rainfall less than 50cm.
- **Regions:** This type is found in areas with black soil: North, West, Central, and South India.
 - Includes semi-arid areas of southwest Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh.
- **Trees:** The trees do not grow beyond 10 m and consist of various grasses and shrubs. Spurge, caper, and cactus are typically found in this region.
 - The plants remain **leafless for most part of the year**.
 - **Species Found:** Babul, Acacia, Kokko, Khair, Khajuri, Ber, Neem, Khejri, Palas

4. Montane Forests

a) Montane Wet Temperate Forests:

- **Region:** Occur in the northern and southern India.
 - In the North, it is found in the region to the east of Nepal into Arunachal Pradesh, at a height of 1800–3000 m, receiving a minimum rainfall of 200 cm.

- In the South, it is found in parts of the Nilgiri Hills, the higher reaches of Kerala.
 - **Trees:** The forests in the northern region are denser than in the South.
 - This is because over time the original trees have been replaced by fast-growing varieties such as the eucalyptus.
 - **Species Found:** Rhododendrons, Champa, and a variety of ground flora
- b) **Montane Subtropical Forests:**
- **Climatic Conditions:** Average rainfall is 100-200 cm and temperature vary between 15°C to 22°C.
 - **Region:** Found in north-western Himalayas (except Ladakh and Kashmir), Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, and Arunachal Pradesh.
 - **Trees:** Chir (Pine), Oak, Jamun and Rhododendron
- c) **Himalayan Forests:**
- **Himalayan Moist Forests:**
 - **Region:** Found in Jammu & Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, and northern hilly parts of Bengal.
 - **Elevation:** Found in the belt where altitude varies between 1000-2000 m.
 - **Trees:** Oak, Chestnut, Chir, Sal, Shrubs and Nutritious Grasses.
 - **Himalayan Dry Temperate:**
 - **Region:** J&K, Chamba, Lahaul & Kinnaur districts (Himachal Pradesh) and Sikkim.
 - **Trees:** Mainly coniferous; Deodar, Oak, Chilgoza, Maple, Olive, Mulberry and Willow.
- d) **Alpine and Subalpine Forests:**
- **Elevation:** In the higher reaches, there is a transition to Alpine forests and pastures occurring at altitudes of 2,500-4,000 m.
 - Subalpine forests extend from Kashmir to Arunachal Pradesh between 2900 to 3500 m.
 - **Trees:** In the Western Himalayas, the vegetation consists mainly of juniper, rhododendron, willow, and black currant.
 - In the eastern parts, red fir, black juniper, birch, and larch are the common trees.

5. Littoral/Swamp Forests

- **Region:** Found along the Andaman and Nicobar Islands and the delta area of the Ganga and the Brahmaputra.
 - **Other areas:** Mahanadi, the Godavari, and the Krishna deltas.

- **Trees:** Some of these forests are **dense and impenetrable**. Only a limited number of plants are found in these evergreen forests.
 - Roots that consist of soft tissue so that the plant can breathe in the water.
 - **Species Found:** whistling pines, mangrove dates, palms, and bulletwood.

Grasslands in India

- **Covers 24% of land** in India.
- **Classified into:**
 1. **Sub-Himalayan Grasslands**
 - **Extends from foothills** of the **Himalayas** from **J&K to Arunachal Pradesh**.
 - Lies in the fertile **Terai region**.
 - Marked by **tall, dense grasses** with a **few trees**.
 2. **Montane Grasslands**
 - Also known as **mountainous grasslands**.
 - Found in **different mountainous areas**.
 - **Ecosystem based on** the **altitude** of mountains, **soil** and **rock** type, **slope** of the mountain, etc.
 - **Further classified**
 - Himalayan tropical and temperate grasslands
 - Alpine meadows
 - Trans-Himalayan Steppes
 - Found on **mountain slopes of the Himalayas** in **Kashmir, Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh** and **Sikkim**.
 - **Marg** grasslands - Kashmir
 - **Bugyal** grasslands - Uttarakhand
 - **Khajjiar** grasslands - Himachal Pradesh
 - **Dzukou Valley** - Uttarakhand
 - **Ukhrul** grasslands - Manipur
 - **Saramati** grasslands - Nagaland, etc.
 3. **Montane Grasslands of Central India:**
 - Found on the **mountainous regions** of **Satpura** and **Vindhya** ranges, **Western** and **Eastern Ghats**.
 - **Dry but tall grasses**; also known as tropical savannas.
 - **Grasslands on ghats** - short length grasses.
 - **Eg.** Shola grasslands - Karnataka.
 - **Tropical Savannas** are also found in some parts of **Rajasthan** in the **Thar Desert**, some parts of **Aravali**, **Shivalik Hills**, and some parts of the **Deccan Plateau** covering Maharashtra and Karnataka.
 4. **Riverine Alluvial Grasslands:** Found on **fertile Indo-Gangetic plain**, **Brahmaputra plain** and **rivers of central India** like **Narmada, Cauvery, Krishna**, etc.
 5. **Coastal Grasslands:** Spread over **beach sand** forming a **thick mat-like cover**. **Eg.** Banni and Vidi grassland - Rann of Kachch, Gujarat.

6. Wet Grasslands:

- **Mainly** found in **water-logged areas** of **northern plains**.
- also known as **floating grasslands**
- Marked by **dense, tall vegetation**.
- **Semi-aquatic species** of grasses dominate these grasslands.
- **E.g.,** Phumdi grassland - Manipur.

Conservation of Forests:

1. National Forest Policy, 1988

- Emphasizes **protection, conservation, and development of the forests**.
- **Aims –**
 - Maintenance of **environmental stability** through preservation and restoration of ecological balance.
 - **Conservation** of forests.
 - **Controlling soil erosion and denudation** in catchment areas of rivers, lakes and reservoirs.
 - **Checking sand dunes** in desert areas and along coastal tracts.
 - **Increasing forest cover** through massive afforestation.
 - **Increasing productivity** of forests to meet the national requirements.
 - **Efficient utilization of forest produces** and optimum substitution of wood.
 - **Creating awareness** among people.
 - **Involving people** in forest management under Joint Forest Management.

2. Draft National Forest Policy 2018

- Drafted **by the ministry of environment, forest, and climate change**.
- **Objective:**
 - To **safeguard ecological and livelihood security of people**, of present and future generations, based on sustainable management of the forests for the flow of ecosystem services.
 - To **address climate change**, human-animal conflict, and declining green cover.

3. Forest Conservation Act, 1980:

- **Established to pursue sustainable agroforestry** in forest regions, government permission is required.
- **Violations** or the lack of a permit were considered **criminal offences**.
- **Goals - limiting deforestation, conserving biodiversity, and preserving wildlife.**
- **Objectives:**
 - While conserving the forest's integrity and territory, **protect the forest's flora, animals, and other unique ecological components**.
 - **Prevent forest biodiversity extinction**.
 - **Prevent the conversion of forest lands to agricultural, grazing, or other commercial purposes and intentions**.

4. National Mission for A Green India

- One of the eight Missions **under the National Action Plan on Climate Change (NAPCC)**.
- Launched in **February, 2014**.
- **Objective:**
- To safeguard the biological resources of our nation and associated livelihoods against peril of adverse climate change.
- To recognise the vital impact of forestry on ecological sustainability, biodiversity conservation and food- water- and livelihood-security.

5. National Green Tribunal Act, 2010

- **Established a National Green Tribunal** to effectively resolve cases involving environmental protection and conservation of forests and other natural resources.

Wildlife

- India is home to **6.5% of the world's total animal species**.
- **Indian fauna** includes about 6,500 invertebrates, 5,000 molluscs, 2,546 species of fishes, 2,000 species of birds, and 458 species of reptiles, 4 species of panthers, and over 60,000 species of insects.
 - **Elephant is the largest Indian mammal**
 - **Distribution:** Assam, West Bengal, Central India, Karnataka, Kerala, and Tamil Nadu.
 - **One-horned rhinoceros, India's second-largest mammal**
 - **Distribution:** Once found throughout Indo-Gangetic Plain now **confined to Assam, West Bengal and UP**.
 - **Arna or wild buffalo** is found in Assam and in the Bastar district of Chhattisgarh.
 - **Gaur or Indian bison** is one of **largest existing bovines** and is found in the forests of Central India.
 - **Tigers** in India found in forests of eastern Himalayan foothills and in parts of peninsular India.
 - **Cheetahs** had fallen to less than one hundred until a successful breeding program in the **Gir sanctuary in Gujarat** resulted in some recovery.
 - Arboreal **clouded leopard** is found in northern Assam
 - **Asiatic lions** living in Gujarat's Gir forests.
 - **Brown, Black, and Sloth Bear** are found at high altitudes in north-western and central Himalayas.
 - **Yak, the ox of snow**, is largely found in Ladakh.
 - **Stag or Barasingha** is found in Assam, Chhattisgarh, and Madhya Pradesh.
- **Chinkara** or the Indian gazelle, **the blackbuck**, or the Indian antelope, **the nilgai, the mouse deer**, or the Indian chevrotain, **the chawstaga** or the four-horned antelope, **wild dog, the fox, the jackal, and the hyena**, are the other mammals found in the Indian forests.

- There are more than 200 species or subspecies of **snakes**, the best known being the Cobra, Krait, and Russel's Viper. These are poisonous snakes while Dhaman is a non-poisonous large snake.
- **Blunt Nosed or Marsh Crocodile (the Magar or Mugger)** and the long-nosed **Gharial** are important large-sized reptiles, although their number has drastically reduced.
- **Big Estuarine Crocodile** is found from the Ganga to the Mahanadi.
- There are about **2,000 species of birds** in India. Some birds such as **ducks, cranes, swallows, and**

flycatchers migrate from central Asia to the wetlands of Bharatpur (Keoladeo National Park) every winter.

- **Indian bird-life has all the varieties of birds which includes:**
 - **Aquatic birds** include a large variety of storks, herons, ducks, flamingoes, egrets, and cormorants.
 - **Ground birds (Gallinaceous birds):** The Great Indian Bustard, peafowl, jungle fowl, quail, and partridge are the main ground birds.
 - **Arboreal birds (tree-dwelling):** mynas, pigeons, parakeets, doves, cuckoos, rollers, beaters, etc.

Species of India under IUCN Red List

Species	Found	Characteristics
Critically Endangered Fishes		
Pondicherry Shark	Indo-Pacific Region	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Among the 25 'most wanted lost' species - focus of Global Wildlife Conservation's "Search for Lost Species" initiative.
Knifetooth Sawfish		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • aka Carpenter Sharks
Narrow snout		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Have long, narrow, flattened rostrum, or nose extension, lined with sharp transverse teeth, arranged in a way that resembles a saw.
Ganges Shark	Lower reaches of the Ganges-Hooghly River	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Schedule I of WPA
Critically Endangered Reptiles		
Fish-eating Crocodile or Gharial	Freshwaters of North India, especially Chambal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indicator species for clean water • In Schedule I of WPA • In Appendix I of CITES
Four-toed Terrapin	Sundarbans eco-region	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Protected under the Biodiversity Conservation and Ganga Rejuvenation programme. • In Schedule I of WPA • In Appendix I of CITES
Red-crowned Roofed Turtle	National Chambal River Gharial Sanctuary - only area with a substantial population	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Schedule I of WPA • In Appendix II of CITES
Leatherback	Indo-Pacific	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Schedule I of WPA
Hawksbill Turtle		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Schedule I of WPA
Critically Endangered Amphibians		
Anaimalai Flying Frog	Western Ghats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Endemic to the southern part of the Western Ghats
Kerala India Frog		
Critically Endangered Bird Species		
White-bellied Heron	Eastern Himalayan foothills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mostly solitary • Found in undisturbed riversides or wetlands.
Siberian Crane	Arctic tundra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Migrate during Winter to China, Iran and India (Bharatpur) for breeding.
White-rumped Vulture	Gangetic plains	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • India - home to nine species of vultures. • Facing extinction due to the drug Diclofenac. • Vulture Conservation 2020- 2025- to conserve vultures in India. • Both in Schedule I of WPA
Indian Vulture	Gangetic plains	
Slender-billed Vulture	Sub-Himalayan and SE Asia.	
Red-headed Vulture	Indian Subcontinent and SE Asia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • aka Asian king vulture, Indian black vulture or Pondicherry vulture • In Schedule I of WPA
Bengal Florican	Grasslands of Ganga Brahmaputra river basin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • indicator species of dry grasslands in Brahmaputra, as well as Ganga. • In Appendix I of CMS

Himalayan Quail	State of Uttarakhand	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Last population estimate < 50. No sightings have been recorded since 1876.
Jerdon's Courser	Eastern Ghats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Endemic to Andhra Pradesh. In Schedule I of WPA
Pink-headed Duck	Riverine swamps of India, Bangladesh and Myanmar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In Schedule I of WPA
Sociable Lapwing	Open grasslands of Russia and Kazakhstan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Migrates to Kanwar lake, Bihar (Bihar's first Ramsar Site) during winter. The bird migrates through the central Asian flyway.
Great Indian Bustard	Resides in dry grasslands and scrublands on the Indian subcontinent (Rajasthan, Gujarat, Pakistan)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One of the heaviest flying birds in the world. State bird of Rajasthan. In Schedule I of WPA In Appendix I of CITES In Appendix I of CMS
Critically Endangered Mammals		
Malabar Civet	Western Ghats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nocturnal Civetone - extracted from scent gland; used in medicine Endemic to Western Ghats of India In Schedule I of WPA In Appendix III of CITES
Sumatran Rhinoceros	India, Nepal, Bhutan, Indonesia and Malaysia.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Smallest rhino species.
Javan Rhinoceros	Left mainly in Sumatra and Borneo in Indonesia (k/a Asian Rhino Range Countries).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rhino in Asia — Greater one-horned, Javan and Sumatran. Only Great one-horned rhino found in India. Javan and Sumatran Rhino - critically endangered Greater one-horned (or Indian) rhino - vulnerable.
Large Rock-rat or Elvira Rat	Tropical dry deciduous shrub land forest, Rocky areas.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nocturnal and burrowing rodent Endemic to Eastern Ghats of Tamil Nadu
Namdapha Flying Squirrel	Arunachal Pradesh (in Namdapha National Park)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Among the 25 "most wanted lost" species Global Wildlife Conservation's "Search for Lost Species" initiative. In Schedule II of WPA
Asiatic Cheetah	Open lands, small plains, semi-desert areas, where prey is available. Only 40-50 remain in Iran.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Smaller and paler than the African cheetah (vulnerable category). More fur, smaller head and longer neck and red eyes In Appendix I of CITES
Andaman White-toothed Shrew	Mount Harriet (South Andaman Islands)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Endemic to India
Nicobar Shrew	Southern tip of Greater Nicobar Island and Campbell Bay National Park	
Jenkin's Shrew	Wright Myo and Mount Harriet	
Chinese Pangolin	Eastern Nepal, Bhutan, Northern India, North-East Bangladesh - Himalayan foothills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scaly skin. Used for traditional medicine. Most trafficked animal. Indian Pangolin - Endangered In Schedule I of WPA In Appendix I of CITES

Endangered Species (EN)

Species	Found	Characteristics
Tiger	13 Tiger range countries- 70% Tigers found in India.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flagship and "umbrella species. In Schedule I of WPA In Appendix I of CITES
Asiatic lion	Gir National Park- only home of the Asiatic lion.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Slightly smaller than African lions. In Schedule I of WPA In Appendix I of CITES
Gangetic Dolphin	Ganges-Brahmaputra-Meghna and Karnaphuli-Sangu River systems of Nepal, India, and Bangladesh.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Freshwater species Blind and hunt by emitting ultrasonic sounds- echolocation

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Also known as 'susu'. ● Indicator species ● National Aquatic Animal (2009) ● In Schedule I of WPA ● In Appendix I of CITES ● In Appendix II of CMS
Pygmy Hog	Wet grassland. Only in Assam.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● World's rarest & smallest wild pigs. ● In Schedule I of WPA ● In Appendix I of CITES
Kondana Rat	Maharashtra (Tropical and subtropical dry deciduous forests)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Nocturnal and live in burrows.
Forest Owlet	Dry deciduous forests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Endemic to central Asian forests ● In Appendix I of CITES
Red Panda	Forests of India, Nepal, Bhutan and the northern mountains of Myanmar and southern China. Mixed deciduous & conifer forests with dense understories of bamboo.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● State animal of Sikkim. ● In Schedule I of WPA
Nilgiri Tahr	Open montane grassland habitat of rain forests.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Endemic to the Nilgiri Hills and the southern portion of the Western Ghats. ● State animal of Tamil Nadu ● Aka Saddlebacks. ● In Schedule I of WPA

Miscellaneous

Species	Found	Characteristics
Snow Leopard	Mountainous regions of central and southern Asia.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Indicator of health of the mountain ecosystem. ● Hemis, Ladakh- Snow Leopard capital of the world. ● Flagship species for the high-altitude Himalayas. ● In Schedule I of WPA ● Vulnerable as per IUCN Red List ● In Appendix I of CITES
Pied Cuckoo	Africa & Asia.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Brood parasite - lays eggs in other birds' nests. ● One of the few species that come to India in the summer. ● Near-threatened as per IUCN Red List
Olive Ridley Turtle	Odisha's Gahirmatha Marine Sanctuary - world's largest rookery.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Smallest and most abundant of all sea turtles found in the world ● In Schedule I of WPA ● Vulnerable as per IUCN Red List ● In Appendix I of CITES
Amur Falcon	Southeastern Siberia and northern China	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● World's longest travelling raptors. ● Doyang Lake, Nagaland - stopover for the Amur falcons ● Nagaland- Falcon Capital of the World. ● Bird of Least Concern as per IUCN Red List
Dugong	Gulf of Mannar in Tamil Nadu, the Andaman and Nicobar Islands and the Gulf of Kutch in Gujarat.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Only existing species of herbivorous sea mammals. ● Also known as 'Sea Cow' ● In Schedule I of WPA ● Vulnerable as per IUCN Red List

List of Important Migratory Birds

Species	Season	Place to Migrate
Siberian crane	Winter	Keoladeo National Park, Wetlands of Rajasthan
Greater Flamingo		Saltwater lakes and Lagoons of Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh and Odisha
Common teal		Breeds in temperate Eurasian and migrates to south in winter
Ruff		Southern and western Europe, Africa, Southern Asia and Australia
Black winged Stilt		Baja California Peninsula, Southern Mexico and Costa Rica
Common greenshank		Australia
Northern Pintail		Found at Lakes, reservoirs and marshes of India
Yellow Wagtail		Africa and South Asia
White Wagtail		Wetlands of India and Africa
Northern Shoveller		Southern Europe, Africa, southern Asia

Asian Koel	Summer	Australia, India, South-east Asia to New Guinea and Solomon Islands.
Black Crowned Night Heron		Almost throughout the world except coldest regions and Australia
Eurasian golden oriole		Europe and western Asia
Comb duck		Tropical wetland regions
Blue-cheeked Bee-eater		Tropical Africa, Italy, Greece
Blue tailed Bee eater		Peninsular India
Cuckoos		Micronesia, Polynesia, North America to Caribbean Islands, Africa to India, Europe to Sahara Desert crossing Mediterranean Sea

Invasive Species

Invasive Animal Species		
Name (Scientific name)	Native country	Features
Desert locust (Schistocerca gregaria)	Africa, the Middle East,	swarming short-horned grasshopper, large-scale agricultural damage
Indian Bullfrog	India, Bangladesh	Spread to Andaman & Nicobar, Prolific breeder, threat to marine species, especial small endemic vertebrates
African apple snail (Achatina fulica)	Africa	most invasive, threatening the habitat of several native species
Papaya Mealy Bug	Mexico and Central America	destroyed huge crops of papaya in Assam, West Bengal and Tamil Nadu.
Cotton Mealy Bug	North America	Severely affected cotton crops in Deccan
Amazon sailfin catfish	South America	destroying the fish population in the wetlands of Kolkata.
Tomato Leaf Miner	South America	Andhra pradesh , Chhattisgarh, MP
Invasive Plant Species		
Mesquite (Prosopis juliflora)	Mexico	Aggressive colonizer. Evergreen drought hardy tree.
Touch-Me-Not (Mimosa pudica)	Brazil	Weed of cultivated fields, scrub lands and degraded forests.
Lantana (Lantana camara), Wild Sage (Salvia verbenaca)	Tropical America	Aggressive colonizer. A common weed of forests, wastelands and scrublands.
Balsam (Impatiens balsamina)	Tropical America	Aggressive colonizer. Common along railway tracks; also runs wild in gardens.
Water Hyacinth (Eichhornia crassipes)	Tropical America	Aggressive colonizer. Abundant in still or slow floating waters. A nuisance for an aquatic ecosystem.
Needle Bush (Vachellia farnesiana)	Tropical South America	A shrub or small tree. Occasional in thorny scrub and dry degraded forests and often creates close thickets.

Important Tree Species

Neem (Azadirachta indica)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Medium size evergreen trees found in tropical and subtropical regions. • Native to the Indian subcontinent • Use - Fodder, Medicinal use, Timber, Furniture, Twigs for brush, Biopesticides.
Sal (Shorea robusta)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large deciduous tree, well-drained fertile soil, Rainfall 100- 450 cm • Mainly in northern Gangetic plains, central India and in the Deccan trap. • The wood used for timber & furniture. • Resin - as incense for medicinal purposes. • Leaves - to make plates & cups called Patravali & Pattal.
Teak (Tectona grandis)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large deciduous trees prefer sandy alluvium. • Small flowers, large leaves, Yellowish-brown fruits • Used for Shipbuilding, bridges, buildings, Furniture. • Mainly found in South and central India. • Hyblaea puera - Teak leaf defoliators bugs and pests.
Eucalyptus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Semi-Evergreen trees, Native to Australia and India • Use- Pulpwood, Aromatic oils, small timber, medicinal uses

Jangli arandi (Jatropha curcas)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Oil crop for biodiesel production National Biodiesel Mission (NBM) identified it as the most suitable tree-borne oilseed for biodiesel production in 2009 Issues - poor Jatropha seed yield, unavailability of HYVs, limited availability of wasteland and high plantation and maintenance costs
Tendu (Diospyros melanoxylon)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Odisha and Chhattisgarh Leaves are wrapped around tobacco to make beedi

Medicinal Plants

Common Name	Scientific Name	Medicinal Use
Amla	Emblica Officinalis	Vitamin C, Cough, Diabetes, cold, Laxative, hyperacidity.
Ashok	Saraca Asoca	Menstrual Pain, uterine disorder, Diabetes.
Ashwagandha	Withania Somnifera	Restorative Tonic, stress, nerves disorder, aphrodisiac.
Brahmi	Bacopa, Monnieri	Nervous, Memory enhancer, mental disorder.
Guggul (Tree)	Commiphora wightii	Rheumatism, arthritis, paralysis, laxative.
Guduchi / Giloy	Tinospora Cordifolia	Gout, Pile, general debility, fever, and Jaundice.
Long peeper / Pippali	Peeper longum	Appetiser, enlarged spleen, Bronchitis, Cold, antidote.
SandalWood	Santalum Album	Skin disorder, Burning, sensation, Jaundice, Cough.
Sarpagandha	Rauwolfia Serpentina	Hypertension, insomnia.
Shatavari	Asparagus Racemosus	Enhance lactation, general weakness, fatigue, cough.
Tulsi	Ocimum sanctum	Cough, Cold, bronchitis, expectorant.
Ghritkumari	Aloe Vera	Laxative, Wound healing, Skin burns & care, Ulcer.
Bhringraj	Eclipta alba	Anti-inflammatory, Digestive, hair tonic.
Harada	Terminalia Chebula	Triphala, wound ulcer, leprosy, inflammation, Cough.
Bahada	Terminalia Billerica	Cough, Insomnia, Dropsy, Vomiting, Ulcer, Triphala.
Neem	Azadirachta indica	Sedative, analgesic, epilepsy, hypertensive
Babul	Acacia nilotica	Expectorant, detoxifier, aphrodisiac and antipyretic, Teeth cleaning
Papaya	Carica papaya	Increasing platelets, Controlling virus fever
Khair	Acacia catechu	Astringent

8

CHAPTER

Biodiversity and Conservation

Biosphere Reserve

- Notified either by the state or the central governments.
- Government can include them under **UNESCO's Man and Biosphere (MAB) Programme** after its establishment as a biosphere reserve.
- **Zones of Biosphere Reserve:**
 - **Core zone:** Comprises a **strictly protected ecosystem** that contributes to conserving landscapes, ecosystems, species and genetic variation.
 - **Buffer zone:** Area surrounding the core areas used for activities compatible with ecological practices that can reinforce **scientific research, monitoring, training and education.**
 - **Transition zone:** Part of the reserve where the **greatest activity is allowed,**
 - Foster **economic and human development** that is **socio-culturally and ecologically sustainable.**
- **18 Biosphere Reserves in India** out of which 12 reserves have been enlisted in UNESCO's MAB program

List of Biosphere Reserves in India

	Name	State	Unique Flora Fauna
Biosphere Reserves that are part of MAB Programme			
1.	Nilgiri • First Biosphere Reserve in India. • MAB list: 2000	Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Karnataka	Vanda, Lapris, Medusa's head orchid, Chitou wind orchid, Nilgiri Tahr , Lion-tailed Macaque (endangered) , Nilgiri Langur
2.	Gulf of Mannar • MAB list: 2001	Tamil Nadu	Morning glory, Halophila Grass Dugong Dugong (sea cow)
3.	Sundarbans • MAB list: 2001 • Largest continuous Mangrove area. • UNESCO World Heritage Site • Ramsar site.	West Bengal	Rhizophora, Sundari, Nypa, Sandy Mangrove, Tagal Mangrove, Kevda, Agar Bengal Tiger , Bengal Monitor Lizard • Only Mangrove with Tigers.
4.	Nanda Devi • MAB list: 2004 • UNESCO World Heritage Site.	Uttarakhand	Silverweed, Fairy Primrose, Salep orchid Himalayan Tahr, Brown Bear
5.	Nokrek • MAB list: 2009 • Adjoins Royal Manas National Park, Bhutan	Meghalaya	Grand Rasamala, Hairy Sterculia, Wild lemon, Champaka, White meranti Pig-tailed Macaque, Stump tailed Macaque, the Giant flying squirrel
6.	Pachmarhi • MAB list: 2009	Madhya Pradesh	Sal tree, Palimorpha Bamboo, Selaginella fern Wild Buffalo, Barasingha, Red jungle fowl
7.	Simlipal • MAB list: 2009 • Erenga Kharias and Mankirdias tribes	Odisha	Colix grass, Sal tree, Myrobalan sisso, Champak Red breasted Falconets, Ruddy Mongoose
8.	Achanakmar- Amarkantak • MAB list: 2012	Madhya Pradesh Chhattisgarh	Four-horn Antelope, Saras crane, Sacred grove bush Frog, White-backed Vulture
9.	Great Nicobar • MAB list: 2013	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	Screw Pine, Nipa Palm, Ceylon Ironwood Serpent Eagle, Crab-eating Macaque, Saltwater Crocodile
10.	Agasthyamalai • MAB list: 2016 • Inhabited by the Kanikaran tribe • Comprised of Shola forests	Kerala and Tamil Nadu	Rudraksha Tree, Gaub tree, Wild Dhaman, Black plum Lion-tailed Macaque (endangered) , Slender Loris, Great pied hornbill
11.	Khangchendzonga • MAB list: 2018	Sikkim	Snow Leopard (endangered) , Red Panda

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● UNESCO World Heritage Site- India's first 'Mixed World Heritage Site'. ● Lepcha tribe found here. 		
12.	Panna <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MAB List: 2020 ● Ken River flows through it. ● Famous for-Panna diamond mining 	Madhya Pradesh	Tiger (endangered) , Chinkara, Cheetal, Sambhar, Sloth bear
Domestic Biosphere Reserves of India			
13.	Rann of Kutch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Luni, Rupen and Banas River end there ● dancing light phenomenon, Chir Batti ● Banni Grassland is considered the reintroduction of the Cheetah. 	Gujarat	Indian Wild Ass , Great Indian Bustard, Greater Florican, Lesser Florican
14.	Cold Desert	Himachal Pradesh	Snow Leopard (endangered)
15.	Dihang- Dibang	Arunachal Pradesh	Red Panda, Takin, Green pit Viper Tree fern, Begonia
16.	Seshachalam Hills	Andhra Pradesh	Slender Loris Red sanders
17.	Manas	Assam	Pygmy hog (critically endangered) , Hispid Hare (endangered) , Golden Langur (endangered) Catechu tree, Sissoo, White Siris
18.	Dibru- Saikhowa <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Brahmaputra and Lohit rivers pass through it ● Maguri Motapung wetland 	Assam	Rauwolfia, Benteak, Livistona orchid Golden Langur (endangered) , Hoolock gibbon (endangered)

National Parks

- Areas set by the government to conserve the natural environment.
- Have **more restrictions as compared to a wildlife sanctuary**.
- **Boundaries are fixed** and defined.
- **Objective** - to protect the natural environment of the area and biodiversity conservation.
- **No human activity** is allowed inside the national park except permitted by the Chief Wildlife Warden of the state based on the **Wildlife (Protection) Act, 1972**.
- **Grazing** of livestock and **private tenurial rights not permitted**.
- Species mentioned in the Schedules of the Wildlife Act are **not allowed** to be **hunted** or captured.
- **Cannot be downgraded** to the status of a 'sanctuary'.

- **Can be declared by both Central Government and State governments.**
- **No alteration of the boundaries shall be made** except on a **resolution passed by the State Legislature**.

National Parks in India:

- **Total no. of Parks in India** - 106
- **Total area** - 44,372.42 sq.km (~1.35 % of India's overall **geographic area**.)
- State having **maximum National Parks**- Madhya Pradesh (11 National Parks)
- **First National Park** - **Jim Corbett National Park, Uttarakhand**
- **Newest Addition**: Dehing Patkai National Park, Assam
- **Largest** - **Hemis National Park**
- **Smallest** - **South Button National Park** (Andaman & Nicobar Islands)

List of Some Important National Parks in India

Location	National Park
Assam	Dibru-Saikhowa National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area - 795 sq. km. ● Birds- White-bellied Heron, Pallas's Fish Eagle, and Swamp Partridge. ● Animals- Gee's Golden Langur (Endangered), Water Buffalo, River Dolphin ● Also designated as Biosphere Reserve
	Kaziranga National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area-430 sq.km., ● Animals- Hoolock Gibbon, Tiger, Leopard, Indian Elephant, Sloth Bear, Wild water buffalo, Swamp deer.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A UNESCO World Heritage Site listed in the year 1985 ● Famous for One Horned Rhinoceros. ● Has the highest density of tigers among protected areas in the world.
	<p>Manas National Park</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 2837 sq. km (Core area 500 sq. Km) ● Animals- Royal Bengal tigers, Elephants, Wild water buffalo, Assam Roofed Turtle, Golden Langur, and Pygmy Hog. ● UNESCO Natural World Heritage site, an Elephant Reserve and a Biosphere Reserve in Assam. ● Biggest national park of Assam
	<p>Orang National Park (Mini Kaziranga)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 78.81 Sq. Km. ● Animals- pygmy hog, One-horned Rhinoceros, Wild Buffalo, Asiatic elephants. ● Smallest National Park of Assam.
Arunachal Pradesh	<p>Namdapha National Park</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 1985 Sq. Km (core area-1808 Sq. Km) ● Animals- Leopard, snow leopard, tiger and clouded leopard, dhole, Malayan sun bear, Indian wolf and Asiatic black bear, flying squirrel, Red Panda. ● Largest national park of Andhra Pradesh.
Manipur	<p>Keibul Lamjao National Park</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 40 sq. km. ● Animals- marbled cat, Asian golden cat, Eld's Deer (Shangai)/ dancing deer. ● Known for a rare floral species, Phumdis, floating decomposed plant material. ● Smallest national park of Manipur.
Meghalaya	<p>Nokrek National Park</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 47.48 Sq. Km. ● Animals- Indian Elephant, Hoolock Gibbons, Capped Langur, Stump Tailed Macaque, Clouded Leopard, Leopard, Gaur, Sambar, Barking Deer, Himalayan Black Bear, Sloth Bear. ● Smallest national park of Meghalaya. ● First Biosphere Reserve of North East region in India (UNESCO MAB)
West Bengal	<p>Gorumara National Park</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 80 sq km ● Birds- Indian pied hornbill, Woodpeckers, Sunbird, fly catcher, Minivet, Drongo, Brahminy duck, and Pheasants ● Animals- One-horned rhinoceros, Indian Elephant, Indian Bison, leopard, Deer, Sambar, Monkeys etc. ● Home to Indian Rhinoceros.
	<p>Sundarbans National Park</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area - 10,000 sqKm ● Animals- Royal Bengal Tigers, Indian Grey Mongoose, Leopard Cats, Ridley Sea Turtle, Wild Boar, Jungle Cat, Fox, Flying Fox, Fishing Cats, Chital, Pangolin etc. ● UNESCO World Heritage Site.
Sikkim	<p>Khangchendzonga National Park/Kanchenjunga National Park.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area - 849.5 sq. km. ● Animals- Himalayan Tahr, Snow leopard, musk deer, Himalayan black bear, Tibetan antelope, wild ass, barking deer, flying squirrel and the red panda. ● UNESCO's world heritage site
Jammu and Kashmir	<p>Dachigam National Park</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area -140 sq. km. ● Animals- Leopard, Common Palm Civet, Jackal, Red Fox, Musk deer, Black bear, Brown bear, Yellow-throated Marten, Himalayan Weasel, Kashmir stag etc.
	<p>Hemis National Park/ Snow Leopard Capital of India</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area - 4400 sq.km ● Animals- leopards, Asiatic ibex, Tibetan wolf, the Eurasian brown bear and the red fox. ● Largest National Park in India and South-East Asia.

Odisha	Bhitarkanika National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 525 sq.km (Core Area- 145 sq km) ● Animals- saltwater crocodile, Indian python, black ibis, wild boar, the rhesus monkey. ● Smallest national park of Odisha.
	Simlipal National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area -845.70 Sq Km. ● Animals- Tiger, Leopard, Elephant, Bison, Bear, Ratel, Sambar, Spotted Deer, Mouse Deer, Barking Deer, Wild Boar, Giant Squirrel, Flying Squirrel, Otter, Langur, Porcupine, Pangolin, Leopard, Barking and Spotted Deer, Sloth Bear Mongoose etc. ● Part of the UNESCO World Network of Biosphere Reserve.
Uttarakhand	Jim Corbet National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 520.82 km² ● Animals- Tiger, Elephant, Leopard, Jungle Cats, Fishing Cats, Himalayan Black Bears, Sloth Bears, Martens, Jackals, Dhols, Civets, Mongooses, Hares, Porcupines, Deers, Wild Boars, Pangolins, Macaques, Langurs, Blue Bulls etc. ● Protected area under World Wildlife Fund for Nature's Terai Arc Landscape Programme.
	Nanda Devi National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 630.33 Sq. Km. ● Animals- Leopards, Himalayan black ber, Himalayan musk deer, Himalayan thar, Serow, Bharal, Common Langur, Goral etc. ● UNESCO World's Natural Heritage Site. ● Part of UNESCO MAB List.
	Rajaji National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 820 Kilometers square. ● Animals- Tiger, Leopard, Himalayan Bear, Cheetal, Hog deer, Barking deer, Goral, Jackal, Hyena, Jungle Cat, and Leopard Cat etc. ● Second tiger reserve in Uttarakhand.
	Valley of Flowers National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 87.5 Kilometers square. ● Animals- Grey langur, Flying squirrel, Himalayan black bear, red fox, Himalayan weasel, Himalayan yellow-throated marten, Himalayan goral, Himalayan musk deer, Indian chevrotain, Himalayan tahr, Serow, Bharal, Blue sheep, Common leopard, Brown bear, Snow leopard etc. ● UNESCO World Natural Heritage Site
	Great Himalayan National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 754.4 Kilometers square. ● Animals- Musk Deer, Goral, Serow, Leopard, Himalayan Black Bear, Himalayan Tahr, Blue Sheep, Snow leopard, Himalayan Brown Bear, Red Fox, Giant Indian Flying Squirrel, Porcupine, Himalayan Palm Civet, Himalayan Weasel, Yellow throated Marten etc. ● UNESCO World Natural Heritage Site
Himachal Pradesh	Great Himalayan National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 754.4 Kilometers square. ● Animals- Musk Deer, Goral, Serow, Leopard, Himalayan Black Bear, Himalayan Tahr, Blue Sheep, Snow leopard, Himalayan Brown Bear, Red Fox, Giant Indian Flying Squirrel, Porcupine, Himalayan Palm Civet, Himalayan Weasel, Yellow throated Marten etc. ● UNESCO World Natural Heritage Site
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park/ Wandoor Marine National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 281.5 Kilometers square. ● Animals- Andaman Wild Pig, Spotted Deer, Civet, Fruit Bat etc. ● UNESCO World Natural Heritage Site
	Mount Harriet National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 46.62 Kilometers square. ● Animals- Andaman Wild Pig, Spotted Deer, Civet, Fruit Bat etc. ● Birds - Andaman Pigeon, Andaman scops-owl, and white-headed starling.
	Campbell National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 426.23 Kilometers square. ● Animals and birds- Crab-eating Macaque, Giant robber crabs, Saltwater crocodile, Giant leatherback turtle, Malayan box turtle, Nicobar tree shrew, Dear, Reticulated python, Fruit Bat, Andaman Wild pig, Palm Civet, Hawksbill turtles, Leatherback turtles, Olive Ridley turtles, The Megapode, Nicobar Pigeon, White Bellied Sea Eagle, Nicobar Serpent Eagle etc.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Part of Great Nicobar Biosphere Reserve.
Karnataka	Bandipur National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 874 Kilometers square. ● Animals -Tigers, Gaur, Sambhar, Chital, Mouse deer, Four-horned antelope, Wild dogs, Wild boar, Jackal, Sloth bear, Panther, Malabar squirrel, Porcupines and the black-knapped hare.
	Kudremukh National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 600.32 sqKm ● Animals -Tiger, Leopard, Wild dog, Jackal, Lion-tailed macaque, Common langur, Sloth bear, Gaur, Sambar, spotted deer, barking deer, Malabar giant squirrel, Giant flying squirrel, Porcupine, Mongoose etc. ● Surrounded by the Coffee and tea plantations
	Nagarhole National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 642.39 sqKm ● Animals - Gaur, Tigers, Four-horned Antelope, Elephants, Nilgiri tahr, Lion-tailed macaque etc. ● Under consideration by UNESCO World Heritage Centre.
Kerala	Eravikulam National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 97 sq.Km ● Animals - Nilgiri tahr, Elephants, Langur, Marten, Small-clawed Otter, Tigers, Leopards, Spotted here, Wild dogs, Sloth bear, Lion-tailed macaque, Sambar deer, Golden jackal, Jungle cat, Nilgiri langur, Mongoose etc.
	Periyar National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 357 sq km ● Animals - Tiger, Gaur, Elephant, Sambar, Mouse Deer, Barking Deer, Indian Wild Dog, Wild pig, Indian giant squirrel, Travancore flying squirrel, Jungle cat, Sloth bear, Nilgiri tahr, Lion-tailed macaque, Nilgiri langur, Nilgiri marten, Gee's Golden Langur, Common Langur, Bonnet Macaque etc. ● Biggest national park in Kerala.
	Silent Valley National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 237.52 sq km ● Animals – Long-tailed macaque, Nilgiri langur, Malabar giant squirrel, Nilgiri tahr, Hairy winged bat, Hanuman langur, Tiger, Leopard, Leopard cat, Jungle cat, Fishing cat, Common palm civet, Small Indian civet, Brown palm civet, Ruddy mongoose, Sloth bear, Indian pangolin, Porcupine, Sambar, spotted deer, Barking deer, Mouse deer, Elephant etc.
Maharashtra	Tadoba National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 116.55 sq km ● Animals - Sloth Bear, Dhole, Striped Hyena, Barking Deer, Chital, Marsh Crocodile, Indian Python, Small Indian Civet, Jungle Cats, Sambar, Spotted Deer, Indian Cobra, Grey-headed Fish Eagle, Crested Serpent Eagle, Peacock, Jewel Beetles and Wild Dogs in the park.
Gujarat	Gir Forest National Park/ Sasan Gir <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 1412 sq. km ● Animals - Asiatic lions, Indian Leopards, Jungle cats, Indian Cobras, Sloth bears, Striped Hyenas, Golden Jackals, Indian Palm Civets, Indian Mongoose, and Rats. ● Largest Park in Gujarat.
	Marine (Gulf of Kutch) National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 163 sq. km ● Animals - Gangetic Dolphins, Giant Crabs, Ray Fish, rarely found Balooga whales, Giant Leatherback Turtles, Horn Fish, colourful corals and sponges, giant sea anemone, jellyfish, sea horse, octopus, pearl oyster, Portuguese man of war, starfish, dolphin, shark etc.
Rajasthan	Keoladeo National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 29 sq. km ● Birds- Painted Stork, cormorant, egret, Sociable Lapwing, Indian Courser, Imperial, Spotted Eagles, Darters, Demoiselle Cranes, Black-headed Ibis, Darter, Shoveller, teal, Dalmatian Pelicans, Black Bittern, Greater Painted Snipe, Large-tailed, Dusky Eagle Owls, spoonbills, kingfishers, warblers, partridges, several species of egrets, herons, geese, pelicans, cormorants, ducks, Lager falcon, greater-spotted falcon, Pallas' eagle etc.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Animals - Golden Jackal, Striped Hyena, Fishing Cat, Jungle Cat, Nilgai, Sambar, Blackbuck, and wild Boar. ● Smallest national park of Rajasthan. ● Ramsar site under the Wetland Convention and wetland in Montreux record.
Madhya Pradesh	Kanha National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 1949 sqkm ● Animals - Royal Bengal Tiger, Leopard, Sloth bear, Indian wild dog, and Barasingha. ● Largest national park of Madhya Pradesh
	Pench National Park <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Area- 758 sq km ● Animals - chital, sambar, nilgai, wild boar, and jackal, Indian leopard, sloth bear, Indian wolf, wild dog, porcupine, monkeys, jungle cat, fox, striped hyena, gaur, four-horned antelope and barking deer. ● Has the highest density of herbivores in India.

Wildlife Sanctuaries

- Any area **notified by the State Government** to constitute as a sanctuary if such area is of adequate ecological, faunal, floral, geomorphological, natural or zoological significance.
- Used to protect, propagate or develop wildlife or its environment.
- Some **restricted human activities are allowed** inside the Sanctuary.
 - **Safe from hunting, predation or competition.**
 - Safeguarded from extinction in their natural habitat.
 - **Certain rights of people** living inside could be **permitted but strictly regulated.**
 - **Settlements not allowed** (few exceptions: tribal settlements do exist).
- **Sanctuary can be promoted to National Park but not vice versa.**

Wildlife Sanctuaries in India:

- Wildlife sanctuaries of India are **classified as IUCN Category IV protected areas.**
- **565 existing wildlife sanctuaries** in India – an area of **122560 km² (3.73% of the country's geographical area).** (Wildlife Institute of India).
- **Maximum no. of Wildlife Sanctuaries:** Andaman and Nicobar Islands (94)
- **Manas Wildlife Sanctuary** (now Manas National Park) is India's first sanctuary.

Hope Spots

- **Ecologically significant ocean areas** designated for protection under a **global conservation campaign** overseen by **Mission Blue**, a non-profit organisation founded by Sylvia Earle.
- Scientifically identified as **critical to the health of the ocean.**
- **Can be existing MPAs or new areas** where more action is needed.
- Can be **large or small**, but they all provide hope due to
 - A **special abundance or diversity of species**, unusual or representative species, habitats, or ecosystems
 - Particular **populations of rare threatened**, or endemic species

- A site with the **potential to reverse damage from negative human impacts**
- The **presence of natural processes** such as major migration corridors or spawning grounds
- **Significant historical, cultural, or spiritual values**
- **Particular economic importance** to the community
- **Total 85 Hope Spots** worldwide.
- Hope spots in the **Indian Ocean:**
 - Andaman Islands
 - Chagos Archipelago
 - Lakshadweep Islands
 - Maldiv Atolls
 - Agulhas Front

Biodiversity Hotspots

- Regions with **high species richness and a high degree of endemism.**
- **Term coined by** British biologist **Norman Myers** - defined it as a biogeographic region characterized by exceptional levels of plant endemism and by serious levels of habitat loss.
- **2 criteria** to qualify as a hotspot:
 - Contain **at least 1,500 species of vascular plants found nowhere else** on Earth (known as "endemic" species).
 - Have **lost at least 70 % of its primary native vegetation.**
- **Total 36 biodiversity hotspots** (2.5% of Earth's land surface), yet more than **50% of the world's plant species** and over **42% of all terrestrial vertebrate species** are endemic to these areas.

Biodiversity hotspots in India

1. The Himalayas

- **Comprises North-East India, Bhutan, Central and Eastern parts of Nepal.**
- Have **163 endangered species** which includes the Wild Asian Water Buffalo, One-horned Rhino; and as many as 10,000 plant species, of which 3160 are endemic.

2. Indo – Burma Region

- Area - 2,373,000 km².

- **Known for endemic freshwater turtle species**, most of which are **threatened with extinction**, due to over-harvesting and extensive habitat loss.

- **1,300 different bird species**, including the threatened **White-eared Night-heron, the Grey-crowned Crocias, and the Orange-necked Partridge.**

3. The Western Ghats

- Present along the **western edge of peninsular India** and **covers most of the deciduous forests and rainforests.**
- **Known for the globally threatened flora and fauna** represented by **229 plant species, 31 mammal species, 15 bird species, 43 amphibian species, 5 reptile species and 1 fish species.**
- UNESCO mentions that “Of the total 325 globally threatened species in the Western Ghats, 129 are classified as Vulnerable, 145 as Endangered and 51 as Critically Endangered.”

4. Sundaland

- Lies in **South-East Asia** and covers **Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia, Brunei, and Malaysia.**
- This region is **famous for its rich terrestrial and marine ecosystem.**
- Comprises **25,000 species of vascular plants**, of which 15,000 are found only in this region. Andaman & Nicobar Islands are part of the Sundaland hotspot.

Tiger Reserves in India

- The Government of India launched **Project Tiger in 1973** to save the **endangered species of tiger** in the country.
- Total **56 Tiger Reserves in India**

	State / UT	Tiger Reserve
1	Andhra Pradesh (1)	Nagarjunsagar Srisaillam (1982-83)
2	Arunachal Pradesh (3)	Namdapha (1982-83)
3		Pakke (1999-2000)
4		Kamlang (2016)
5	Assam (4)	Manas (1973-74)
6		Nameri (1999-2000)
7		Kaziranga (2008-09)
8		Orang (2016)
9	Bihar (1)	Valmiki (1989-90)
10	Chhattisgarh (4)	Udanti-Sitanadi (2008-09)
11		Achanakmar (2008-09)
12		Indravati (1982-83)
13		Guru Ghasidas (October 2021)
14	Jharkhand (1)	Palamau (1973-74)
15	Karnataka (5)	Bandipur (1973-74)
16		Bhadra (1998-99)

17		Dandeli-Anshi (Kali) (2008-09)
18		Nagarahole (2008-09)
19		Biligiri Ranganatha Temple (2011)
20	Kerala (2)	Periyar (1978-79)
21		Parambikulam (2008-09)
22	Madhya Pradesh (7)	Kanha (1973-74)
23		Pench (1992-93)
24		Bandhavgarh (1993-94)
25		Panna (1994-95)
26		Satpura (1999-2000)
27		Sanjay-Dubri (2008-09)
28		Durgavati (2022)
29	Maharashtra (6)	Melghat (1973-74)
30		Tadoba-Andhari (1993-94)
31		Pench (1998-99)
32		Sahyadri (2009-10)
33		Nawegaon-Nagzira (2013-14)
34		Bor (2014)
35	Mizoram (1)	Dampa (1994-95)
36	Odisha (2)	Similipal (1973-74)
37		Satkosia (2008-09)
38	Rajasthan (4)	Ranthambore (1973-74)
39		Sariska (1978-79)
40		Mukandra Hills (2013-14)
41		Ramgarh Vishdhari (July 2021)
42	Tamil Nadu (5)	Kalakad-Mundanthurai (1988-89)
43		Mudumalai (2008-09)
44		Sathyamangalam (2013-14)
45		Anamalai (2008-09)
46		Srivilliputhur-Megamalai (Feb 2021)
47	Telangana (2)	Kawal (2012-13)
48		Amrabad (2014)
49	Uttar Pradesh (4)	Dudhwa (1987-88)
50		Pilibhit (2014)
51		Amangarh (New Corbett) (2012 / 2021)
52		Ranipur (2022)
53	Uttarakhand (2)	Corbett (1973-74)
54		Rajaji (2015)
55	West Bengal (2)	Sunderbans (1973-74)
56		Buxa (1982-83)

Biodiversity Conservation in India

1. Wildlife Protection Act, 1972

- Implemented to ensure the safety and protection of the country's wildlife (flora and fauna).
- Protects the country's wild animals, birds, and plant species.
- **Extends to the whole of India.**
- **Provisions:**
 - **Prohibition of hunting** of any wild animal listed in Schedules I, II, III, and IV.

- **Prohibition of Cutting/Uprooting of Specified Plants:** It is prohibited to uproot, damage, gather, possess, or sell any specified plant from any forest land or protected region.
- **Declaration and Protection of Wildlife Sanctuaries and National Parks:** The Central Government has the authority to designate any area as a Sanctuary if it has sufficient ecological, faunal, floral, geomorphological, natural, or zoological significance.
 - The government can also designate an area as a National Park, which includes areas within sanctuaries.

- The national government appoints a Collector to handle the region designated as a Sanctuary.
- **Constitution of Various Bodies:** The WPA Act provides for forming bodies such as the National and State Boards for Wildlife, the Central Zoo Authority, and the National Tiger Conservation Authority.
- **Government Property:** Hunted wild animals (other than vermin), animal articles or flesh from a wild animal, and ivory transported into India, as well as a product derived from such ivory, are considered government property.

Schedules under the Wildlife (Protection) Act, 1972

Schedule-VI

- Regulates the cultivation of **specific plants and limits** their ownership, sale, and transit.
- **Cultivation and trade are only permitted** with the approval of the appropriate authority.
- **Major plants included:** Beddomes' cycad (Native to India), Blue Vanda (Blue Orchid), Red Vanda (Red Orchid), Kuth (Saussurea lappa), Slipper orchids, Pitcher plant

Schedule-V

- Includes animals considered as 'vermin' (small wild animals that carry disease and destroy plants and food).
- **Can be hunted.**
- Includes **only four species** of wild animals: Common Crows, Fruit Bats, Rats, Mice

Schedule-III and IV

- Reserved for species that are not endangered.
- Comprises protected species for which hunting is prohibited, but the penalty for any violation is less severe than the first two.
- Major animals under Schedule III: Chital (spotted deer), Bharal (blue sheep), Hyena, Nilgai, Sambhar (deer), and Sponges
- Major animals under Schedule IV: Flamingo, Hares, Falcons, Kingfishers, Magpie, Horseshoe Crab

Schedule-I

- **Covers endangered species** that need to be protected to the fullest extent possible.
- Greatest punishment for violators.
- Species in this Schedule are **prohibited from being hunted** across India unless they pose a threat to human life.
- **Major animals:** the Black Buck, Bengal Tiger, Himalayan Bear, Asiatic Cheetah, Kashmiri Stag, Lion-tailed Macaque, Musk Deer, Rhinoceros, Chinkara (Indian Gazelle) and Hoolock Gibbon

Schedule-II

- Animals in this list are given **special protection, and trade is prohibited.**
- **Cannot be hunted unless they pose a threat** to human life.
- **Major animals:** Assamese Macaque, Pig Tailed Macaque, Stump Tailed Macaque, Bengal Hanuman langur, Himalayan Black Bear, Himalayan Newt/ Salamander, Jackal, Flying Squirrel, Giant Squirrel, Sperm Whale and Indian Cobra, King Cobra

2. Water (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act of 1974

- **Enacted in 1974** to provide for the prevention and control of water pollution.
- **Amended in 1988.**
- **Vests regulatory authority in State and central Pollution Control Boards** to establish and enforce effluent standards for factories.
- **Grants power to SPCB and CPCB to test equipment** and to take the sample for the purpose of analysis.

3. Environment (Protection) Act of 1986

- **Enacted after the Bhopal Gas tragedy.**
- **Objective:** To implement the decisions of the United Nations Conference on the Human Environment of 1972.

- **Defines Environment-** Including water, air and land and the inter-relationships between water, air and land and human beings and other living creatures, plants, micro-organisms and property.
- **“Environmental pollution”** – the presence of a pollutant, defined as any solid, liquid or gaseous substance present in such a concentration as may be or may tend to be injurious to the environment.
- **“Hazardous substances”** Including any substance or preparation which may cause harm to human beings, other living creatures, plants, microorganisms, property or the environment.
- **Provisions:**
 - **Central Government has the following powers:**
 - **coordination** of action by the state,
 - **planning and execution** of programmes,

- Prescribing **environmental quality standards**
- **authority to issue direct orders to close, prohibit or regulate any industry.**
- **power of entry** for examination, testing of equipment, soil, air and water of any industry or place.
- **Prohibits discharges of environmental pollutants** more than prescribed regulatory standards.
- **Prohibition against handling hazardous substances** without compliance with regulatory standards.
- **Provision for penalties** including imprisonment, fine or both.

4. Biodiversity act 2002

- Enacted to meet the **commitments under Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD).**
- **Objective - ensure the conservation of biological diversity, sustainable use** of its components and **fair usage** of its resources.
- **Provisions:**
 - **Regulating access to biological resources** of the country
 - **Conservation** of biological diversity

- **Protecting biodiversity knowledge** of local communities
- **Sharing benefits** with local people
- **Protection and rehabilitation** of threatened species
- **Involvement of state institutions** in the implementation of the Biological Diversity Act.
- Any **offence** under this Act is **non-bailable and cognizable**
- **3-tier structure** to regulate access to biological resources:
 - National Biodiversity Authority (NBA)
 - State Biodiversity Boards (SBBs)
 - Biodiversity Management Committees (BMCs) (at the local level)
- **Special budget to these authorities** to carry out any research project dealing with the biological natural resources of the country.

5. National Green Tribunal Act, 2010

- **Established a National Green Tribunal** to effectively resolve cases involving environmental protection and conservation of forests and other natural resources.

9

CHAPTER

Energy Resources in India

Conventional Sources

- Sources of energy which have been in use since a long time.
- Eg. coal, petroleum and natural gas.

1. Coal

Tertiary Coal Deposits		
State	Region	Coalfields
Assam & Meghalaya	Mikir Hills	Namphuk, Namchik, Makum, Jaipur, nazira, Janji, Disai, longloi, Koilapahar
	Khasi & Jaintia Hills	Langrin, Barsoura, Wah Lakma, Umasur, Charigaon, Cherrapunji, Um Rileng, Mawlong, Mawbehlarkar, Rangsonoba, Lairango, Jarain, Lakadong, Satunga
	Garo hills	Karaihari, Rongreggiri, Daranggiri, Tura, Sogring, Waimong
J&K		Kalakoath, Methka, Mahogala, Chakar, Dhanswal-Sawalkot. Ladda, Chinkah,
Rajasthan		Palana (in Bikaner)
Chennai		Neyveli (South Arkot), Cuddalore — Area
Kerala		Varkala, Quilon
Gujarat		Umarsar
Lower Gondwana Coal Deposits		
State	Region	Coalfields
West Bengal	Darjeeling	Raniganj, Bankura, Bagrakote, Tindharia
Bihar		Raniganj, Jharia, Bokaro, Chandrapura, South Karampura, Ramgarh
	Rajmahal	Hura, Gilhuria, Jilburi, Chuparbhit, Pachwara, Brahmini
	Deogarh	Kundit Kuria, Shahjuri, Jainti
	Hazaribagh	Giridhi, Chope, Ikthori
	Palmau	Anuranga, Daltonganj, Hutar
Madhya Pradesh	South Rawa Region	Singrauli, Korar, Johilla river, Umaria, Sohagpur

	North Chattisgarh	Jhilmili, Tatapani-Ramkola, Sanhat, Jharkhand, Chirimiri-Kurasia, Koreagarh, Bassar, Ilisrampur, Lakhanpur, Panehhaini, Dambhamunda, Sendargarh
	South Chattisgarh	Hasdo Korba, Raigarh, Kankani
	Satpura Region	Mohapani, Sonada, Sahpur (Iawa), Dulhara (Tawa), Pathakera, Bamhanwara
Maharashtra	Mahanadi Valley	Kamptee, Bandar, Warora, Rajur (Wun), Ghugus — Telwasa, Chanda, Ballarpur, Wamanapalli, Antargaon — Aksapur, Sasti — Rajpura.
Odisha		Talcher, Ib river
Andhra Pradesh	Pranhita-Godavari Valley	Tandur Kanala, North Godavari, South Godavari, Jangam, Chinur-Sendrapalli, Kamm aram, Bandala — Alapalli, Singareni (yellendu), Lingala, Kothagudium, Damar-eherla, Kannergeri, Beddadanuru.
Uttar Pradesh		(in Mirzapur District)
Assam		Abor, also known asand Daphla Hills
Sikkim		Ranjit Valley
Upper Gondwana Coal Deposits		
State	Region	Coalfields
Gujarat		Ghunker
Madhya Pradesh	Satpura	Hard River valley
Maharashtra		Kota, Chikiyala

1. Crude Oil

On-shore Oil Production in India

- Brahmaputra valley of north-east India.
- Barmer area of Rajasthan.
- Gujarat coast in western India.
- Cauvery on-shore basin in Tamil Nadu.

- **Andhra Pradesh** has both **on-shore and offshore oil reserves**.

Assam Oilfields

- **Oldest oil-producing state** in India
- **Extension:** 320 km in upper Assam along the Brahmaputra valley.
- **Relatively inaccessible** and are **distantly located** from the main consuming areas.
- **Refined in the refineries** located at **Digboi, Guwahati, Bongaigaon, Barauni** etc.

Digboi field	Tipam hills, Dibrugarh district	Oldest oil field of India
Naharkatiya field	Left bank of Burhi Dihing river	32 km southwest of Digboi Oil from this area is sent to oil refineries at Noonamati in Assam and Barauni in Bihar
Moran-Hugrijan field	40 km south-west of Naharkatiya	

Gujarat Oil Fields

- **Major:** Ankleshwar, Khambhat or Lunej, Ahmedabad and Kalol, Nawgam, Kosamba, Kathana, Barkol, Mahesana and Sanand.
- Ankleshwar: Oil from this field is sent to refineries at Trombay and Koyali.

Rajasthan Oilfields

- One of the **largest inland oil discoveries** was made in **Barmer** district of Rajasthan.
- Others: Mangala oil field, Sarswati and Rajeshwari.
- **Largest on shore oil producing state** of India.

Off-Shore Production in India

Western Coast

- Mumbai High, Bassein and Aliabet.
 - **Mumbai High: 1974;** rock strata of Miocene age.
 - **Sagar Samrat**, Bassein: south of Mumbai High.
 - **Aliabet:** Aliabet island in the Gulf of Khambhat.

Eastern Coast

- **Basin & deltas of Godawari, Krishna & Cauvery** - great potential for oil and gas production.
- **Rawa field** in Krishna-Godawari off-shore basi.
- **Narimanam and Kovilappal oil fields** in the Cauvery on-shore basin.

2. Natural Gas

Distribution in India

- **Main fields:**
 - Gulf of Kutch
 - Gulf of Khambhat
 - Bassein field
 - Bombay High

- Barmer in Rajasthan
- KG basin
- Cuddalore district of Tamil Nadu
- Odisha,
- Assam

Pipelines

- **Most convenient mode of transportation** for petroleum products and gases in bulk for longer distances.
- **Advantages**
 - **Consume very little energy.**
 - **Minimal transit losses.**
 - **Low transportation cost** (<10 times than surface transportation).
 - **Low wastage.**
 - **Not affected by seasonal variations** and climatic hostilities.
 - **Safe, accident-free,** and **environmentally friendly.**
- **Disadvantages**
 - **Vulnerable to distortions** in case of earthquakes.
 - **Difficult to find leakages** and cracks.
 - **High initial cost.**
 - **Security threats** from terrorist organisations.
 - **Capacity cannot be increased** once the pipelines are laid.
 - **Difficult to repair pipelines.**

Major pipelines in India

1. **Naharkatia-Nunmati-Barauni Pipeline**
 - **1st pipeline of India** to bring crude oil from Naharkatia oilfield to Nunmati.
 - By **Oil India limited.**
 - **Subsidiary pipelines** to increase capacity:
 - **Nunmati-Siliguri pipeline:** From Nunmati (Guwahati) in Assam to Siliguri in West Bengal.
 - **Lakwa-Rudrasagar-Barauni pipeline:** From Lakwa and Rudrasagar to the oil refinery at Barauni.
 - **Barauni-Haldia pipeline:** Transports refined petroleum products to Haldia port and bring back crude oil to the Barauni refinery.
 - **Barauni-Kanpur pipeline:** Transports refined petroleum products from Barauni to Kanpur.
 - **Haldia-Rajbandh-Maurigram pipeline**
 - **Naharkatia Nunmati Barauni Pipeline**
2. **Mumbai High-Mumbai pipeline**
 - **210 km long double-pipeline**
 - Connects **Mumbai with Mumbai High.**
 - Facilities for transporting **crude oil and natural gas.**
3. **Ankleshwar-Kayoli Pipeline**
 - **Completed in 1965.**

- Crude oil from **Ankleshwar oilfield to Koyali refinery.**
4. **Salaya-Koyali-Mathura Pipeline**
- From **Salaya in Gujarat to Mathura** in U.P. via Viramgram.
 - **1,256 km** long pipeline.
5. **Mathura-Delhi-Panipat-Ambala-Jalandhar pipeline:** Transports refined products of **Mathura & Panipat** refineries to market centers of N.W India.
6. **Haldia-Kolkata pipeline:** Transports **refined petroleum products to Kolkata.**
7. **Hazira-Bijaypur-Jagdishpur (HBJ) gas pipeline**
- **Longest gas pipeline** of India (1750 km)
 - Passes through **Hazira, Kawas** (both in Gujrat), **Bijapur** (M.P), **Auriya** (UP), **Jagdishpur** (U.P), **Saharanpur** (U.P), **Aonla** (UP), **Babrala** (U.P), **Anta** (Rajasthan), **Sawai Madhopur** (Rajasthan), **Kota**(Rajasthan).
8. **Jamnagar-Loni LPG Pipeline**
- **1,269 km-long**
 - **By the Gas Authority of India Limited (GAIL).**
 - Connects **Jamnagar in Gujarat to Loni near Delhi** in U.P.
 - **States-** Gujarat, Rajasthan, Haryana, and U.P.

9. **Kandla-Bhatinda Pipeline**

- **1,331 km long.**
- Proposed to be **constructed for transporting crude oil** to the proposed refinery at Bhatinda.

10. **Jagdishpur-Haldia and Bokaro-Dhamra Pipeline (JHBDPL)**

- A **natural gas pipeline** being developed to **connect the eastern and north-eastern part of India with the national natural gas transmission network.**
- Developed by **India's state-owned natural gas processing and distribution company GAIL.**
- **States covered-** Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand, Odisha, and West Bengal.
- Part of **Pradhan Mantri Urja Ganga Gas Pipeline initiative.**

Barauni-Guwahati pipeline (BGPL)

- **729km-long**
- Developed as an **integral part of JHBDPL project to connect 7 north-eastern states to the national gas grid** via JHBDPL.

Hydro Electricity

States	River	Hydroelectric Power Plant
Andhra Pradesh	Krishna	Nagarjunasagar Hydro Electric Power plant
Andhra Pradesh	Krishna	Srisaillam Hydro Electric Power plant
Andhra Pradesh, Odisha	Machkund	Machkund Hydro Electric Power plant
Gujarat	Narmada	Sardar Sarovar Hydro Electric Power plant
Himachal Pradesh	Baira	Baira-Siul Hydroelectric Power plant
Himachal Pradesh	Sutlej	Bhakra Nangal Hydroelectric Power plant
Himachal Pradesh	Beas	Dehar Hydroelectric Power plant
Himachal Pradesh	Sutlej	Nathpa Jhakri Hydroelectric Power plant
Jammu and Kashmir	Chenab	Salal Hydro Electric Power plant
Jammu and Kashmir	Jhelum	Uri Hydro Electric Power plant
Jharkhand	Subarnarekha	Subarnarekha Hydroelectric Power plant
Karnataka	Kalinadi	Kalinadi Hydro Electric Power plant
Karnataka	Sharavathi	Sharavathi Hydroelectric Power plant
Karnataka	Kaveri	Shivanasamudra Hydroelectric Power plant
Kerala	Periyar	Idukki Hydro Electric Power plant
Madhya Pradesh	Sone	Bansagar Hydroelectric Power plant
Madhya Pradesh	Narmada	Indira Sagar Hydro Electric Power plant
Madhya Pradesh,UP	Rihand	Rihand Hydroelectric Power plant
Maharashtra	Koyna	Koyna Hydroelectric Power plant
Manipur	Leimatak	Loktak Hydro Electric Power plant
Odisha	Sileru	Balimela Hydro Electric Power plant
Odisha	Mahanadi	Hirakud Hydro Electric Power plant
Sikkim	Rangit	Rangit Hydroelectric Power plant
Sikkim	Teesta	Teesta Hydro Electric Power plant
Uttarakhand	Bhagirathi	Tehri Hydro Electric Power plant

Himachal Pradesh	Baspa	Baspa-II Hydro Electric Power plant
Himachal Pradesh	Satluj	Nathpa Jhakri Hydro Electric Power Plant
Himachal Pradesh	Beas	Pandoh Dam
Himachal Pradesh	Ravi	Chamera-I
Himachal Pradesh	Ravi	Chamera-II
Himachal Pradesh	Beas	Pong
Jammu and Kashmir	Chenab	Dulhasti

Thermal Power

- **Contribute largest proportion** of electricity into national power grid of India.
- **Generate electricity by using heat** from a fuel source.
- **Heat usually generates steam in a boiler** - used to run a steam turbine connected to a generator.
- **Total capacity** of thermal power plants- 231870.72 MW.
- **71% of the total power generation** in the country.

List of Thermal Power Plants in India

Thermal Power Plant	Location	State
Amarkantak TPS	Chachai	Madhya Pradesh
Anpara TPS	Anpara	Uttar Pradesh
Anta Thermal Power Station	Anta	Rajasthan
Arasmeta CPP (private)	Janjgir	Chhattisgarh
Auraiya Thermal Power Station	Dibiyapur	Uttar Pradesh
Badarpur TPP	Badarpur	NCT Delhi
Bakreswar TPS	Suri	West Bengal
Barauni TPP	Barauni	Bihar
Barsingsar Lignite Power Plant e	Barsingsar	Rajasthan
Bellary TPP	Kudatini	Karnataka
Bhusawal TPS	Deepnagar	Maharashtra
Bokarao Thermal Power Station 'B'	Bokaro	Jharkhand
Chandrapur STPS	Chandrapur	Maharashtra
Chandrapura Thermal Power Station	Chandrapura	Jharkhand
Chhabra STPP	Mothipura	Rajasthan
Deenbandhu Chhotu Ram TPP	Yamunanagar	Haryana
Dr Narla Tatarao TPS	Ibrahimpattanam	Telangana
Dr Shyama Prakash Mukharjee TPP	—	Chhattisgarh
Durgapur Thermal Power Station	Durgapur	West Bengal
Durgapur TPP	Durgapur	West Bengal

Ennore TPS	Ennore	Tamilnadu
Farakka STPS	Nagarun	West Bengal
Faridabad Thermal Power Plant	Mujedi	Haryana
Feroz Gandhi Unchahar TPP	Unchahar	Uttar Pradesh
Gandhinagar TPS	Gandhinagar	Gujarat
Giral Lignite TPS	Thumbli	Rajasthan
Guru Gobind SSTP	Ghanauli	Punjab
Guru Hargobind TP	Lehra Mohabbat	Punjab
Guru Nanak dev TP	Bathinda	Punjab
Harduaganj TPS	Harduaganj	Uttar Pradesh
IB Thermal PP	Banharpali	Odisha
Indraprastha PS	Delhi	NCT Delhi
Jhanor-Gandhar TPS	Urjanagar	Gujarat
Jindal Megha PP (private)	Tamnar	Chhattisgarh
JSW Vijanagar PP-II (private)	Vijaynagar	Karnataka
Kahalgaoon STPS	Kahalgaoon	Bihar
Kakatiya TPS	Chelpur	Telangana
Kaparkheda TPS	Kaparkheda	Maharashtra
Kawas TPS	Adityanagar	Gujarat
Kolaghat TPS	Mecheda	West Bengal
Koradi TPS	Koradi	Maharashtra
Korba STPP	Jamani Palli	Chhattisgarh
STPS	Kota	Rajasthan
Kothagudem TPS	Paloncha	Telangana
Kothagudem V stage TPS	Paloncha	Telangana
Kutch Lignite TPS	Panandhro	Gujarat
Lanco Amarkantak TPP (private)	Pathadi	Chhattisgarh
Lanco Udupi TPP (private)	Nandikoor	Karnataka
Mejia Thermal Power Station	Durlavpur	West Bengal
Mettur TPS	Metturdam	Tamilnadu
Muzaffarpur TPP	Kanti	Bihar
Nashik TPS	Nashik	Maharashtra
National Capital TPP	Vidyutnagar	Uttar Pradesh

Neyveli TPS 1	Neyveli	Tamilnadu
Neyveli TPS 2	Neyveli	Tamilnadu
North Chennai TPS	Athipattu	Tamilnadu
Obra TPS	Obra	Uttar Pradesh
Panipat TPP 1	Assan	Haryana
Panipat TPP 2	Assan	Haryana
Panki TPS	Panki	Uttar Pradesh
Paras TPS	Vidyutnagar	Maharashtra
Pariccha TPS	Pariccha	Uttar Pradesh
Parli TPS	Parli-Vajinath	Maharashtra
Raichur Super TPS	Raichur	Karnataka
Rajghat PS	Delhi	NCT Delhi
Rajiv Gandhi CAPP	Kayamkulam	Kerala
Rajwest Lignite Power Plant (private)	—	Rajasthan
Ramagundam B TPS	Ramagundam	Telangana
Ramagundam STPS	Jyothi Nagar	Telangana
Rayalaseema TPS	Cuddapah	Telangana
Rihand TPP	Rihand Nagar	Uttar Pradesh
Rosa TPP (private)	Rosa	Uttar Pradesh
Sabarmati TPS (Private)	Ahamadabad	Gujarat
Sagardighi TPS	Manigram	West Bengal
Sanjay Gandhi TPS	Birsinghpur	Madhya Pradesh
Santaldih TPS	—	West Bengal
Satpura TPS	Sarni	Madhya Pradesh
Sikka TPS	Jamnagar	Gujarat
Simhadri STPS	Simhadri	Andhra Pradesh
Singrauli Super Thermal Power Station	Shaktinagar	Uttar Pradesh
Sipat TPP	Sipat	Chattisgarh
Surat Lignite TPS	Nani Naroli	Gujarat
Suratgarh STPS	Suratgarh	Rajasthan
Talcher STPS	Kaniha	Odisha
Talcher TPP	Talcher	Odisha
Tanda TPP	Vidyutnagar	Uttar Pradesh
Tuticorin TPS	Tuticorin	Tamilnadu
Ukai TPS	Ukai dam	Gujarat
Vindhyachal STPS	Vidhya Nagar	Madhya Pradesh
VS Lignite Power Plant (private)	Gurha	Rajasthan
Wanakbori TPS	Wanakbori	Gujarat

* TPS – Thermal Power Station * STPS – Super Thermal Power Station * TPP – Thermal Power Plant

Nuclear Energy

- **Energy in the nucleus**, which is the core of any atom.
- **Vast amount of energy** in the atom's nucleus.
- Energy can be **generated through a fission process** that breaks the nucleus.
- **Core Raw materials** for nuclear energy **Uranium, Thorium, Heavy water, Zirconium, and Helium.**

Nuclear Reactors in India:

- **Presently 22 reactors**
- **Total capacity-** 6780 MW in operation.
- **8 reactors** (including 500 MW PFBR by BHAVINI) of **6000 MW** under construction.

List of Operational Nuclear Power plants

Power Plant	Location	Total capacity (MW)
Kaiga	Karnatka	880
Kakrapar	Gujrat	1,140
Kundankulam	Tamil Nadu	2,000
Madras (Kalpakkam)	Tamil Nadu	440
Narora	Uttar Pradesh	440
Rajasthan	Rajasthan	1,180
Tarapul	Maharashtra	1,400

Nuclear Power Plants 2021- Under Construction

Power Plant	Location	Total capacity (MW)
Madras (Kalpakkam)	Tamil Nadu	500
Kakrapar Unit 4	Gujrat	700
Gorakhpur	Haryana	1,400
Rajasthan Unit 7&8	Rajasthan	1,400
Kundankulam Unit 3&4	Rajasthan	1,400
Kundankulam Unit 3 & 4	Tamil Nadu	2,000

Nuclear Power Plants 2021 – Planned Projects

Power Plant	Location	Total capacity (MW)
Kaiga	Karnataka	1,400
Jaitapur	Maharashtra	9,900
Kavvada	Andra Pradesh	6,600
Kavali	Andra Pradesh	6,000
Gorakhpur	Haryana	2,800
Mahi Banswara	Rajasthan	2,800
Chutka	Madya Pradesh	1,400
Kundankulam Unit 5 & 6	Tamil Nadu	2,000
Madras	Tamil Nadu	1,200
Tarapur	Maharashtra	3,00

Non-Conventional Sources

Solar Power

- Produced by sunlight.
- Energy is utilised for cooking and distillation of water
- India receives peak solar radiation for 300 days, amounting 2300-3000 hours of sunshine equivalent to > 5,000 trillion kWh.

Major solar power plants/ parks of India

- Bhadla Solar Park, Rajasthan**
 - **Location:** Jodhpur district of Rajasthan
 - **Capacity:** 2055 MW
 - **Area:** 14000 acres
 - **World's biggest solar park** in terms of power generation.
 - **Second largest** in terms of area.
- Pavagada Solar Park**
 - **Location:** Palavalli, Karnataka
 - **Capacity:** 2000MW
 - **Area:** 13000 acres
 - **Second biggest** solar power park in the world in terms of energy.
- Kurnool Ultra Mega Solar Park**
 - **Location:** Kurnool, Andhra Pradesh
 - **Capacity:** 1000 MW
 - **Area:** 5932 acres
- NP Kunta Ultra Mega Solar Park**
 - **Location:** Anathapuram, Andhra Pradesh
 - **Capacity:** 1500 MW
 - **Area:** 7924 acres
 - **aka** Ananthapuram Ultra Mega Solar Park
- Rewa Ultra Mega Solar Plant**
 - **Location:** Rewa, Madhya Pradesh
 - **Capacity:** 750 MW
 - **Area:** 1590 acres
 - A joint venture between Madhya Pradesh Urja Vikash Nigam Limited (MPUVNL) and Solar Energy Corporation of India (SECI).
 - **India's first and only solar project till date** that has been funded from the **Clean Technology Fund, CTF.**
 - Also **India's only solar power plant** to have obtained a **concessional loan from World Bank's International Finance Corporation.**
- Charanka Solar Park**
 - **Location:** Patan district, northern Gujarat.
 - **Capacity:** 790 MW
 - **Area:** 4,900-acre
 - **aka** Gujarat Solar Park-1
 - Currently in the **process of development**

7. Kamuthi Solar Power Project

- **Location:** Kamuthi, Ramanathapuram district, Madurai, Tamil Nadu
- **Capacity:** 648 MW
- **Area:** 2500-acre

8. Kadapa Ultra Mega Solar Park

- **Location:** Mylavaram mandal of Kadapa district, Andhra Pradesh
- **Capacity:** 1,000 MW
- **Area:** 5,927.76 acres

Other Solar Plants in India

State	Solar Park
Andhra Pradesh	Ananthapuramu-I Solar Park
	Kurnool Solar Park
	Kadapa Solar Park
	Ananthapuramu-II Solar Park
	Hybrid Solar Wind Park
Arunachal Pradesh	Lohit Solar Park
Gujarat	Radhnesada Solar Park
	Harsad Solar Park
	Dholera Solar Park Ph-I
	Dholera Solar Park Ph-II
Himachal Pradesh	Kaza Solar Park
Jharkhand	Floating Solar Park
Karnataka	Pavagada Solar Park
Kerala	Kasargod Solar Park
Madhya Pradesh	Rewa Solar Park
	Mandsaur Solar Park
	Neemuch
	Agar
	Shajapur
	Omkareswar Floating Solar Park
	Chhattarpur Solar Park
Barethi Solar Park	
Maharashtra	Sai Guru Solar Park (Pragat)
	Patoda Solar Park (Paramount)
	Dondaicha Solar Park
Manipur	Bukpi Solar Park
Meghalaya	Solar park in Meghalaya
Mizoram	Vankal Solar Park
Odisha	Solar Park by NHPC
	Solar Park by NHPC
Rajasthan	Bhadla-II Solar Park
	Bhadla-III Solar Park
	Bhadla-IV Solar Park
	Phalodi-Pokaran Solar Park
	Fatehgarh Phase-1B Solar Park
	Nokh Solar Park
Uttar Pradesh	Solar Park in UP
	Jalaun Solar Park

Wind energy

- India's wind energy sector led by indigenous wind power industry has shown consistent progress.
- Expansion of wind industry has resulted in a strong ecosystem, project operation capabilities, and manufacturing base of about **10,000 MW per annum**.
- **4th-highest wind installed capacity** in the world
- **Total installed capacity - 39.25 GW** (as of 31st March 2021)
- According to MNRE, **India can generate 127 GW of offshore wind energy** with its 7,600 km of coastline.
- According to National Institute of Wind Energy (NIWE), **total wind energy potential- 302 GW** at a 100-meter hub height.
- **More than 95% of commercially exploitable resources** in: Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Rajasthan and Tamil Nadu.
- **MNRE has set a target of installing 5 GW of offshore wind energy by 2022 and 30 GW by 2030.**

List of 10 Largest Wind Power Plants in India

Wind Power Plant	Location
Muppandal wind farm	Tamil Nadu, Kanyakumari
Jaisalmer Wind Park	Rajasthan, Jaisalmer
Brahmanvel wind farm	Maharashtra, Dhule
Dhurgaon wind farm	Maharashtra, Sangli
Vankusawade Wind Park	Maharashtra, Satara District.
Vaspet	Maharashtra, Vaspet
Tuljapur	Maharashtra, Osmanabad
Beluguppa Wind Park	Beluguppa, Andhra Pradesh
Mamatkheda Wind Park	Madhya Pradesh, Mamatkheda
Anantapur Wind Park	Andhra Pradesh, Nimbagallu

Ocean Energy

- **Ocean covers more than 70% of the earth's surface** making it the **world's largest solar collector**.
- Ocean energy **draws on the energy of ocean waves, tides** or on the **thermal energy** stored in the ocean.

Wave Energy:

- Generation of **electricity** from the undulating **motion of the ocean waves**.
- The **power** in the **moving wave** may **drive a turbine** or device directly or it may **pressurise air** or **hydraulic fluid**.
- **Ocean Engineering Cell, IIT Chennai**, established a 150 KW pilot project at Vizhinjam harbour and Thangassery in Kerala.

- Also to establish **five pilot projects** at Mus Point in **Car- Nicobar** in **Andaman and Nicobar Islands**.

Thermal Energy

- Makes use of **temperature difference** b/w warm water at the surface of the ocean and water at its depth.
- **Temperature gradient ~ 10°C - vaporise volatile substances** like ammonia, propane etc.
- **Locations:** Tamil Nadu, Andaman Nicobar Islands and Lakshadweep.

Tidal energy

- As the **tide rises, water** initially **prevented from entering the bay**.
- When **tides are high** and **water** is **sufficient to run the turbines**, the **dam is opened** and **water flows** through it into the reservoir, **turning the blades** of turbines and **generating electricity**.
- **Central electricity authority** of **India** has identified **Gulf of Kutch and Cambay** and **Sundarban coast** in West Bengal as favourable locations with necessary tidal range to harness tidal energy.

Geothermal energy in India

- **Exploration and study of geothermal fields** started in **1970**.
- **Geological Survey of India** has found around **350 geothermal energy locations** in the country.
- **Most promising- Puga valley of Ladakh**.
- **7 geothermal provinces** (Himalayas, Sohana, West Coast, Cambay (Gujarat), Godavari, Mahanadi and Son-Narmada-Tapi (SONATA)) and numerous geothermal springs.
- **2013-** Chhattisgarh government decided to establish Geothermal Power Plant at **Tattapani in the Balrampur district**.
- **2021-** an agreement to establish **first geothermal Power Project in Ladakh**.
- **Major sites**
 - Puga geothermal field
 - Chhumathang geothermal field
 - Manikaran geothermal field
 - Beas valley
 - Satluj and spiti valley
 - Tapoban geothermal field, Chamoli, Uttarakhand and Alaknanda Valley
 - Tatapani geothermal field
 - Salbardi region
 - Anthoni- Samoni area
 - Unkeshwar
 - Godavari Graben
 - Andaman-Nicobar region
 - Damodar Valley basins
 - Western thermal province

- Cambay geothermal region
- Konkan geothermal provinces
- Sohna thermal region
- Tuwa and Chhabsar geothermal fields, Gujarat
- Lasundra geothermal province

Governmental Initiatives

- Standards and Labeling by Bureau of Energy Efficiency (BEE):**
 - **Standards and Labeling programme** for equipment and appliances in 2006
 - To **provide the consumer with an informed choice about energy saving.**
- Energy Conservation Building Codes (ECBC) by the Ministry of Power:**
 - Launched in **2007.**
 - **Sets minimum energy standards** for new commercial buildings.
- National Mission for Enhanced Energy Efficiency (NMEEE) under NAPCC:**
 - Aims to **strengthen the market for energy efficiency by creating conducive regulatory and policy regime**
 - Fostering innovative and sustainable business models to the energy efficiency sector.
- UJALA scheme:** To spread the message of **energy efficiency** in the country.
- National Electric Mobility Mission Plan (NEMMP):**
 - **Launched in 2013.**
 - To **achieve national fuel security** by promoting hybrid and electric vehicles in the country.
- National Clean Energy Fund (NCEF)**
 - Launched in **2010-2011,**
 - Promotes **use of smart grid technologies.**
 - Use of **renewable energy sources** - solar power, wind, and hydel energies.
 - Use of **clean fossils** including coal gasification and coal bed methane.
 - Using **energy-efficient LEDs** and other technological impetuses.
- Green Energy Corridor Project**
 - **First green energy corridor** - 1800 km, stretching from Raigarh to Tamil Nadu.
 - Launched in **May 2015.**
- Petroleum Conservation Research Association**
 - **Conservation of petroleum and petrochemicals**
 - Helps the government in **drafting policies and schemes** for this conservation program.
- Energy Efficiency Services Limited**
 - A **Ministry of Power venture** with the UJALA scheme.
 - **Government plans to install LED street lights** all over India.
 - **Promotes use of LEDs** at home instead of conventional incandescent lights.
- Indian Renewable Energy Development Agency (IREDA)**
 - A **non-financial banking institution.**
 - **Financial assistance** for setting up **energy-efficient projects** in the country.
- International Solar Alliance**
 - **Promotes the use of solar energy** primarily for countries lying between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.
 - **Fosters the use of solar technology** in regions in both nations.
- Kishanganga Hydroelectric Plant:**
 - A **run-of-the-river hydroelectric scheme** in Kashmir, India.
 - Its dam **diverts water from Kishanganga / Neelum River to a power plant in Jhelum River basin.**
- Integrated Power Development Scheme(IPDS):**
 - By **Ministry of Power, Government of India**
 - Launched in **2014.**
 - Will help in **reduction in ATandC losses;**
 - Establishment of **IT enabled energy accounting / auditing system**
 - Improvement in **billed energy based on metered consumption**
 - **Improvement in collection efficiency.**
- Deendayal Upadhyaya Gram Jyoti Yojana (DDUGJY):**
 - **For rural electrification.**
 - The **erstwhile Rajiv Gandhi Grameen Vidyutikaran Yojana (RGGVY)** scheme for rural areas **subsumed in DDUGJY** scheme.
 - **Nodal agency-** Rural Electrification Corporation.
 - Under **Ministry of Power**
- Ujwal DISCOM Assurance Yojana (UDAY)**
 - Launched in **November 2015.**
 - Designed to **turn around the precarious financial position of state power distribution companies (discoms).**

10

CHAPTER

Mineral Resources in India

Major Mineral Regions of India

1. **Chhota Nagpur plateau:**
 - **Minerals found** - Kyanite (100%), Iron (90%), Chromium (90%), Mica (75%), Coal (70%), Manganese, copper, and limestone.
 - **Assam Petroleum reserve:** Petroleum, lignite coal, tertiary coal, etc.
2. **Central belt:**
 - **Chhattisgarh** and **Maharashtra** region.
 - Huge reserves of **Iron** and **limestone** in **Chhattisgarh**.
 - **Godavari-Wardha valley** - coal reserves.
3. **South Eastern region**
 - **Eastern Karnataka:** Bellary and Hospet - iron reserves
 - **Andhra Pradesh:** Cuddapa and Kurnool - mining centres.
 - **Nellore** - Mica reserves.
 - **Telangana:** Bauxite reserves.
 - **Tamil Nadu:** Largest lignite coal reserves.
4. **South Western region**
 - **Karnataka:** Dharwad region, Shimoga, Chitradurg, Yumkur, Chikmagalur.
 - **Goa** - rich iron reserves.
 - **Ratnagiri** in Maharashtra - iron reserves.
5. **North Western region**
 - **Rajasthan** and **Gujarat** along the **Aravalli Range**.
 - **Gujarat** - petroleum deposits.
 - **Gujarat** and **Rajasthan** - salt.
 - **Rajasthan** - sandstone, granite, marble, gypsum, limestone, dolomite and Fullers earth deposits.

Metallic Minerals in India

1. **Iron Ore**
 - **Iron ores** - rocks and minerals from which **metallic iron** can be extracted.
 - India has **large iron ore reserves**.
 - Majorly **found in volcano-sedimentary Banded Iron Formation (BIF)** from the Precambrian age.
 - **Major areas in India**
- a. **Jharkhand**
 - **25 % of reserves.**
 - **First mine** - **Singhbhum** district in 1904.
 - **Highest quality ore.**
 - **Noamandi mines** in **Singhbhum** - **richest.**
 - **Magnetite ores** - **Daltenganj** in Palamu district.
- b. **Chhattisgarh**
 - **Bailadila mine** - **largest mechanised mine** in Asia

- **270 km long slurry** (a semi-liquid mixture) pipeline from the Bailadila to Vizag plant transports the ore slurry.
 - **Smelting** - in **Vizag** [Vishakhapatnam] iron and steel factory.
 - **Dalli-Rajhara range** - 32 km long [ferrous content 68-69 %].
- c. **Odisha**
 - **Major mining centre** - Singhbhum.
 - **Richest reserves**- Keonjhar, Mayurbhanj and Sundargarh.
 - **Iron ore** - **Hematite** (60-70 % iron).
 - Iron ore **supplied** to iron and steel factories at **Rourkela, Jamshedpur, Asansol and Durgapur.**
 - **Exported** through the **Paradip port.**
 - d. **Goa: Mining centres** - Sanguem, Safari, Ponda, Sahqualim, Bicholim and Quepem.
 - Close to the **port of Marmagao.**
 - **Open-cast mining.**
 - e. **Karnataka: Major areas** - Baba Budan Hills, Kudremukh region, Hospet, Bellary, Chitradurga and Tumkur district.
 - **Iron ores** - haematite and magnetite.
 - f. **Maharashtra**
 - Produces a **very small amount of iron ore.**
 - **Major areas** - Chandrapur, Ratnagiri, Sindhudurg and Bhandara districts.
 - g. **Andhra Pradesh:** Mined in **small quantities** - Karimnagar, Guntur, Warangal, Cuddapah, Kurnool, Adilabad and Anantapur.
 - h. **Tamil Nadu: Mining areas**- Tirthamalai Hills in Salem district and Yadpalli and Killiomalai areas in Nilgiris, Coimbatore, and Madurai.
- **Iron Ore in other states**

Rajasthan	Jaipur, Alwar, Sikar, Bundi, Bhilwara
Uttar Pradesh	Mirzapur
Uttaranchal	Garhwal, Almora, Nainital
Himachal Pradesh	Kangra and Mandi
Haryana	Mahendragarh
West Bengal	Burdwan, Birbhum, Darjeeling
Jammu and Kashmir	Udhampur and Jammu
Gujarat	Bhavnagar, Junagadh, Vadodara
Kerala	Kozhikode

2. Manganese:

- According to the **Geological Survey of India**, **total manganese reserves are 16.7 crores tonnes**.
- **Second largest manganese ore reserves** in the world after Zimbabwe.
- **1/5th of the world's manganese ores** is found in India.
- **India - 6th largest producer** after South Africa, Australia, China, Gabon, and Brazil.
- **State-wise distribution**
 - a. **Maharashtra**
 - **Production:** 27.66 %.
 - **Major regions:** Nagpur and Bhandara districts.
 - b. **Madhya Pradesh**
 - **Production:** 27.59 %.
 - **Major regions:** Balaghat and Chhindwara districts.
 - **Extension of the Nagpur Bhandara belt** of Maharashtra.
 - c. **Odisha**
 - **Production:** 24 %. [1st in reserves but 3rd in production]
 - **Gondite deposits** in Sundargarh district and Kodurite and Khondolite deposits in Kalahandi and Koraput Districts.
 - **Mined from lateritic deposits** in Bolangir and Sambalpur districts
 - d. **Andhra Pradesh**
 - **Production:** 13%.
 - **Regions:** Srikakulam, Vishakhapatnam, Cuddapah, Vijayanagaram and Guntur.
 - **Srikakulam district** - India's earliest producer (1892) of manganese ore.
 - e. **Karnataka**
 - **6 % of India's manganese.**
 - **Uttara Kannada, Shimoga, Bellary, Chitradurga and Tumkur** districts.

Other producers

- **Goa**
- **Panchmahals and Vadodara** in Gujarat
- **Udaipur and Banswara** in Rajasthan and
- **Singhbhum and Dhanbad** districts in Jharkhand are other producers of manganese.

3. Chromite:

- **Chromite reserves - 203 MT.**
- **> 93 % of the resources** in **Odisha** (Sukinda valley in Cuttack and Jajpur).
- **Minor deposits** - Manipur, Nagaland, Karnataka, Jharkhand, Maharashtra, TN & AP.
- **Statewise distribution**
 - a. **Odisha**

- **Sole producer (99 %)** of chromite ore.
- **> 85 %** of the ore is of **high grade**
- **Districts:** Keonjhar, Cuttack, and Dhenkanal

b. Karnataka

- **Second-largest producer.**
- **Districts:** Mysore and Hassan.

c. Andhra Pradesh: In Krishna district

d. Manipur: Tamenglong and Ukhrul districts.

4. Bauxite:

● State Wise Distribution:

a. Odisha:

- **Largest bauxite producing state**
- **> 50%** of the total production of India.
- **Total recoverable reserves** - 1,370.5 million tonnes.
- **Main belt** - Kalahandi and Koraput districts and extends further into Andhra Pradesh.
- **Largest bauxite bearing region** of the country.
- **Other deposits-** Sundargarh, Balangir and Sambalpur districts.

b. Gujarat:

- **Second largest producer**
- **> 15 %** of the total bauxite of India.
- **Major regions:** Jamnagar, Junagadh, Kheda, Kutch, Sabarkantha, Amreli and Bhavnagar.

c. Jharkhand:

- **Major areas** : Ranchi, Lohardaga, Palamu and Gumla , Dumka and Munger districts.
- **High grade ore** - Lohardaga and adjoining areas.

d. Maharashtra:

- **10 %** of total bauxite produced in India.
- **Major areas:** Udgeri, Dhangarwadi, Radhanagari and Inderganj in Kolhapur district (alumina content 52 -89%), Thane, Ratnagiri, Satara and Pune.

e. Chhattisgarh:

- **Production:** > 6 %.
- **Major regions:** Maikala range in Bilaspur, Durg districts and the Amarkantak plateau, Surguja, & Raigarh.

f. Tamil Nadu:

- **Production:** > 2 per cent of the India's bauxite.
- **Major areas:** Nilgiri, Salem and Madurai districts.

g. Madhya Pradesh: Main areas-

Amarkantak plateau, Maikala range in Shahdol, Mandla and Balaghat districts and the Kotni area of Jabalpur district.

h. Other states:

- **Andhra Pradesh**, (Vishakhapatnam, East Godavari, and West Godavari)
- **Kerala** (Kannur, Kollam, and Thiruvananthapuram)
- **Rajasthan** (Kota)
- **Uttar Pradesh** (Banda, Lalitpur and Varanasi)
- **Jammu and Kashmir** (Jammu, Poonch, Udhampur)
- **Goa.**

5. Copper:

- **Good conductor of electricity and ductile** (drawn out into a thin wire).
- Used in **automobile, defense, electrical** industry.
- **India - poor** wrt reserves and production of copper.
- India has **low-grade copper ore** (< 1%) (international average 2.5%).
- **Major supply** - USA, Canada, Zimbabwe, Japan, and Mexico.
- **Total reserves** - estimated at 712.5 million tonnes, equivalent to 9.4 million tonnes of metal content.
- **Statewise Distribution**
 - a. **Madhya Pradesh**–
 - **Largest producer** of copper in India.
 - **Major belt** - Taregaon area, Malanjkhanda belt of Balaghat district.
 - b. **Rajasthan** –
 - **Second-largest** producing state.
 - **> 40 %** of the total production of the country.
 - **Major belt** - Khetri-Singhana in Jhunjhunu
 - **Others:** Ajmer, Alwar, Bhilwara, Chittorgarh, Dungarpur, Jaipur, Jhunjhunu, Pali, Sikar, Sirohi, and Udaipur.
 - c. **Jharkhand:** Singhbhum, Hasatu, Baraganda, Jaradih, Parasnath, Barkanath, etc., in Hazaribagh district; Bairakhi in the Santhal Parganas area and parts of the Palamu and Gaya districts.

6. Lead

- **Does not occur free** in nature.
- **Only commercial source** - **Galena** found in veins and masses in crystalline rocks (schist).
- **Also occurs in pre-Cambrian rocks and Vindhyan limestones.**
- **Malleable, soft, heavy, and bad conductor.**
- **States:** Himalayas, Tamil Nadu, Rajasthan, & Andhra Pradesh.
- **Mines:** **Rajasthan** - 94% of total production. **Major producers:** Zawar, Debari mines of Udaipur, Dungarpur, Banswara, and Alwar in Rajasthan.
- **Andhra Pradesh** - Kurnool and Nalgonda mines.

7. Zinc

- **Chief ore** - **sphalerite** (ZnS) found in veins associated with galena, chalcopryrite, iron pyrites, and other supplied ores.
- Zinc is a mixed ore containing lead & zinc.
- **Reserves** –
 - **Rajasthan** - > 99% of the total production.
 - In **Zawar mines** of Udaipur.
 - Some deposits are also found in **Sikkim**.
 - **Rajasthan** - 88.4 percent
 - **Andhra Pradesh** - 3.2 percent
 - **Madhya Pradesh** - 2.09 percent
 - **Bihar** - 1.61 percent
 - **Maharashtra** - 1.31 percent

8. Gold

- Occurs in **auriferous rocks**.
- Also found in **sands of several rivers**.
- **Statewise distribution**
 - a. **Karnataka**
 - **Largest producer** in India.
 - **Mines** - Kolar [Kolar Gold Field], Dharwad, Hassan and Raichur [Hutti Gold Field] districts.
 - **Kolar Gold Fields**
 - One of the **deepest mines** of the world.
 - On the **verge of closure**.
 - **Hutti mines**
 - **Exploited** to their **maximum levels**.
 - **Low grade ore** left behind.
 - **Mining ceased** due to little or no profitability.
 - b. **Andhra Pradesh**
 - **Second largest** producer in India.
 - **Ramagiri** in **Anantapur** district
 - **Alluvial Gold** and **Placer deposits** are widely spread in a large number of rivers
 - c. **Jharkhand**
 - **Sands of Subarnarekha** river - alluvial gold.
 - **Sona nadi** in Singhbhum district.
 - **Sonapat valley**.
 - d. **Kerala:** **River terraces** along the **Punna Puzha** and the **Chabiyar Puzha**.
- 9. **Tungsten**
 - **Ore minerals** - wolframite [(Fe, Mn) WO₄], scheelite (CaWO₄), and ferberite, which are predominantly hydrothermal in origin.
 - **Reserves:**
 - In **Karnataka** (42%), **Rajasthan** (27%), **Andhra Pradesh** (17%), and **Maharashtra** (9%).
 - Remaining 5% in **Haryana, Tamil Nadu, Uttarakhand, and West Bengal**.

10. Silver

- Imports drive most silver consumption in India.
- **Rajasthan** - **largest** producer followed by Gujarat and Jharkhand.
- **Major Silver Mines in India**

Silver Mines	State (Description)
Sindesar Khurd Mine	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• An underground mine located in Rajasthan.• Operate until 2025.
Rampura Agucha Mine	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• In Rajasthan.• Operate until 2027.
Zawar Mine	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• In Rajasthan.• Operate until 2022.
Rajpura Dariba Mine	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• An underground mine in Rajasthan.• Operate until 2024.
Hutti Mine	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• An underground mine in Karnataka.

Non-Metallic Minerals

1. Gypsum

- A **hydrated sulphate of calcium**.
- Used in **making ammonia sulphate fertiliser and the cement industry**
- **Rajasthan- largest producer [99 %]**.
- **Main deposits -**
 - **Tertiary clays and shales of Jodhpur, Nagaur and Bikaner.**
 - **Jaisalmer, Barmer, Chum, Pali and Ganganagar** also have some gypsum-bearing rocks.
 - **Tamil Nadu [Tiruchirappalli district], Jammu and Kashmir, Gujarat and Uttar Pradesh**

2. Mica

- Found in **igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary regimes**.
- Used in the **electrical and electronic industries**.
- **State-wise distribution:**
- a. **Jharkhand:**
 - **High-quality mica**
 - In **lower Hazaribagh plateau**.
 - **Main centers -** Kodarma, Dhorhakola, Domchanch, Dhab, Gawan, Tisri, Chakai and Chakapathal.
- b. **Andhra Pradesh:**
 - **Largest mica-producing state.**
 - **Main center-** Nellore.
- c. **Rajasthan:** From **Jaipur to Bhilwara** and around **Udaipur**
- d. **Karnataka:** In **Mysuru and Hasan** districts
- e. **Tamil Nadu:** In **Coimbatore, Tiruchirappalli, Madurai and Kanyakumari** districts
- f. **Kerala:** In **Alleppey** district.
- g. **Maharashtra:** In **Ratnagiri**.
- h. **West Bengal:** **Purulia and Bankura**.

3. Limestone

- Any **calcareous sedimentary rock consisting of carbonates**.
- **Major constituents -** calcite and dolomite.
- A **primary constituent** for the manufacture of **cement**.
- **Other important uses -** Glass, Ceramic, Paper, Textile, fertiliser, chemical and sugar industry.
- **State Wise Distribution:**
- a. **Rajasthan:**
 - **Leading producing state (21% of the total production).**

- **Areas-** Jhunjhunu, Banswara, Jodhpur, Ajmer, Bikaner, Dungarpur, Kota, Tonk, Alwar, Sawai Madhopur, Nagaur etc.

b. **Madhya Pradesh:**

- **13%** limestone production in India.
- **Areas-** Jabalpur, Satna, Betul, Sagar, Damoh and Rewa.

c. **Andhra Pradesh:**

- **12%** Limestone production in India.
- **Areas-** Cuddapah, Kumool, Guntur, Krishna.

d. **Gujarat:**

- **9%** Limestone production in India.
- **Areas-** Amreli, Kutch, Surat, Junagadh, Kheda and Panchmahals.

e. **Chhattisgarh:**

- **8%** limestone production in India.
- **Areas-** Bastar, Bilaspur, Raigarh, Raipur and Durg districts.

f. **Tamil Nadu:**

- **8%** limestone production in India.
- **Areas-** Ramanathapuram, Tirunelveli, Tiruchchirappalli, Salem, Coimbatore, Madurai, and Thanjavur.

g. **Karnataka:**

- **8%** limestone production in India.
- **Areas-** Gulbarga, Chitradurg, Tumkur, Belgaum, Bijapur, Mysore and Shimoga.

h. **Telangana:**

- **8%** limestone production in India.
- **Areas-** Nalgonda, Adilabad, Warangal, Mahabubnagar and Karimnagar.

- i. **Other states: Remaining 5% -** Meghalaya, Odisha, Uttar Pradesh, Jharkhand, Assam, Kerala, Bihar and Jammu & Kashmir.

4. Diamond

- **Hardest naturally occurring** substance found on Earth.
- Formed in **mantle**.
- Brought to **earth's crust** due to **volcanism**.
- **Uses -** ornaments, polishing surfaces of metals and gem cutting.
- **Distribution:**
 - **Panna belt -** Madhya Pradesh;
 - **Wajrakarur Kimberlite pipe -** Anantapur
 - **Gravels of Krishna River basin -** Andhra Pradesh.
 - **New kimberlite fields** in Raichur-Gulbarga - Karnataka.

Industrial Regions of India

Major Industrial Regions of India

1. Mumbai-Pune Industrial Region

- **Location:** Mumbai, Pune, Ambarnath, Andheri, Bhandup, Ghatkopar, Hadapsar, Jogeshwari, Kalyan, Kirkee, Kolhapur, Kurla, Nashik, Sholapur, Thane, Trombay, Ulhasnagar, and Vikroli.
- **Famous for:** cotton textile industry, engineering goods, chemical industries, food processing industries, leather goods, pharmaceutical, and film industries, metallurgical, chemical, engineering, an automobile goods

2. Hugli Industrial Region

- **Location:** along the banks of the Hugli River-Naihati, Bhatpara, Shamnagar, Krishnanagar, Serampore, Titagarh, Rishra, Kolkata, Haora, Budge.
- **Famous for:** Jute, silk, cotton textile, engineering, electrical goods, automobiles, chemicals, pharmaceuticals, transport equipment, leather footwear, iron and steel and food processing, light machine, locomotives, iron and steel, and spare goods for different types of machines.

3. Bangalore-Tamil Nadu Industrial Region

- **Location:** over the state of Tamil Nadu and the southern parts of Karnataka,
- **Famous for:** main cotton-producing area of the country, textile industry, and food-processing

4. Gujarat Industrial Region

- Third largest industrial region of the country.
- **Location:** Vadodara, Surat, Anand, Ankleshwar Bhavanagar, Bharuch, Godhra, Jamnagar, Kalol, Kheda, Rajkot, and Surendranagar
- **Famous for:** cotton textile industry, woollen textile and petrochemical goods, silk textile and diamond cutting.

5. Chotanagpur Industrial Region

- **Location:** Jharkhand, Odisha, Southern Bihar, & western parts of West Bengal.
- **Famous for:** large concentration of iron and steel industry (known as "Ruhr of India"), Sindri for fertilizer, Chittranjan for locomotives, Ranchi for HMT, and Ramgarh and Bhurkunda for the glass industry.

6. Gurgaon-Delhi-Meerut Industrial Region

- Following is a list of cities and industries for which they are famous for:
 - Agra textile- tourism
 - Ambala-scientific instruments
 - Chandigarh- electronic and strategic goods

- Delhi- textile, chemical, drugs, pharmaceutical, light machine, electronic goods, food processing
- Faridabad- engineering
- Ghaziabad- synthetic fibre, chemicals, electronics, pharmaceuticals, agricultural equipment, iron and steel, cycle tyre, and tubes
- Gurgaon- automobiles
- Kalka- HMT
- Mathura- petrochemicals
- Meerut- sugar and textiles
- Modinagar- textile, engineering goods, and paper
- NOIDA- automobile, electronics

Minor Industrial Regions

1. Amritsar Jalandhar-Ludhiana Industrial Region:

Famous for sports goods, cotton and woollen, textiles, hosiery, food-processing, and tourism.

2. Nagpur-Wardha Industrial Region: **Famous** for textiles, engineering, chemicals, and food processing

3. Godavari-Krishna Delta: **Famous** for Iron and Steel, ship-building, fertiliser, rice-milling, cotton textile, sugar, fish processing, engineering, and chemicals.

4. Kanpur-Lucknow Industrial Region: **Famous** for cotton, woollen and jute textiles, leather goods, fertilisers, chemicals, drugs, pharmaceuticals, electric goods, and light machinery.

5. Assam valley industrial region: **Famous** for petrochemical, jute and silk textiles, tea-processing, paper, plywood, match, and food processing industries.

6. Darjeeling-Siliguri Industrial Region: **Famous** for the tea processing industry and tourism.

7. North Bihar and Eastern Uttar Pradesh Industrial Region: **Famous** for sugar, cement, glass, jute, fertilisers, locomotive, paper, and food processing

8. Indore-Ujjain Industrial Region: **Famous** for cotton textile, chemicals, drugs, electronic and engineering goods, and food processing.

9. Dharwad-Belgaum Industrial Region: **Famous** for cotton textile, chemicals, spices packing, and food processing

10. Kerala coast Industrial Region: **Famous** for coconut oil extraction, rice-milling, fish packing, paper, coir-matting, ship-building (Kochi), petroleum refining (Kochi), and chemical and electronic goods.

Major Industries in India

Cement Industry

- **India - second largest** producer; **China- 1st.**
- **First cement plant - Porbandar**, Gujarat, in 1904
- **Raw materials:**
 - **Limestone** -65%, silica – 20%, alumina -5%
 - **Slag** from **steel and fertiliser** plants
 - **Sea shells and gypsum**, bauxite.
- **Geographical Distribution**
 1. **Madhya Pradesh:** Katni, Jamul, Satna, Durg, Maihar, Neemuch

Geographical Distribution

Steel Plant	Iron Ore From	Coal From	Water Source
TISCO	Gurumahisani (Odisha), Noamundi (Jharkhand) Singhbhum	Jharia, Raniganj	Subarnarekha River
IISCO	Guna (Jharkhand), Singhbhum	Jharia	DVC, Damodar River
VISW	Kemmangundi (Chikmagalur, Karnataka)	Sharavathi power, Bhadra river	Mangalore port, NH4
BHILAI	Daili Rajhara	Korba, Kargali	Korba Thermal power plant, Mahanadi Basin
ROURKELA	Sundargarh, Keonjhar	Jharia, Talchar	Hirukud HEP, Sankh-south coal river
DURGAPUR	Mayurbhanj	Jharia, Ranigan	DVC, Damodar river
SALEM	Local	---	Mettur dam
VIZAG	Bailadila (Chattisgarh)	Imported + Damodar	---
VIJAYNAGAR	Nearby	Sringeri	Tungabhadra dam
BOKARO	Kiriburu (Odisha) (Keonjhar)	Jharia	DVC, Bokaro and Damodar rivers

Textile Industry

- **India - second-largest exporter** of textiles and clothing and Silk.
- **First- global jute production.**
- **First cotton textile mill** - Fort Gloster near **Calcutta** (1818 AD)
- **First modern cotton textile mill** - **Bombay** in 1854
- **Geographical Distribution**
 1. **Maharashtra - largest producer: Mumbai** (Cottonopolis of India - largest centre of cotton textile industry), Sholapur, Kolhapur, Pune, Jalgaon, Akola, Sangli, Nagpur, Satara, Wardha, Aurangabad and Amravati.
 2. **Gujarat - second largest producer: Ahmedabad** (Manchester of India and Boston of East - second largest centre of cotton textile industry), Surat, Vadodara, Bharuch, Bhavnagar, Nadiad, Porbandar, Rajkot, Navsari, Mauri and Viramgam.
 3. **Tamil Nadu: Coimbatore** (Manchester of South India), Chennai, Tirunelveli, Madurai, Tuticorin, Salem, Virudhnagar and Pollachi.

2. **Andhra Pradesh:** Vijayawada, Karimnagar, Cement Nagar, Krishna, Adilabad
3. **Rajasthan:** Hopur, Chittorgarh, Udaipur
4. **Karnataka:** Bhadravati
5. **Gujarat:** Porbandar

Iron and Steel Industry

- **India - second-largest** steel producer **after China.**
- **Growth** was driven by the **domestic availability** of **raw materials** such as iron ore and **cost-effective labour.**
- Consequently, the **steel sector** has been a **major contributor** to India's manufacturing output.

4. **Uttar Pradesh:** Kanpur (Manchester of Uttar Pradesh), Etawah, Modinagar, Moradabad, Bareilly, Hathras, Agra, Meerut, and Varanasi.
5. **Karnataka:** Bangalore, Belgaum, Mangalore, Chitradurga, Gulbarga and Mysore.
6. **Madhya Pradesh:** Indore, Gwalior, Mandasaur, Dewas, Ujjain, Nagda, Bhopal, Jabalpur and Ratlam.
7. **Rajasthan:** Kota, Jaipur, Sriganganagar, Bhilwara, Bhawani Mandi, Udaipur and Kishanganj.
8. **West Bengal:** Kolkata, Howrah, Serampore, Shyamanagar, Saikia, Murshidabad, Hugli and Panihar.

Sugar Industry

- **India- second largest** after Brazil.
- **1st sugar industry- Betia** (Bihar), 1840
- **Second most important agro-based industry.**
- **India- largest producer** of both sugarcane and cane sugar
- **8 %of the total** sugar **production.**
- **Seasonal industry-** seasonality of raw materials.

- **Maharashtra** - leading producer - > 1/3rd of the total production
- **Uttar Pradesh**- second-largest producer.
- **Geographical Distribution**
 1. **Uttar Pradesh:** Gorakhpur, Deoria, Basti, Gonda, Meerut, Saharanpur, Muzaffarnagar, Bijnor and Moradabad
 2. **Bihar:** Samastipur, Gopalganj, Sitamarhi, Champaran, Chorma, Dulipati, Supaul, Darbhanga, Saran, and Muzaffarpur
 3. **Punjab:** Phagwara and Dhuri
 4. **Haryana:** Ambala, Rohtak and Panipat
 5. **Maharashtra:** Nasik, Pune, Satara, Sangli, Kolhapur and Solapur
 6. **Karnataka:** Munirabad, Shimoga and Mandya
 7. **Tamil Nadu:** Nalikipuram, Pugulur, Coimbatore and Pandyaraj-Puram
 8. **Andhra Pradesh:** Nizamabad, Medak, West and east Godavari, Visakhapatnam
 9. **Odisha:** Aska, Bargarh and Rayagada

Petrochemical Industries

- **Items derived from crude petroleum** → provide raw materials for new industries (petrochemical industries).
- **National Organic Chemicals Industries Limited (NOCIL)**, private - 1961, first naphtha-based chemical industry in Mumbai.
- **Divided into** Polymers, synthetic fibres, Elastomers, and surfactant intermediate.

- **Mumbai** - hub of the petrochemical industries.

Geographical Distribution

- **Reliance refinery**- Jamnagar, Gujarat near Sikka port-largest in India
- **Other refineries** - Trombay, Mangalore, Kochi, Chennai, Visakhapatnam, Haldia
- **Other Plants**- Mumbai, Barauni, Mettur, Pimpri and Rishra - major producers of plastic materials.
- **Nylon and Polyester yarns** Industries: Kota, Pimpri, Mumbai, Modinagar, Pune, Ujjain, Nagpur, and Udhna.
- **Acrylic staple fibre**- Kota and Vadodara.

Heavy Industries

- Comprises **heavy engineering industry, machine tool industry, heavy electrical industry, industrial machinery** and **auto-industry**.
- Provide **goods and services** for almost all sectors of the economy, including **power, rail and road transport**.
- **Location:**
 - **Automobile Industries:** Bhopal, Gurgaon, Jamshedpur, Vadodara, Pune, Kolhapur
 - **Shipbuilding and Dockyard:** Chennai, Kochi, Marmagao, Mumbai, Visakhapatnam, Kandla
 - **Railways:** Nasik, Varanasi, Jamshedpur, Perambur
 - **Aircraft Building and Repair:** Lucknow, Kolkata, Delhi, Bengaluru

toppernotes
Unleash the topper in you

12 CHAPTER

Transport in India

ROAD TRANSPORT

1. GOLDEN QUADRILATERAL SUPER HIGHWAYS

- Links 4 metro cities (Delhi-Kolkata-Chennai-Mumbai), its sub parts are
 - North-South corridors- Srinagar (Jammu and Kashmir) to Kanyakumari (Tamil Nadu).
 - East-West Corridor - Silchar (Assam) to Porbandar (Gujarat).
- The four legs use the following National Highways:

	Old System	New System
Delhi – Kolkata	NH 2	NH 44, NH 19

Delhi – Mumbai	NH 8, NH 79A, NH 79, NH 76	NH 48
Mumbai – Chennai	NH 4, NH 7, NH 46, NH 4	NH 48
Kolkata – Chennai	NH 6, NH 60, NH 5	NH 16

2. NATIONAL HIGHWAYS

- link extreme parts of the country.
- primary road systems.
- laid and maintained by the Central Public Works Department (CPWD).
- The historical Sher-Shah Suri Marg - b/w Delhi and Amritsar.

List of Important National Highways in India as per the new numbering system

Number	States through which it passes
NH 1	Jammu and Kashmir (URI, Baramulla, Kargil, Srinagar and Leh)
NH 2	Assam, Nagaland, Manipur, Mizoram: (Dibrugarh, Sivnagar, Wokha, Imphal, Kohima, Mokokchung)
NH 3	Punjab, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu & Kashmir (Atari, Amritsar, Jalandhar, Hoshiarpur, Hamirpur, Mandi, Kullu, Manali)
NH 4	Andaman & Nicobar Island (Mayabandar, Port Blair, Chidiatapu)
NH 5	Punjab, Chandigarh, Haryana, Himachal Pradesh (Firozpur, Moga, Jagraon, Ludhiana, Chandigarh, Kalka, Solan, Shimla, Thiyog, Narkanda, Rampur)
NH 6	Meghalaya, Assam, Mizoram (Zorabat, Shillong, Badarpur, Kolasib, Aizawl, Badarpur, Panchgram)
NH 7	Punjab, Chandigarh, Haryana, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand (Fazilka, Abohar, Bhatinda, Barnala, Sangroor, Patiala, Panchkula, Raipur Rani, Dehradun, Rishikesh, Devprayag, Rudraprayag, Karnaprayag, Chamoli, Badrinath)
NH 8	Assam, Tripura (Karimganj, Agartala, Udaipur)
NH 9	Punjab, Haryana, Delhi, Uttar Pradesh, Uttarakhand (Dabwali, Sirsa, Fatehabad, Hisar, Haansi, Rohtak, Bahadurgarh, Delhi, Gaziabad, Moradabad, Rampur, Bilaspur, Rudrapur, Tanakpur, Pithoragarh)
NH 10	Sikkim, West Bengal (Siliguri, Kalimpong, Gangtok)
NH 11	Rajasthan (Jaisalmer, Pokharan, Bikaner, Ratangarh, Fatehpur)
NH 12	West Bengal (Raiganj, Malda, Farakhha, Barhampur, Krishnanagar, Ranaghat, Baarasaat, Kolkata)
NH 19	Delhi, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand, West Bengal (Delhi, Mathura, Agra, Kanpur, Allahabad, Varanasi, Mohania, Aurangabad, Asansol, Kolkata)
NH 20	Bihar, Jharkhand, Odisha (Bakhtiyarpur, Bihar Sharif, Nevada, Hazaribagh, Ranchi, Khooti, Chakradharpur, Chaibasa)
NH 21	Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh (Jaipur, Dausa, Bharatpur, Agra)
NH 24	Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal, Assam; (Porbandar, Udaipur, Chittaurgarh, Kota, Shivpuri, Jhansi, Kanpur, Lucknow, Faizabad, Gorakhpur, Gopal ganj, Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Araria, Purnia, Siliguri, Guwahati, Dispur, Silcher)
NH 44 (Longest NH in India)	Jammu & Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Delhi, Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Telangana, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu (3,745 Kms); (Srinagar, Jammu, Pathankot, Ludhiana, Ambala, Karnal, Panipat, Delhi, Faridabad, Mathura, Agra, Gwalior, Jhansi, Nagpur, Adilabad, Nizamabad, Hyderabad, Kurnool, Bengaluru, Dharmapuri, Selam, Madurai, Kanyakumari).

NH 48	Delhi, Haryana, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu (2807 Kms); (Delhi, Jaipur, Kishangarh, Chittaurgarh, Udaipur, Ahmedabad, Vadodra, Ankleshwar, Mumbai, Thane, Pune, Satara, Kolhapur, Bengaluru, Krishnagiri, Vellore, Chennai)
NH 53	Gujarat, Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, Odisha (1781 Kms); (Surat, Jalgaon, Bhusawal, Akola, Amaravati, Nagpur, Bhandara, Devri, Rajanandgaon, Durg, Raipur, Saraipalli, Baargarh, Sambalpur, haridaspur, Paradeep Port)

3. STATE HIGHWAYS

- Link a **state capital** with different **district headquarters**.
- **constructed** and maintained by the **State Public Works Department (PWD)**.

4. DISTRICT ROADS

- connect the **district headquarters** with **other places of the district**.
- maintained by the **Zila Parishad**.

5. OTHER ROADS

- **Rural roads**, which link **rural areas** and **villages with towns**.
- Received special impetus under **Pradhan Mantri Grameen Sadak Yojana** for construction of all season motorable rural roads.

6. BORDER ROADS

- Constructed and maintained by the **Border Roads Organisation** - a Government of India undertaking.
- **Improved accessibility** in areas of difficult terrain.

7. Expressways

- **Highest class of roads** in the Indian road network that consists of **6 or 8-lane-controlled access highways**.
- **Entrance and exit** controlled by the **use of slip roads**.
- **Around 1581.4 km expressways** are operational in India.
- **National Highways Development Project** aims to construct an **additional 18,637 km of expressways by 2022**.
- **National Expressway Authority of India** under the administrative control of the **Ministry of Road Transport and Highways** will be responsible for constructing and maintaining these expressways.
- **Ahmedabad Vadodara Expressway**- the **National Expressway 1**, is India's **first Expressway** connecting the cities of **Ahmedabad and Vadodara** in the state of Gujarat.

Expressway Name	State
Ahmedabad Vadodara Expressway	Gujrat
Mumbai-Pune Expressway	Maharashtra
Jaipur-Kishangarh Expressway	Rajasthan
Allahabad Bypass	Uttar Pradesh
Durgapur Expressway	West Bengal
Chennai Bypass	Tamil Nadu
Delhi-Gurugram Expressway	Delhi/Haryana

Noida-Greater Expressway	Noida	Delhi/Uttar Pradesh
Delhi Noida direct Flyway		Delhi/ Uttar Pradesh
Hyderabad Expressway	elevated	Andra Pradesh
Hosur Road Expressway	Elevated	Karnataka
Kona Expressway		West Bengal
Outer Ring Road (Hyderabad)		Andra Pradesh
Raipur-Bhilai-Durg-Expressway		Chhattisgarh

8. Dedicated Freight Corridor (DFC)

- A **high speed** and **high-capacity railway corridor** exclusively for **transportation of freight**, or in other words, **goods and commodities**.
- Involves **seamless integration** of **better infrastructure** and **state of the art technology**.
- **2 arms:**
 - (i) **Eastern Dedicated Freight Corridor (EDFC):**
 - Starts at **Sahnewal** (Ludhiana) in **Punjab** and ends at **Dankuni** in **West Bengal**.
 - Has **coal mines, thermal power plants and industrial cities**.
 - **States:** Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand and West Bengal.
 - **Funding by World Bank**.
 - (ii) **Western Dedicated Freight Corridor (WDFC):**
 - Around **1,500-km** -from **Dadri** in **Uttar Pradesh** to **Jawaharlal Nehru Port Trust** in **Mumbai**.
 - **States:** Haryana, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra and Uttar Pradesh.
 - **Funded by Japan International Cooperation Agency**.
 - **Connecting Link for Eastern and Western Arm:** under construction b/w **Dadri - Khurja**.

MAJOR INITIATIVES FOR ROAD TRANSPORT

1. BHARATMALA PARIYOJANA

- a **new umbrella program** for the **highways sector**
- Focuses on **optimizing efficiency** of **freight and passenger movement** across the country
- **Bridges** the **critical infrastructure gaps** through development of **Backward and forward linkages**.
- **Features:**

- **Improving the quality of roads** - construction of well-maintained and developed roads in all parts of the nation.
- **Total road construction** - A strive to complete new roads, which will add up to a whopping 34,800 kms.
- **Integrated scheme** - Approach to keep all the related schemes together.
- **Total tenure of the program** - Keeping the tenure of 5 years and completing the first phase before the end of 2022.
- **Segmentation** in phases - Divided into 7 stages For a better approach and easy to track each stage.
- **Different categories of road construction** - To provide better connectivity, Construction of different types of Roads will be done.

2. SETU BHARATAM

- **Focus towards the importance of road safety.**
- Aims at **developing stronger infrastructure** with **proper planning** and implementation.
- Construction of **new bridges** along with the **renovation of the old and unsafe ones.**
- **Objective:**
 - **Nationwide focus**
 - **Railway track bridges** : around 280 under and over railway tracks bridges across the country.
 - **Space technology** : Gradation using scientific techniques like age, distance, longitude, latitude material and design among others for the successful construction of bridges.
 - **Bridge mapping** : 1,50,000 bridges across the country will be mapped under the Indian Bridge Management System.
 - **Ease of travel** : Having bridges will reduce traffic issues.
 - **Safe travel** : Having safe railways and national highway bridges will also bring a sense of protection in the passengers.
 - **Improving quality.**

RAIL TRANSPORT

- **Principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers** in India.
- Make it possible for people to **conduct multifarious activities** like business, sightseeing, pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over longer distances.
- Indian Railways has **4 UNESCO World Heritage Sites**
 - Darjeeling Himalayan Railway (1999)
 - Nilgiri Mountain Railway (2005)
 - Kalka Shimla Railway (2008)
 - Chhatrapati Shivaji Terminus, Mumbai (2004).

Railway Zones and their Headquarters

Name of the Railway Zone	Zonal Headquarter	Division
Central Railway	Mumbai	1) Mumbai

		2) Nagpur 3) Bhusawal 4) Pune 5) Sholapur
Eastern Railway	Kolkata	1) Howrah-I 2) Howrah-II 3) Sealdah 4) Malda 5) Asansol 6) Chitaranjan 7) Kolkata Metro
East Central Railway	Hajipur	1) Danapur 2) Mugalsarai 3) Dhanbad 4) Sonpur 5) Samastipur
East Coast Railway	Bhubaneswar	1) Khurda Road 2) Waltair 3) Sambalpur
Northern Railway	Baroda House, New Delhi	1) Delhi-I 2) Delhi-II 3) Ambala 4) Moradabad 5) Lucknow 6) Ferozpur
North Central Railway	Allahabad	1) Allahabad 2) Jhansi 3) Agra
North Eastern Railway	Gorakhpur	1) Izzatnagar 2) Lucknow 3) Varanasi 4) DLW
North Frontier Railway	Maligaon, Guwahati	1) Katihar 2) Alipurduar 3) Rangiya 4) Lumding 5) Tinsukia
North Western Railway	Jaipur	1) Jaipur 2) Jodhpur 3) Bikaner 4) Ajmer
Southern Railway	Chennai	1) Chennai 2) Madurai 3) Palghat 4) Trichy 5) Trivandrum
South Central Railway	Secunderabad	1) Secunderabad 2) Hyderabad 3) Guntakal 4) Vijayawada 5) Nanded
South Eastern Railway	Garden Reach, Kolkata	1) Kharagpur 2) Adra 3) Chakradharpur 4) Ranchi 5) Shalimar
South East Central Railway	Bilaspur	1) Bilaspur 2) Nagpur 3) Raipur
South Western	Hubli	1) Bangalore

Railway		2) Mysore 3) Hubli 4) RWF/YNK
Western Railway	Churchgate	1) BCT 2) Vadodara 3) Ahmedabad 4) Ratlam 5) Rajkot 6) Bhavnagar
West Central Railway	Jabalpur	1) Jabalpur 2) Bhopal 3) Kota

Government Initiatives

- **'National Rail Plan':** To enable the country to integrate its rail network with other modes of transport and develop a multi-modal transportation network.
- **Alternate Train Accommodation Scheme (VIKALP) scheme**
 - To facilitate waitlisted passengers to get alternate train accommodation within 12 hours of the original train.
 - The proposed Clone train service -run on high-demand routes within an hour of a scheduled train's departure to accommodate those on its waiting list.
- **New rail safety fund —Rashtriya Rail Sanraksha Kosh:** For track improvement, bridge rehabilitation work, improved inspection work etc.
- **Nivaran:** Grievance redressal portal launched by the Ministry of Railways.
- **Project Saksham:** A comprehensive training programme launched by Indian Railways.

Ports and Waterways

National Waterways of India

Ports in India

- 13 major ports (12 Public + 1 Private) and 205 notified minor and intermediate ports.

State	Name of Port	About
Kerala	Kochi Port or Cochin Port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● on the South-Western coast of India ● Natural gateway for industrial and agricultural produce markets of South-West India. ● Exports of spices, tea, and coffee. ● Shipbuilding centre.
Tamil Nadu	Ennore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● First corporatised port of India. ● On the Coromandel Coast about 24 km north of the Chennai Port. ● Trades: Iron Ore, Coal, petroleum products and chemicals
West Bengal	Haldia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● On Hugli river ● Formed to relieve pressure on Kolkata port
West Bengal	Kolkata Port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Only riverine major port in India. ● Known for twin dock systems viz. Kolkata Dock on the eastern bank & Haldia Dock on the western bank of river Hooghly ● Trade: Jute, tea, Coal, Steel
Gujarat	Kandla	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tidal Port ● In the Gulf of Kutch ● Constructed after partition when Karachi Port was transferred to Pakistan. ● Relieves the congestion of Mumbai Port ● Largest port by volume of cargo handled. ● Trade Free Zone

1. N.W. No.1 (1620 km)

- **On:** Ganga river
- **b/w:** Allahabad and Haldia .
- **longest National Waterway in India.**

2. N.W. No.2 (891 km)

- **On:** Brahmaputra river
- **b/w:** Sadiya and Dhubri .
- One of northeast India's major freight transportation waterways **and the third-longest Waterway.**

3. N.W. No.3 (205 km)

- **On:** West Coast Canal and Champakara canal and Udyogamandal canal (Kerala)
- **b/w :** Kollam and Kottapuram.
- **India's first waterway** with a **24-hour navigation facility** along its route.
- **Consists** of West Coast Canal, Champakara Canal, and Udyogamandal Canal.

4. N.W. No.4 (1095 km)

- **On:** Kakinada-Puducherry canal, Godavari River stretch , and Krishna River stretch
- **b/w :** Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu
- **Second-longest waterway** of India

5. N.W. No.5 (623 km)

- **On:** Brahmani River, East Coast Canal, Matai river, and Mahanadi River Delta.
- **b/w :** Odisha and West Bengal

6. N.W. No 6 (121 km)

- **Proposed waterway in Assam.**
- **Connect:** Lakhimpur to Bhanga in river Barak.
- Will help in **trading b/w the town of Silchar to Mizoram State.**

Karnataka	Mangalore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● It is deep water, all weather port. ● Deals with the iron ore exports ● Only major port of Karnataka.
Goa	Marmagoa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● On the estuaries of the river Juari ● Natural harbour ● Awarded the status of a major port in the year 1963. ● Leading iron ore exporting port in India.
Maharashtra	Mumbai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Largest Natural Port and harbor In India ● Busiest Port in India ● Jawahar Dweep is an island in the harbor, for Crude and petroleum products handling.
Maharashtra	Jawaharlal Nehru Port or Nhava Sheva Port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Largest Artificial Port ● Largest container port of India. ● On the eastern shore of Mumbai harbor off Elephanta Island. ● Terminal point of the Western Dedicated Freight Corridor of Indian Railways. ● Trade: Textiles, sporting goods, carpets, pharmaceuticals, chemicals etc.
Odisha	Paradip	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● First Major Port commissioned after Independence. ● At the confluence of Mahanadi river and Bay of Bengal. ● deals with the export of iron and aluminum.
Tamil Nadu	Tuticorin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Renamed as V.O.Chidambaranar Port. ● Artificial port located in the Gulf of Mannar. ● Famous for pearl fishery in the Bay of Bengal and thus aka the pearl city. ● Trade: coal, salt, petroleum products, and fertilizers
Andhra Pradesh	Visakhapatnam	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Port is a natural harbor. ● 2nd largest port by volume of cargo handled. ● Located midway b/w Chennai Port & Kolkata Port. ● Trade: Iron Ore, Coal, Alumina and oil.
Tamil Nadu	Chennai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Largest port on the East coast i.e. Bay of Bengal ● Second largest port of India after JNPT. ● Artificial port.

AIR TRANSPORT

- **Modern means** of transportation.
- **Rapid speed** - most peculiar feature.
- **India- 9th position** in the world in the civil aviation market.
- Has **no physical barriers** like other modes of transport.
- **Employs 7 million people** **directly and indirectly**.

Schemes Related to Aviation Sector

1. GPS-AIDED GEO AUGMENTED NAVIGATION (GAGAN)

- India's first Satellite-based Augmentation System.
- Provides additional accuracy for safety in civil aviation.
- Has expansion capability for seamless navigation services across geographies.

2. E-SAHAJ

- **100% of security clearances** pertaining to **Ministry** made **online on e-sahaj online portal** launched by the Ministry of Civil Aviation.

- **Operational for granting clearances** in respect of **24 categories**.

3. REGIONAL CONNECTIVITY SCHEME – UDAN

- To **connect underserved airports to key airports** through **flights costing Rs 2,500 for per hour flight**.
- **Envisages providing subsidies to airlines** to offer these fares.
- **Applicable on route length b/w 200 to 800 km** with **no lower limit set** for the hilly, remote, island, and security sensitive regions.
- **Viability gap funding (VGF)** will be provided to selected airline operators from RCF, and state governments will be required to reimburse the applicable share.

4. Integrated National Civil Aviation Policy 2016

- Create an **ecosystem to make flying affordable** for the masses.
- To **increase cargo volumes** by 2027.

13

CHAPTER

Harappan Civilization

- **First Urban Civilization of South- Asia**
- **Contemporary to Mesopotamian and Egyptian civilisations.**
- Developed in the **North-western part of the Indian subcontinent**
- **1853-** Discovery of a **Harappan seal** which showed a bull by **A. Cunningham.**
- **1921-** Discovery of **Harappa (the first archaeological site discovered)** by **Dayaram Sahni.** Therefore, it is also known as the Harappan civilisation.
- **1922-** Discovery of **Mohenjodaro** by **R.D. Banerjee**
- Essentially a **Riverine Civilization.**
- A **Bronze age Civilization.**

Geographical Extent

- **Coverage-** about 13 lakh square km
- **Extent-** Sindh, Balochistan, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Western U.P., and northern Maharashtra.
- **Northernmost site-** Manda in Jammu and Kashmir (River- Chenab)
- **Southernmost site-** Daimabad in Maharashtra (River- Pravara)
- **Western-most site-** Sutkagendor in Balochistan (River- Dashk)
- **Easternmost site-** Alamgirpur in Uttar Pradesh (River- Hindon)

Important Sites of the Harappan Civilization

Sites	River	Features
Harappa (1921) Montgomery district of Punjab. Also known as the city of granaries.	Ravi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A row of 6 granaries. • R-37 and H cemetery found here. • Coffin burial • Red Sandstone male torso • Copper bullock cart • Stone symbols of lingam and yoni • Terracotta figure of Mother Goddess. • Single-room barracks • Bronze pots. • Citadel (raised platform) • Dice
Mohenjodaro (1922) (mound of the dead)- Larkana district of Sindh Largest IVC site	Indus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Great Bath (for ritual bathing, no use of stone, built with burnt bricks, bitumen used on outer walls and floors) • Great granary (the largest building in Mohenjodaro) • Piece of woven cloth • Bronze Statue of dancing girl- Right arm on the hip and left arm covered with bangles. • Cotton cloth • uniform buildings and weights • Seal of mother Goddess • Idol of yogi • Pashupati seal • Steatite image of a bearded man • Mesopotamian seals • Bronze image of nude women dancer • 7 layers of the city → city was rebuilt 7 times.
Lothal (1957) (port city)- Gujarat Trade centre for gems and ornaments	Bhogvaha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • City divided into six sections • Coastal town, sea trade links with Mesopotamia • Dockyard (to manufacture and repair ships)

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Evidence of rice husk ● Double burial and 3-pair burial ● Fire altars ● Terracotta model of a ship ● Ivory scale for measurement ● Persian gulf seal
Chanhudaro (1931) - Sindh	Indus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Only City without citadel ● Evidence of beads making factory, Lipstick, inkpot. ● Dog's paw imprint on brick ● Terracotta model of bullock cart ● Bronze toy cart
Kalibangan (1953) (black bangles)- Rajasthan	Ghaggar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Furrowed land ● Fire altars ● No presence of baked bricks, earthen bricks present ● Houses with wells ● No drainage ● Shows evidence of pre- Harappan as well as Harappan phase
Dholavira (1990-91) - Gujarat	Luni	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Water harvesting system ● Stormwater drainage system ● Stadium ● Nameplate of 10 letters (largest IVC inscription) ● The only city to be divided into 3 parts.
Rangpur (1931) (Gujarat)	Mahar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Remains of Pre+Mature Harappan phase ● Evidence of stoneflacks
Banawali (1973-74) (Hisar, Haryana)	Saraswati	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pre+Mature + late Harappan phase ● Clay model of plough ● No drainage system ● Terracotta model of plough ● Barley grains ● Lapis Lazuli ● The only site with Radial streets
Rakhigarhi (1963) (Haryana)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The largest IVC site in India ● Fragmented artifact of a thick sturdy red ware with an incised female figure
Surkotada (1964) (Kutch, Gujarat)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Horse remains and graveyard ● Soldiers sign-on potsherd ● Pot burials ● Oval grave
Amri (1929) (Sindh, Pakistan)	Indus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Evidence of rhinoceros
Ropar (Punjab, India)	Sutlej	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● first site to be excavated after independence ● Dog buried with a human ● Oval pit Burials ● Copper Axe
Alamgirpur (Uttar Pradesh)	Yamuna	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Broken copper blade ● Ceramic items
Daimabad (Maharashtra)	Pravara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Bronze images (charioteer with chariot, ox, elephant, and rhinoceros)

14

CHAPTER

Vedic Age

- Vedic Age started with the Aryan occupation of the Indo-Gangetic Plains
- Aryans originally lived in the Steppes region.
- They first settled in the Sapta Sindhu region (Land of Seven rivers). These seven rivers were: **Sindhu (Indus), Vipash (Beas), Vitasta (Jhelum), Parushni**

(Ravi), Asikni (Chenab), Shutudri (Satluj), and Saraswati

- Language- **Indo-European**
- **Tools-** socketed axes, bronze dirks, and swords
- **Horses played a significant role** (discovered in Southern Tajikistan and Swat Valley in Pakistan).

Vedic Literature

- Vedas are – **Rig Veda, Sama Veda, Yajur Veda, and Atharva Veda**

Rig Veda	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It is the oldest of the Vedas • Collection of 1028 hymns • Divided into ten Mandalas or books • Language- Vedic Sanskrit • Origin- 1500-1000 BC. • Rishi family of Angira- composed 35% of the hymns • Kanva family - composed around 25%. • hymns are known as Suktas which are generally used in rituals. • Hymns dedicated to Gods and Goddesses seeking godly pleasure. • Indra- chief deity (King of heaven). • Other gods- Sky God Varuna, fire God Agni, and the Sun God Surya • Mandalas 2 – 7 - oldest part of the Rig Veda; called “family books” as they are ascribed to particular families of seers/rishis. • Mandala 8 – mostly composed by the Kanva clan. • Mandala 9 – hymns are dedicated entirely to Soma. • Mandala 1 – dedicated to Indra and Agni. • Mandala 10 – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ contains NadiStuti Sukta praising the rivers. ○ contains Nasadiya Sukta and Purush Sukta explains that 4 varnas originated from the mouth, arms, belly, and legs of the Creator. • Only surviving recension- Shakala Shakha. • Upaveda- Ayurveda
Sama Veda	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sama means “melody” • Book of chants • 16,000 ragas or musical notes. • aka book of prayers or “storehouse of knowledge of chants”. • 2 parts: Shukla Yajurveda and Krishna Yajurveda. • Taiteriyā Samhita : Krishna Yajurveda. • Vajseniya Samhita: Shukla Yajurveda. • 1875 verses mentioned- only 75 original, rest from the Rig Veda • Upaveda- Gandharva Veda
Yajur Veda	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yajur means “sacrifice” • Concerned with rituals & mantras associated with different sacrifices. • Two major divisions- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Shukla Yajur Veda/ Vajasaneya / White YajurVeda – contains only mantras. It contains the Madhyandina and Kanva recensions. ○ Krishna Yajur Veda / Black Yajur Veda – includes mantras and prose commentary. It contains Kathaka, Maitrayani, Taittiriya, and Kapisthalam recensions • Vajasaneyi Samhita- Samhita in the Shukla Yajurveda. • Upaveda- Dhanur Veda
Atharva Veda	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • aka Brahma Veda • Mainly focuses on the treatment of 99 diseases.

- **Associated with two rishis-** Atharva and Angira.
- contains **practice of black and white magic** for healing purposes.
- Composed in **Vedic Sanskrit**
- Has **730 hymns with 6,000 mantras** divided into 20 books.
- **Two recensions** - Paippalada and the Saunakiya are preserved.
- **Mundaka Upanishad and Mandukya Upanishad** are embedded
- It describes the popular beliefs and superstitions of people
- **Upaveda** - Shilpa Veda

Brahmanas

- **Prose texts explaining the hymns** in the Vedas.
- **Sanskrit texts embedded within each Veda**, incorporating myths and legends to explain and instruct Brahmins on the performance of Vedic rituals.
- **Explain the symbolism and meaning of the Samhitas & expound scientific knowledge of the Vedic Period**, including observational astronomy and, particularly in relation to altar construction, geometry.
- **contain mystical & philosophical material** that constitutes Aranyakas & Upanishads.
- **Each Veda has one or more Brahmanas.**
- **Less than twenty Brahmanas exist** presently, as most have been lost or destroyed.
- **Oldest Brahmana** is dated to about **900 BCE**, while the youngest is dated to 700 BCE.
 - **Rig Veda-** Aitareya and Kaushitaki Brahmana
 - **Sama Veda-** Tandya and Sadvimsha Brahmana
 - **Yajur Veda-** Taittiriya and Satapatha Brahmana
 - **Atharva Veda-** Gopatha, Jaiminiya, and Panchvish Brahmana

Upanishads

- upa (nearby), and nishad (to sit-down), i.e., "sitting down near" (the teacher).
- These are **passed onto future generations orally by pupils who sit under the feet of their Gurus (Guru-Shishya Parampara)**
- **Final parts of the Vedas** and are thus called **Vedanta (limbs of the Vedas).**
- Upanishads are **philosophical and spiritual texts that reveal the truth of human life and talk about salvation (moksha).**
- **Introduce the concept of 'Atman' and 'Brahman'.**
- **More than 200 known Upanishads**, out of which **108** are called **Muktika Canon.**

Vedangas

- Literal meaning of the word Vedanga is "**limbs of the Vedas**".
- **Compiled during 600 BC**
- **Part of Smriti texts** as they are handed down by tradition.
- **Supplementary texts-** deal with the understanding of Vedic traditions.
- **Considered to be of human origin** and are written in the form of Sutras (short condensed statements used to express different ideas).

Early/ Rig Vedic Period (1500-1000 BC)

Political structure

- Aryans **lived in small villages.**
- **Family headed by eldest male member**
- Many **families formed grama** headed by the gramina.
- Many **gramas or villages formed the Visya.**
- **Visya** - headed by a **Visyapati.**
- **Many Visyas collectively formed jana** ruled by a **king called Rajana.**
- **Kingship hereditary .**

Society

- **Semi-nomadic and Tribal society**
- **Social division/distinction** based on labor and gender- **not rigid and hereditary.**
- **Slaves- ONLY** for **domestic purposes** and **NOT** for **agriculture**
- **Society not divided into caste lines.**
- **Varna or color-** basis of differentiation b/w Vedic (dasas) & Non-Vedic people (dasyus).
- **4-fold Varna order - not yet completely developed** (Purusha Sukta of the 10th mandala of Rig Veda mentions the four Varnas)
- **Child Marriage, purdah, and Sati - absent**
- **Monogamy was practiced**
- **Polygamy - royalty and noble families**

Economic Structure

- **Knew cultivation of land.**
- **Agriculture - main occupation.**
- **Ploughed the fields** by a pair of the **oxen**
- **Knew about** tilling of the soil, cutting of furrows, sowing the seeds, and cutting of corn with the help of sickle.
- **Chief crops** cultivated- **Barley and wheat**, Probably **did not cultivate rice.**

Socio-Cultural Structure

- **Naturalistic Polytheism-** They worshipped natural forces like earth, fire, wind, rain, thunder, etc. by personifying them into deities.
- Mode of worship- **Yajna**
- **Prominent deities-**
 - **Indra (God of thunder)- the most important deity** to whom 250 hymns have been dedicated. Also called **Purandar or breaker of Forts**

- **Agni (God of fire)- Second-most prominent deity.** Acts as an intermediary between God and people. 200 hymns have been dedicated to Agni
- **Varuna-** Upholder of Rita or natural order. 33 hymns dedicated to Varuna
- **Other prominent deities** include- **Prithvi** (earth), **Soma** (God of plants, 9th mandala of Rig Veda dedicated to Soma God), **Rudra, Pushan** (God of Cattles, etc
- **Female deities** - Ushas and Aditi.
- **No temples and no idol worship**

Later Vedic Period (1000-600 BC)

Political Structure

- **Kingdoms like Mahajanapadas were formed** by amalgamating smaller kingdoms.
- **'Janas' evolved to become 'Janapadas';**
- **Sacrifices-** **Rajasuya** (consecration ceremony), **Vajapeya** (chariot race), and **Ashwamedha** (horse sacrifice) - By King to enhance his power.
- **Titles of King-** Rajavisvajanan, Ahilabhuvanapathi, Virat, Bhoja, Ekra, and Samrat
- **King's post became hereditary**
- The **Sabhas and Samitis diminished in importance.**
- The term **"Rashtra"** appeared for the first time
- **Tribal authority became territorial**
- **No regular or standing army.**
- **Older tribes** like Bharatas, Parus, Tritsus and Turvasas **passed into oblivion**, and new tribes like the **Kurus and Panchalas rose into prominence.**
- **Capitals of Kuru 'janapada'**- Hastinapur and Indraprastha.
- **King had absolute power** - master of all subjects.
- **Levied taxes like "bali", "sulka" and "bhaga".**
- **Satapatha Brahmana** - king **infallible** and immune from all punishment.
- **Sabha** of the Rig Vedic Period **discontinued.**
- **King sought the aid and support of the Samiti** on matters like war, peace and fiscal policies.

- **Government - more democratic** in that the king recognised the authority of the leaders of Aryan tribes.

Society

- The **visible 4-fold varna system-** less based on occupation and **more hereditary**

Education

- A **well planned system** of education.
- Students learned **Vedas, Upanishad, grammar, prosody, law, arithmetic and language.**
- **Upanayana or sacred thread ceremony** - initiation to studies- **students sent to Gurukula** for education.

Economic Condition

- Aryans of the later Vedic period **lived in the villages.**
- **Small peasant owners of land replaced by big landlords** who secured possession of entire villages.
- **Agriculture- principal occupation** of the people.
- **Improved method of tilling the land** by deep ploughing, manuring and sowing with better seeds known.
- **Major crops** - rice, barley, wheat, maize and oil seeds were raised.

Culture and Religion

- **New gods** like Siva, Rupa, Vishnu, Brahma etc., **appeared.**
- **Rudra - epithet of Siva** -soon came to be **worshipped as 'Mahadeva'** (great god) and the lord of animate beings (Pasupati).
- **Vishnu - the preserver** - rose into **Prominence.**
 - **Occupied the place of Varuna**, as the most sublime among the celestials.
- **Worship of vasudeva was also started** - regarded as Krishna Vasudev, the incarnation of Vishnu.
- **Semi divinities** like Apsara, Nagas, Gandharbas, Vidyadharas etc. **also came into being.**
- Beginning of the **worship of Durga and Ganesh.**

15

CHAPTER

Jainism and Buddhism

Buddhism

A religion and a philosophy that is largely based on the teachings and life experiences of Gautama Buddha.

Teachings of Buddhism

1. Panchshila (the Five Precepts or the Social code of Conduct)

- Do not resort to theft
- Do not commit violence
- Do not use intoxicants
- Do not lie
- Do not indulge in corruption

2. Arya-Sachchani (the Four Noble Truths)

- Four Noble Truths, Pali Chattari-ariya-saccani, Sanskrit Chatvari-arya-satyani, set forth by the Buddha in his first sermon.
- Accepted by all schools of Buddhism and have been the subject of extensive commentary.

- **First truth- suffering** (Pali: dukkha; Sanskrit: duhkha) - characteristic of existence in the realm of rebirth called **samsara** (literally “wandering”).
 - 5 “aggregates” (skandhas) that constitute mind and body (matter, sensations, perceptions, mental formations, and awareness).
 - **Second truth - origin** (Pali and Sanskrit: samudaya) / cause of suffering - associated with craving
 - **Third truth - cessation of suffering** (Pali and Sanskrit: nirodha), commonly called **nibbana**
 - **Fourth truth - path** (Pali: magga; Sanskrit: marga) to the **cessation of suffering**, described by the Buddha in his first sermon.
 - 4 truths therefore **identify the unsatisfactory nature of existence**, identify its **cause**, **postulate a state** in which **suffering and its causes are absent**, and set forth a **path to that state**.
3. **Ashtangika Marga (the Eight-Fold Paths):**

Right views (sammaditthi)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • First step to moral reformation should be the acquisition of right views or knowledge of truth. • Defined as correct knowledge about 4 noble truths. • helps moral reformation, and leads towards nirvana.
Right resolve (sammasarikappa)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mere knowledge of truths would be useless unless one resolves to reform life in their light. • Moral aspirant is asked to renounce worldliness (all attachment to the world).
Right speech (sammavaca)	Abstention from lying, slander, unkind words and frivolous talk.
Right conduct (sammakammanta)	Consists Panca-Sila , five vows for desisting from killing, stealing, sensuality, lying and intoxication.
Right livelihood (sammaajiva)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • one should earn his livelihood by honest means. • one should not take forbidden means to earn and work in consistency with good determination.
Right effort (sammavayama)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One cannot progress steadily unless he constantly tries to root out old evil thoughts and prevent evil thoughts from arising anew. • One should constantly endeavour to fill the mind with good ideas and retain such ideas in mind.
Right mindfulness (sammasati)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be diligently mindful about the activities of sensations or feelings, perception, ideas, thoughts and mind. • Brings poise, equilibrium and balance to the mind.
Right concentration (sammasamadhi)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Right Effort + Right Mindfulness = Right Concentration. • Mindfulness of breathing method for establishing concentration in the meditator's world. • Leads to focussed mind and enables to attain enlightenment.
Buddha prescribed a middle path/Madhyam marga and asked people to avoid any extremes of happiness or sorrow.	

4. Only when a person is liberated from the cycle of birth and death, can he attain **Nirvana**.

5. Triratna (the Three Jewels of Buddhism)

- Buddha: The Teacher
- Dhamma: The Teachings
- Sangha: The Community

Major Sects	
Hinayana	Mahayana
Literal meaning- the lesser path	Literal meaning- the greater path
Scriptures are in Pali language	Scriptures are in the Sanskrit language
Considers Buddha a human being.	Buddha is God
No idol worship	Worship Idols of Buddha and Bodhisattva
Individual salvation through self-discipline and meditation	Universal salvation through grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisattva
Sub schools- Sarvastivada, Theravadin and Sauntrantrika	Sub schools- Madhyamika and Yogacara
Buddha will never be reborn	Believe that Buddha will be born again
aka " Southern Buddhist religion " as it spread in Srilanka, Burma, and Thailand.	aka " Northern Buddhist Religion " as it was followed in Japan, China, and Korea.
Patronage- Ashoka	Patronage- Kanishka, Harsha, etc.

Buddhist Councils

	1st Council	2nd Council	3rd Council	4th Council
Year	483 BC	383 BC	250 BC	72 AD
Venue	Rajgriha (Saptaparni Cave)	Vaishali	Patliputra	Kashmir (Kundalavana)
President	Mahakasyapa	Sabakami	Mogaliputta Tissa	Vasumitra and his deputy Ashavaghosh
Royal Patron	Ajatsatru	Kalashoka	Ashoka	Kanishka
Outcome	compilation of two Pitakas- Sutta Pitaka (under the leadership of Ananda) and Vinaya Pitaka (under the leadership of Upali)	Permanent split of the Buddhist order into Mahasanghikas and Sthaviravadins	Compilation of Abhidhamma Pitaka	Rise of Mahayana and Hinayana sect compilation of Mahavibhasa sastra- encyclopedia of Buddhist philosophy

Jainism

- Derived from the word 'Jina' or 'Jaina' which means the "Conqueror".
- **24 Tirthankaras** as mentioned in the **Kalpa sutra**.
- **Tirthankara** is the **one who has conquered the world and attained Kevala Jnana**.
- **Rishabhadeva** (born in Ayodhya)- **first Tirthankara**.

- **Parshvanath** (son of King Asavasena and queen Vama of Varanasi) - **23rd Tirthankara**.
 - Parshvanth attained liberation at Mount Sammed Shikharji (Parasnath Hills).
- **Vardhamana Mahavira** - 24th and the last Tirthankara.
- **Jainism is older than Buddhism.**

Teachings of Jainism

1. Pancha Mahavrata (The Five Doctrines)

Non-violence (Ahimsa)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cardinal principle of Jainism. • Also known as cornerstone of Jainism. • Supreme religion (Ahimsa parmo dharma). • According to Jainism, all living beings, irrespective of their size, shape, or different spiritual developments are equal. • No living being has a right to harm, injure, or kill any other living being, including animals, insects, and plants. • Every living being has a right to exist and it is necessary to live with every other living being in perfect harmony and peace. • Not a negative virtue. • Based upon the positive quality of universal love and compassion. • One who is actuated by this ideal cannot be indifferent to the suffering of others.
Non-Stealing (Achaurya or Asteya)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Taking another's property without his consent, or by unjust or immoral methods. • One should not take anything which does not belong to him. • Does not entitle one to take away a thing, which may be lying, unattended or unclaimed.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One should observe this vow very strictly, and should not touch even a worthless thing, which does not belong to him. ● When accepting alms, help, or aid one should not take more than minimum needed. ● To take more than one's need is also considered theft in Jainism.
Truth (Satya)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Anger, greed, fear, and jokes - breeding grounds of untruth. ● Only those who have conquered greed, fear, anger, jealousy, ego, and frivolity can speak the truth. ● One should not only refrain from falsehood, but should always speak the truth, which should be wholesome and pleasant. ● One should remain silent if the truth causes pain, hurt, anger, or death of any living being. ● Truth is to be observed in speech, mind, and deed. ● One should not utter an untruth, ask others to do so, or approve of such activities.
Non-Possession (Aparigraha)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● More worldly wealth a person possesses, the more likely to commit sin to acquire and maintain the possession, and in a long run may become unhappy. ● Worldly wealth creates attachments, which will continuously result in greed, jealousy, selfishness, ego, hatred, violence, etc. ● One who desires spiritual liberation should withdraw from all attachments to pleasing objects of all the five senses. ● Monks observe this vow by giving up attachments to all things such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Material things: wealth, property, grains, house, books, clothes, etc. ○ Relationships: father, mother, spouse, children, friends, enemies, other monks, disciples, etc. ○ Pleasure of Five Senses: touch, taste, smell, sight, and hearing ○ Feelings: pleasure and painful feelings towards any objects ○ Equanimity towards: music and noise, good and bad smells, soft and hard touch, beautiful and dirty sights, etc.
Celibacy (Brahmacharya)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Celibacy -total abstinence from sensual pleasure and the pleasure of all five senses. ● Vow of controlling sensuality is very difficult to observe in its subtle form. ● One may refrain from physical indulgence but may still think of the pleasures of sensualism, which is prohibited in Jainism. ● Monks are required to observe this vow strictly and completely. ● Householders should not have any physical relationship other than their own spouse- that too of limited nature.

2. Triratna (Three gems)

- Right faith – Samyak darshana
- Right knowledge – Samyak jnana
- Right conduct – Samyak charitra

3. Anekantavada

- Encourages **acceptance of relativism** and **pluralism**.
- **Truth and reality are perceived differently from different points of view**, and no single point of view is the complete truth.

4. Syadavada (The theory of conditioned prediction):

All judgments are conditional, holding good only in certain conditions, circumstances, or senses, expressed by the word syāt (Sanskrit: “may be”).

5. **18 activities- sins** (violence, theft, lies, cohabitation, anger, hoarding, pride, Maya, passion, greed, quarrel, malice, false complaint, condemning others, not to control, backbiting, false thinking and double moral standards).

6. Believed in the eternity of the Universe- **universe** composed of **six non-destructible elements- Jeev** (soul), **Ajeev** (physical matter), **Dharma, Adharma, Kal, and Akash**.

7. Three sources of knowledge

- **Pratyaksha pramana** (Perception obtained through the 5 senses)

- **Anumana** (Inference, through which we can obtain true knowledge)

- **Shabda pramana** (Statement of an expert- in this case, tirthankaras)

8. Ultimate aim- attainment of Nirvana

9. The **destiny** of a man is **shaped through karma** and its fruits.

Sects of Jainism

Digambara	Svetambara
Male monks remain naked, while female monks wear unstitched plain white sarees.	Wore white-coloured clothes
Believed women cannot achieve nirvana directly. They have to be reborn as a man	Believed that women are capable of attaining nirvana just like men.
Follow all five vows of Jainism (Satya, Ahimsa, Asteya, Aparigraha, and Brahmacharya)	Followed only four vows (except Brahmacharya)
Major sub-sects- Mula Sangh, Bisapantha, Terapanth, Taranpantha, or Samaiyapantha.	Major Sub-sects- Murtipujak, Sthanakvasi, Terapanthi

Other Heterodox Sects

Philosophy	Founder	Philosophy
Ajivikas	Gosala Maskariputra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Nastika philosophy (no believe in authority of Vedas) ● Propagates a total determinism in the transmigration of souls, or series of rebirths. ● Other groups believed that an individual can better his or her lot in the course of transmigration, the Ajivikas supposedly held that the affairs of the entire universe were ordered by a cosmic force called niyati that determined all events, including an individual's fate, to the last detail ● All change was illusory and everything was eternally immobile.
Uchchedavada	Ajta Kesakambalin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Nothing in Yajna, Haom; ● No such thing as effects of deeds to be enjoyed or suffered by the soul. ● Neither heaven nor hell. ● Man is made up of certain elements of unhappiness in the world. ● Soul cannot escape it. ● Whatever sorrow or unhappiness there was in world, soul cannot escape. ● This sorrow or unhappiness will come to an end automatically. ● Soul must undergo rebirth during 84 lakhs of cycles of Mahakalpas. ● Then only sorrow and unhappiness of soul will end.
Niyativada	Nanda Vachcha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Based on Niyati (Destiny) ● Means everything in the world is pre-determined. ● Denied the theory of Karma- did not believe in human efforts. ● Held that all creatures were helpless against destiny. ● Flourished during the Mauryan Age.
Lokayata	Brihaspati or Charvaka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ancient school of Indian materialist systems. ● Means "that which is found among people in general." ● Did not believe in karma, rebirth or an afterlife. ● Rejected many of the standard religious conceptions such as an afterlife, reincarnation, samsara, karma and religious rites. ● Critical of the Vedas, as well as Buddhist scriptures. ● Inference could not be used to ascertain metaphysical truths.
Akriyavada	Purana Kassappa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A doctrine, considered heretical by Buddhists, that moral acts do not have any consequences. ● Taught by many of the Buddha's contemporaries, but since it is counter to the belief in karma it was denounced by the Buddha. ● Akriya means – inactive, without action of any kind.
Akrittavada/ Satkayavada	Pakudha Kaccayana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No relation between action and its result. ● Whole universe is made of seven components viz; Earth, Fire, Water, Air, Happiness, Sorrow, and life. ● There is no action and also there is none who is doing any action.
Unhchedavada	Ajita Keshakamblin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Also known as Annihilationism (nihilism). ● Doctrine of no after-life in any form whatsoever, the belief that personal identity perishes with the body at death. ● It and its antithesis, eternalism, occur in the Buddhist Nikāyas as the two most common forms of misrepresenting reality.

16

CHAPTER

Mahajanapadas (600-300 BC)

- **4 most powerful Mahajanapadas** - Magadha, Vatsa, Avanti, and Koshala.
- **Magadha- center of political activity** in the North.
- Earliest reference in **Atharva Veda**.
- **Capital- Rajagriha** or Girivraja.
- **Earliest dynasty** - founded by **Brihadratha**
- **Trade and agriculture** were **thriving** in Magadha - **base for military expeditions**.
- **Magadhan army** - 4 arm: infantry, cavalry, chariots and elephants

Mahajanapadas	Capital
Magadha	Rajgriha (old) Patliputra (new)
Gandhara	Taxila
Kamboja	Poonch
Koshala	Shravasti (north) Ayodhya (south)
Mallas	Kushinagar and Pava
Panchala	Ahichchhatra, Kampilya
Matsya	Viratanagara
Chedi/Cheti	Suktimati
Anga	Champa
Avanti	Ujjain and Mahishmati
Vatsa	Kaushambi
Ashmaka	Potali/ Podana
Surasena	Mathura
Vajji	Vaishali
Kashi	Varanasi
Kurus	Indraprastha

Haryanka Dynasty (545-412 BCE)

- **First dynasty that ruled Magadha.**
- **Capital- Rajgir**
- **Founder: Bimbisara.**

Bimbisara (544-492 BCE)

- **Captured Anga** and placed it under the viceroyalty of his son **Ajatsatru at Champa**.
- A **contemporary of Buddha**.
- **first king to have a standing army**.
- Started **matrimonial alliances** to strengthen his power.
- **Wives- Koshala Devi** (daughter of Koshala and sister of Prasenjit), **Chellana** (Lichchhavi princess from Vaishali, mother of Ajatshatru), and **Khema** (daughter of the chief of Madra clan in Punjab).
- Sent his **royal physician Jivaka to Ujjain king Chanda Pradyota** at Avanti king's request to get him treated for jaundice.

Ajatasatru (492-460 BCE)

- **Son of Bimbisara** - killed his father to occupy the Magadha throne.
- Formed a **new capital at Pataligrama**.

- Defeated the **Kosala king Prasenajit** and forced him to marry his daughter to him.
- **Kashi was restored to Magadha**.
- During his reign, **Buddha died**.
- **Patronized the first Buddhist Council** at Rajgriha in 483 BCE.
- Defeated **Lichchhavis of Vaishali**, ending 16-year war.
- Used two weapons- a **catapult (Mahasilakantak)** and a **covered chariot (Rathamuslala)** with a swinging mace.

Shishunaga Dynasty (413 BCE to 345 BCE)

Shishunaga

- Laid the foundation of the Shishunaga dynasty.
- Earlier a **Viceroy/Amatya of Varanasi**.
- Temporary **capital at Vaishali**.
- Defeated the **Pradyota dynasty of Avanti** and made **Avanti** a part of the Magadha empire.

Kalashoka

- Known as **Kakarvarna** in Puranas .
- Shifted capital from **Vaishali to Patliputra**.
- **Patronized the Second Buddhist Council at Vaishali in 383 BCE**.

Nanda Dynasty (345-321 BCE)

- The **first non-Kshatriya dynasty**
- The **most powerful rulers of Magadha**
- **Founder: Mahapadmananda**

Mahapadma Nanda

- Capital - **Patliputra**.
- Claimed to be **ekarat, ahichchhatra, sarvakshatrantaka, or Ugrasena**.
- Captured the whole of North India.
- **Conquered his contemporaries** like Ikshavaku, Panchalas, Kurus, Asmaka, Surasena, and others.
- Maintained an **effective taxation system**.
- The **Hathigumpha inscription of Kharvela** refers to the conquest of Kalinga by Mahapadma Nanda.
- Brought a **statue of Jina** as a trophy from Kalinga.

Dhanananda

- **Last ruler of the Nanda dynasty**.
- During his reign, **Alexander attacked India**.
- Referred to as **Agrammes or Xandrames by Diodorus** (Greek historian).
- According to **Pannini**, Dhana Nanda's **general Baddasala** invented a measuring standard known as **nandopakramani**.
- He was **defeated by Chandragupta Maurya** (with the help of Chanakya), who then laid the foundation of the Maurya dynasty at Magadha.

17

CHAPTER

Mauryan Empire

- Originated in the **kingdom of Magadha** in Indo-Gangetic plains.
- **Capital -Patliputra.**
- **Chandragupta**, with the help of **Kautilya/ Chanakya**, **overthrew Nanda dynasty** and usurped the throne in **321 BC.**
- **Founded - 322 BCE** by Chandragupta Maurya.
- **Royal emblem - Dharmachakra.**
- **Geographical Expansion:**
 - One of the **largest empires of the world.**
 - Stretched to the north along the **natural boundaries of the Himalayas**, to the **east into Assam**, to the **west into Balochistan** and into the **Hindu Kush mountains.**
 - Expanded into India's **central and southern regions** and also included a small portion of **unexplored tribal and forested regions** near Kalinga (modern Odisha).

Ashokan inscriptions

1. **Rock Edicts**- 2 types-

- **Major Rock Edicts**- located at **Kalsi** (Dehradun), **Girnar** (Gujarat), **Yerragudi** (Andhra Pradesh), **Mansehra** (Pakistan), **Sopara** (Bombay), **Dhauri** and **Jadugada** (Orissa), and **Shahbazgarhi** (Pakistan in Kharosthi).

There are **14 Major rock edicts**

Edict	Message
I	Prohibition of animal sacrifice , especially during festive seasons
II	Medical treatment of humans and animals , planting of fruits, medicinal herbs & digging of wells. Pandyas, Satyapuras & Keralaputras of South India mentioned.
III	Generosity to Brahmins. Mentions Yuktas, Pradeshikas, and Rajukas who would go every five years to different parts of his empire to spread Dhamma
IV	Dhammaghosha (sound of Dhamma/righteousness) over Bherighosha (sound of war). Impact of Dhamma on society.
V	About Dhamma Mahamatras. Talks about treating slaves right. A special cadre of officials, Dhamma Gosha were appointed and entrusted with the duty of spreading Dhamma within the kingdom

VI	King's desire to know about his people's conditions. About welfare measures
VII	Tolerance towards religions among all sects and welfare measures for the public in his as well as his neighboring kingdoms
VIII	Ashoka's first visit to Bodh Gaya and the Bodhi tree (his first Dhamma Yatra). Gave importance to Dhamma tours
IX	Condemns popular ceremonies. Stresses on moral conduct
X	Disapproves of individual's desire for fame and glory and stresses on Dhamma
XI	Dhamma is the best policy to follow, which includes respect for elders and concern for slaves and servants
XII	It mentions Mahamatras in charge of women's welfare, Ithijika Mahamatta , and tolerance towards the dhamma of others
XIII	Mentioned victory over Kalinga , Ashoka's Dhamma victory over Greek Kings Antiochus of Syria (Amtiyoko), Ptolemy of Egypt (Turamaye), Magas of Cyrene (Maka), Antigonos of Macedon (Amtikini), Alexander of Epirus (Alikasudaro). Also mentions Pandyas, Cholas, etc. gives a vivid picture of the change of Ashoka from an aggressive and violent warrior to a great lover and preacher of peace.
XIV	Purpose of rock edicts

• **Minor Rock Edicts**-

- **Found on 15 rocks** across the country and in **Afghanistan also.**
- Highlights the personal **history of Ashoka** and a **summary of Dhamma.**
- **Edict at Kandahar** - bilingual, inscribed in Greek and Aramaic.
- **Rock Edict III** - Buddhist clergy.
 - **Ashoka uses his name** only in four of these places namely: **Maski, Brahmagiri (Karnataka), Gujjar (MP) and Nettur (AP)**

Other relevant inscriptions and important edicts:

Edict/ Inscription	About
Allahabad – Kosam/ Queens Edict/	Members of Sangha to refrain from causing division in the ranks.

Kausambi / Schism Edict	Samudragupta's inscription is also on it. Jahangir shifted it to fort at Allahabad.
Kandahar Inscription	Edict written in Greek and Aramaic.
Kalinga Edicts (Bhauri and Jaugada)	Mentions 'All men are my children.'
Sannati Inscription (Karnataka)	14 major rock edicts & 2 separate Kalinga edicts.
Girnar Rock Inscription of Rudradaman (Kathiawar)	Sudarshan lake was constructed by Pushyagupta , a rashtriya of Saurashtra during Chandragupta Maurya's reign.
Minor Rock Edict 1	Ashoka turned towards Buddhism after 2.5 years in power.
Minor Rock Edict 3	Ashoka preaching buddhism.
Inscriptions at Shahbazgarhi and Mansehra.	Kharosthi script

2. Pillar Edicts

Pillar Edicts	Inscription
I.	Ashoka's principle of protecting his people
II.	Defines Dhamma as the minimum of sins, many virtues, compassion, liberty, truthfulness, and purity
III.	Avoiding practices of cruelty, sin, harshness, pride, and anger among his subjects
IV.	Responsibilities of the Rajukas.
V.	List of animals and birds that should not be killed on certain days. mentions animals that should never be killed. Describes the release of 25 prisoners. This pillar edict is also known as Delhi-Topra Pillar Edict
VI.	Dhamma policy of the State.
VII.	Ashoka's work for fulfilling Dhamma. Tolerance for all sects. Also, about Dhamma Mahamattas

3. Cave Inscriptions

Inscription/Edict	Content
Allahabad – Kosam/Queens Edict/Kausambi or Schism Edict	Samudragupta's inscription, Ashoka asks the members of the Sangha to refrain from causing division in the ranks, Jahangir shifted it to the fort at Allahabad
Kalinga Edicts (Bhauri and Jaugada)	Mentions ' All men are my children. '

Sannati Inscription (Karnataka)	Site of all 14 major rock edicts and two separate Kalinga edicts
Rummindei Inscription (Nepal)	Mentions that the village of Lumbini (birthplace of the Buddha) be exempted from Bali and was to pay only one-eighth of the Bhaga
Girnar Rock Inscription of Rudradaman	Mentions the Sudarshan lake constructed by Pushyagupta , a Rashtriya (means provincial governor) of Saurashtra during Chandragupta Maurya's reign
Minor Rock Edict 1	This indicates that Ashoka turned towards Buddhism gradually , after 2.5 years in power
Minor Rock Edict 3	Ashoka greets Sangha , professes his deep faith in the Buddha, dhamma, and Sangha, also recommends six Buddhist texts for monks, nuns, and general laity
Inscriptions at Shahbazgarhi and Mansehra	Written in Kharosthi script
Nigali Sagar inscription (Nepal)	Recorded first enlargement and renovation of Stupa in 254 BC
2 Tarai Pillar Edicts	Ashoka's respects for Buddhism
Bhabru -- Bairat rock edict	Depicted the Ashoka's getting converted to Buddhism
2 Kalinga Rock Edicts	New system of administration after the Kalinga war

Mauryan Dynasty

Chandragupta Maurya (321-297 BCE)

- **Founder of Mauryan dynasty** with the help of Chanakya
- Known as **Palibrotam**- according to Strabo.
- aka **Sandrokottas** by the Greek scholars.
- **Contemporary of Alexander the Great.**
- **Liberated North-western India** from the domination of **Seleucus Nikator**, who ruled over the areas west of river Indus
- **305 BC - treaty with Seleucus Nicator**,
 - Seleucus was **forced to yield Arachosia** (Qandahar area of Afghanistan), **Gedrosia** (south Balochistan), and **Parapomisadai** (area of Gandhara, Heart, Kabul, and Afghanistan) to him in return for 500 elephants
- **Megasthenes - Greek ambassador** at Chandragupta's court
- Led a **policy of expansion** and brought under control almost the whole of present India barring a few places like Kalinga and the extreme South.

- **Adopted Jainism** and along with **Bhadrabahu** went to the hills of **ShravanaBelagola** and committed **Sallekhana** (died of slow starvation).

Bindusara (297-273 BCE)

- **Son of Chandragupta Maurya**
- aka **Amitrochates** (slayer of enemies) by the Greeks
- According to **Mahabhasya**, k/a **Amitraghat** (killer of enemies)
- Conquered the **land between the two seas**- the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal
- **Maintained diplomatic relations with western kings.**
- **Antiochus I**, the **Syrian king** sent an **ambassador, Deimachus**, to the court of Bindusara.
- Appointed his son, **Ashoka as the governor of Ujjain.**
- **Extended** the Mauryan Empire **to Mysore.**
- **Followed** the extreme fatalistic order (religion) 'Ajivika' founded by **Makhali Gosala.**

Ashoka (268-232 BCE)

- After **Bindusara's death** → **four years of war of succession** erupted among his sons, and as per the Buddhist texts, Ashoka acquired the throne after killing his 99 brothers.
- **Succeeded in 269 BC** with the assistance of **Radhagupta.**
- **Other names-** **Buddhashakya** and **Ashoka** (in the Maski edict), **Dharmasoka** (Sarnath inscription), **Devanampiya**, and **Piyadasi** (in Dipavamsa and Mahavamsa).
- As per **Ashokavadana** (Buddhist text), **Subhadra** was the **mother** of Ashoka- she was the **daughter of a Brahmana of Champa.**
- **Kalinga War (261 BC)**

- As per inscriptions, **1,00,000 people were killed**, several lakhs perished, and 1,50,000 were taken, prisoners
- **Ashoka** was **moved by the untold miseries** caused by the war,
- **Renounced conquest by warfare** in favour of cultural conquest.
- **Bherighosha** was replaced with **Dhammaghosha.**
- **Ashoka's Dhamma (Prakrit form of Dharma)**
 - Inspired by the **Buddhist upasaka dhamma**
 - **Not a sectarian faith**
 - Aim - to **preserve social and intellectual order based on tolerance**
 - **Basic attributes** - compassion, charity, truthfulness, and gentleness.
- **Convened 3rd Buddhist Council** in **250 BC** at **Patliputra; Under** the presidency of **Moggaliputta Tissa.**
- Visited **Lumbini in 257 BC** during his **second Dharma-yatra**
- Established **sarais, Dharamshala, and hospitals**
- **Banned animal slaughter** for consumption
- **Name of Ashoka from different sources:**
 - **Maski edicts** - Asoka.
 - **Puranas** - Ashokavardhana
 - **Girnar Inscription** of Rudradaman - Asoka Maurya.
 - **Bhabru Inscription** - Piyadassi Raja Magadhe (Piyadassi, King of Magadha).
 - **Gujarra Rock Edict** - Devanampiya Piyadasi Asokaraja
 - **Kandahar Inscriptions** - Priyadarshi
- **Asoka's Titles:** Devanampiya and Piyadassi
- **Died- 232 BC**

18

CHAPTER

Post-Mauryan Age

Foreign Ruling Dynasties

Indo-Greeks/ Bactrian Greeks

- Ruled over **Bactria** and were **first to cross the Hindukush Mountains**.
- Ruled **over the north-western part of India** between **2nd century - 1st century BC**.
- **Occupied much larger areas** that were **conquered by Alexander**.
- Rule extended as far as **Ayodhya and Patliputra**.
- **Demetrius** (king of Bactria)
 - invaded India in **190 BC**
 - made **Sakala his capital**.
 - Acquired control over **Taxila and Gandhara**.
- **Menander/ Milinda/ Minendra**
 - invaded the **Ganga-Yamuna doab**.
 - Made **Sakala (Sialkot, Punjab) his capital**.
 - **converted to Buddhism by Nagasena/ Nagarjuna**.
 - asked many questions from **Nagasena about Buddhism** and answers are recorded in the form of a book called **Milindapanho** or the Questions of Milinda.
- **Hermaeus**
 - defeated by **Parthians**
 - **ended the Indo-Greek rule in India**.
- **Importance-**
 - **First to issue gold coins in India**
 - Introduced a **large number of coins** (silver, nickel, copper, and gold)
 - Introduced **Hellenistic art** in NWF of India giving rise to Gandhara art in India

Shakas/ Scythians

- **1st century- 4th century AD**
- **Moga/ Moa/ Maues- first Shaka king in India**
 - Established **power in Gandhara**.
 - Inscribed the figure of **Abhishek Lakshmi on his coins**.
 - Shakas introduced a **large number of silver coins**.
- **Shaka Kshtrapas of Western India- 2 imp lines of Kshatraps ruled over Western India**
- 1. **Kshaharatas-**
 - **Bhumaka** (around 78 AD)- coins in Brahmi and Kharosthi script have been discovered from Malwa, Ajmer, and Coastal Gujarat

- **Nahapana** (119-125 AD)- Laid his capital at **Minnagara** (between Ujjain and Broach). He became **mahakshatapa** (subordinate ruler) and a king. His coins have been discovered at Nasik, Rajasthan, Maharashtra, and Ajmer. He was killed by **Satavahana ruler, Gautamiputra Satkarni**.

2. Kardamakas-

- **Chastana** (120 AD)- Founder of this line of **Kshatrapas**.
- **Rudradaman I** (130-150 AD)- ruled over Sindh, Gujarat, Konkan, Narmada Valley, Malwa, and Kathiawar. He got **Sudarshan lake repaired** (mentioned in **Junagadh inscription**). He issued the first ever long inscription in **Sanskrit**. He defeated **Gautamiputra Satkarni** twice and married his daughter to Vasishtha Putra Pulumavi.

Vikram Samvat Era (58 BC)- started when king of Ujjain (Vikramaditya) defeated Shakas.

Scytho-Parthians/ Shaka Pahlavas

- **1st Century BC – 1st Century AD**
- Originally lived in **Iran**.
- **Replaced the Sakas in North-Western India**.
- **Controlled a much smaller area than the Sakas**.
- **Gondaphernes - Famous Parthian king** in whose reign **St. Thomas** is said to have come to **India from Israel** for the **propagation of Christianity**.
- **Restricted themselves to issuing copper coins** and rarely silver money

Kushans or Yeuchis or Tocharians

- **1st - 3rd century AD**
- One of the five tribes of **Yuechi tribe**
- **Nomadic people** from steppes of **north Central Asia**.
- **Settled in the lower Indus basin** and parts of **Gangetic basin**.
- Empire **extended from Oxus to the Ganga**, from **Khorasan in Central Asia to Varanasi in Uttar Pradesh**.
- **Kujula Kadphises - first Yuezhi chief** to lay **foundation of Kushan Empire** in India.
- **Established his supremacy over Kabul, Kandahar, and Afghanistan**.
- **Controlled a large part of Silk Route**, which led to **Propagation of Buddhism in China**.

- Kushans were **completely indianised** in their ways and culture.
- **Highest Purity gold coins** were released with the king figure on it.

Kadphises I/ Kadjul Kadphises (15 AD - 64 AD)

- **Founder** of Kushana empire
- **Follower of Buddhism**
- Adopted two titles- **Sachadharmathida and Dharmathida**
- Issued coins to the south of the Hindukush and **minted coins in copper**

Kadphises II/ Vema Kadphises (64 AD- 78 AD)

- The successor of Kadphises I
- **Follower of Shaivism**
- Proclaimed himself as **Mahishvara**
- Coins bore the **image of Lord Shiva** with his trident and bull
- **Issued a large number of Gold coins**
- Kingdom spread east of the Indus river

Kanishka (78-101 AD)

- Most important Kushana king who ruled over upper India and lower Indus basin.
- Also called the "**Second Ashoka**".
- **Coins found** in west of Indus river, Mathura, Shravasti, Kaushambi, and Varanasi.
- **Made Peshawar/Purushapura his first capital and Mathura his second capital.**
- **Sarnath inscription-** Kanishka's rule is based on the Satrapa system.
- **4th Buddhist Council** held during his reign at **Kundalavana**, where division of Buddhists into Hinayana and Mahayana took place.
- Controlled the popular **Silk Route in Central Asia.**
- His court was adorned by many great scholars-
 - **Ashvaghosh-** wrote **Buddhacharita** and composed **Sundarananda**
 - **Nagarjuna-** **Indian Einstein-** propounded **Madhyamika** school and theory of **Relativity**
 - **Charaka (father of Ayurveda)-** wrote **Charaka Samhita**
 - **Sushruta-** father of surgery
 - **Mathara-** intelligent minister
 - **Agesilaus-** Greek engineer
 - **Vasumitra-** wrote **Mahavibhasa**
 - Kanishka's successors continued to rule north-western India till 230 AD.
- First successor was **Vasishka** (101-105 AD)

Vasudeva

- Last ruler of this dynasty.
- He adopted the title of **Shaono Shao Koshana**
- Coins bear the image of Lord Shiva and his bull Nandi

Indigenous Ruling Dynasties

The Shungas (185-73 BC)

- **Founder-** Pushyamitra Sunga in **185 BC.**
- **Capital-** **Pataliputra and Vidisha** (MP).
- **Information in-** **Ganga Samhita, Mahabhasya** of Patanjali, **Divyavadana, Malavikagnimitram** by Kalidasa, and **Harshacharita** by Banabhatta.

- **Bhagavata religion** became important.
- The fine gateway railing which surrounds the **Sanchi Stupa** (built by Ashoka) was constructed during the Sunga period.
- **Pushyamitra Sunga (185-148 BC)**
 - Killed the last Mauryan ruler, **Brihadrath**, and laid the foundation of the Sunga dynasty.
 - Faced an invasion by **King Kharavela** (founder of Chedi dynasty).
 - **Malavikagnimitram** by **Kalidasa-** the text describes the **conflict between Pushyamitra Sunga and Yajasena** (king of Vidarbha).
 - **Ayodhya stone inscription of king Dhana-** mentions Pushyamitra **performed two Ashvamedha sacrifices** in which Patanjali was the priest.
 - **Divyavadana-** Mentions his **cruelty towards Buddhism.**
 - **Defeated** the Greek ruler **Demetrius.**
 - Laid the foundation of **Bharhut Stupa.**
- **Agnimitra (148-141 BC):** Hero of the text **Malavikagnimitram** by Kalidasa.
- **Bhagavata (114- 82 BC)**
 - The **fifth ruler** of the Sunga dynasty.
 - Mentioned in **Garuda pillar by Heliodorus.**
 - **Contemporary of Antialkidas** of Taxila, the Indo-Greek ruler.
- **Devabhuti (82-72 BC)**
 - **Last ruler** of Sunga dynasty
 - **Murdered** on the instructions of **Vasudeva** (mentioned in **Harshacharita**).

Satavahanas (60 BC- 225 AD)

- **Considered** the same as **Andhras** who ruled for around 300 years.
- Earliest inscriptions - 1st century BC - defeated **Kanvas** & established in Central India.
- Gradually ruled over **Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.**
- In continuous **conflict with the Shakas-** the reason being the control of significant seaports of **Bhrigukachchha (Broach), Kalyan, and Suparaka (sopara).**
- As per the **Nanaghat inscription-** they claimed Brahmana descent and worshipped Krishna and Vasudeva.
- **Adopted the title of Dakshinapatha Pati (Lord of Dakshinapatha).**
- **Gautamiputra Satkarni (106-130 AD)**
 - **23rd ruler** of this dynasty
 - **Defeated the Shakas**
 - Claimed to be **Ekabrahman (only Brahmana).**
 - Destroyed the **Kshaharata lineage** to which Nahapana belonged.
 - Also known as **Khatiya-dapa-manamada** (destroyer of high-handedness and pride of the Kshatriyas)
 - **Occupied Kathiawar and Malwa,** which were under the control of the Shakas.
 - Mentioned in **Nasik inscription.**
 - Adopted the title of **Maharaja and Rajaraja.**

19

CHAPTER

Sangam Age

- 3rd century B.C. - 3rd century A.D
- **Region:** south of river Krishna and Tungabhadra
- **Known For:** Sangam academies (Tamil poems and other literature)

Important Kingdoms of Sangam Age

- **3 kingdoms-** Pandyas, Cholas, and Cheras, known as **Tamizhakam or the Tamil Realm.**
- Mentioned in the **Ashokan inscriptions**

Early Pandyan Kingdom

- **First mentioned by Megasthenes;** the kingdom known for pearls.
 - Pandya (**Panyue a.k.a.Hanyue wang**) mentioned in 3rd century **Chinese History**
- Include districts of **Tirunelveli, Ramnad, and Madurai in Tamil Nadu.**
- **Earliest Kings:** Nediyon, Palyagasalai Mudukudumi Peruvaludhi and Mudathirumaran.

Important Kings:

1. Neduncheliyan I (Aryappadai Kadantha Neduncheliyan)

- Won victories over the Aryan forces
- responsible for the **execution of Kovalan** for which Kannagi burnt Madurai.

2. Neduncheliyan II, (Talaiyalanganattu Cheruvenra Neducheliyan)

- In the **Battle of Talaiyalanganam**, he defeated the combined forces of **Cheras, Cholas, and five other chieftains.**
- Gained control over the **entire Tamil Nadu.**
- Praised by **Nakkirar and Mangudi Maruthanar.**

The Cholas

- **Founder: Elara** - 2nd century BC.
- Territory - region between the **Pennar and the Velar rivers, modern Tanjore and Tiruchirappalli districts.**
- **Chief center of political power** lay at **Uraiyur** (a place famous for the cotton trade).

- **Karikala, the most famous Chola king,** founded **Puhar** (the major seaport) and constructed a 160km embankment along the Kaveri river.
- **Great Battle of Venni** - Karikala **defeated a confederacy of Cheras and Pandyan kings** near Thanjavur.
- Under the reign of **Rajaraja I and Rajendra,** the **empire became powerful** in the fields of army, finance and culture in South Asia and South-east Asia.
- Karikala **maintained a powerful navy** and also conquered Sri Lanka.
- A subordinate ruler of Karikala, **Tondaiman Ilandiraiyanm** ruled from Kanchi. He was a famous poet.
- The **Chola power declined after** the rule of **Karikala** as all his successors were weak.

The Chera kingdom

- The Cheras or the Keralaputras- **north-west to the Pandyas.**
- **Capital center - Vanji** - known center for trade and craft
- **Muziris** (modern-day Cannanore) - Romans set up their two regiments to secure their trade interests and also laid the foundation of a temple there.
- Another Chera ruler, **Nendunjeral Adan** (also called Adiraja) defeated his army on the Malabar coast and also fought with the Cholas.
- **Kettuvan, the younger brother of Nendunjeral Adan** conquered Kongu and extended his territories up to the Eastern and Western Coast.
- **Greatest Chera ruler - Senguttuvan** or the Red Chera or Good Chera.
 - Son of Nendunjeral Adan.
 - **Silappadikaram** - **military conquest against Viyalur.**
- **Last Chera king - Kudakko Hanjeral Irumporai,** won many battles against Pandyas and Cholas.
- Chera power **declined by the 2nd century AD.**

Sangam Literature

- **Three Sangams** were held under the **patronage of Pandyas.**

Sangam	Venue	Chairman	Surviving Works
1st	Madurai	Agastya	Nil
2nd	Kapadapuram	Agastya Tolkappiyar	Tolkappiyam
3rd	Madurai	Nakkirar	Ettutogai, Pattu Pattu (10 idylls)

- **First Sangam** - believed to be attended by gods and legendary sages. **No literary work exist today.**
- **Second Sangam** - held at **Kapadapuram.** Only **Tolkappiyam** survives from this.

- **Third Sangam-** held at **Madurai.**
 - **Few** of these Tamil literary works have **survived** and are a useful source to reconstruct the history of the Sangam period.

20 CHAPTER

Gupta Era

- **Period: 320-550 AD.**
- **Feudatories of Kushanas.**
- **Origin:** Vaishyas .
- **Region:** Ruled over **Madhya Desha.**
- Considered the **“Golden Age” / “Classical Age”.**
- **Founder: Sri Gupta.**
- **Science, Literature, and Art flourished** during the Gupta era.
- **Promoted Hinduism, but supported Buddhist and Jain cultures** as well.
- Much of the **empire in the northwest** was overrun by the **Hunas.**
- **Sri Gupta Founder.**
- Used the title of **“Maharaja”.**

Chandragupta I (319-334 AD)

- **Real founder** of the Gupta dynasty.
- **Started the Gupta Era in 319 AD** which marked the date of his accession.
- **Adopted the title of “Maharajadhiraja”.**
- Empire included parts of **modern Bihar, Uttar Pradesh, Bengal.**
- **Capital- Patliputra.**
- **Married Kumaradevi,** princess of the **Lichchavi** clan of Nepal.
- Mentioned in a Sanskrit play, **Kamudi Mahotsav.**

Samudragupta (335-380 AD)

- Called **Lichchavi-dauhitra** in **Allahabad Pillar Inscription** (Prayag Prashasti) by **Harisena.**
- aka **“Napoleon of India”** by **V.A.Smith** because of his extensive military conquests.
- Established his **dominion over the Java, Sumatra, and Malaya Islands.**
- Led the **political unification** of most of India.
- Was **married to Dattadevi,** according to **Eran’s inscription.**
- Follower of **Lord Vishnu.**
- Two Buddhist scholars lived in his court- **Asanga, and Vasubandhu.**
- aka **Kaviraj** as he was **fond of music.**
- Played **Veena,** as depicted on his coins.
- **Only Gupta ruler** to adopt the **title of Sarva-raj-ochehhetta** (uprooter of all kings).
- **Court language- Sanskrit.**

- Performed **Ashvamedha yajna** to commemorate his conquests.
- As per the Chinese sources, **Meghvarman,** the king of Ceylon, was permitted by Samudragupta to build a monastery at Bodhgaya.
- **Gold Coins:** Seven types of gold coins issued by Samudragupta such as **Standard, Archer, Ashvamedha, Battle axe, Tiger Slayer, King and Queen and Lyrist.**

Chandragupta II (380-412 AD)

- **Ramgupta succeeded after Samudragupta.**
- **Attacked by Sakas** so he made peace with them by **surrendering his wife Dhruvadevi.**
- Infuriated **Chandragupta II** attacked the **Sakas,** murdered Ramgupta, and later married his wife and **occupied the throne.**
- Expanded his empire through- conquests and matrimonial alliances.
- **Made Ujjain his second capital.**
- Had **two wives- Dhruvadevi and Kuberanaga.**
- Got his **daughter Prabhavati** married to **Vataka king** and conquered Malwa, Gujarat.
- aka **Vikramaditya and Simhavikrama.**
- **Empire included-** North-western India to Bengal.
- Issues **gold (Dinara), silver, and copper (Chandra) coins.**
- **Silver coins in memory** of his **victory over the Sakas** in Western India
 - **First Gupta ruler to issue silver coins.**
- **Nine famous scholars resided in his court-**
 - **Kalidasa** wrote **Abhijananashakuntalam, Malavikagnimitram, and Vikramorvasiyam.**
 - **Amarasimha-** A poet and Sanskrit lexicographer, wrote **Amarakosha.**
 - **Varahamihira-** wrote **Panchasiddhantika** (treatise on mathematical astronomy), **Brihat Samhita** (astrology), and **Brihad Jataka** (Vedic astrology).
 - **Dhanvantri-** physician.
 - **Ghatakarapara-** expert of sculpture and architecture.
 - **Shanku-** wrote **Shilpashastra**

- **Kahapanaka**- wrote Jyotishastra (on astrology).
- **Vararuchi**- wrote Prakrit prakasha (grammar of Prakrit language).
- **Vetala Bhatta**- wrote Mantra shastra (on music).
- **Fa-Hein**, the Chinese pilgrim, visited India during his reign and described his adventures in his **travelogue** called 'fo-gu-oji'.

Kumaragupta I (415-455 AD)

- **Son of Chandragupta II.**
- Adopted **title of Shakraditya and Mahendraditya.**
- Worshipper of **Lord Kartikeya**, son of Lord Shiva.
- Laid the **foundation of Nalanda university** in Bihar.
- Performed **Ashvamedha Yajna.**
- Inscriptions belonging to his reign- **Mandasaur, Damodar copper plate inscription, and Bilsad inscription.**
- During his reign, **Hunas invaded India.**

Taxes levied during the Guptas	
Tax Name	Tax Specifics
Kalpita / Upkilta	Sales or purchase tax
Halivakara / Halidanda	Plough tax
Bali	Additional oppressive tax on people
Upaklipta	Additional minor tax
Vata-bhuta	Cess on maintenance of rites performed for winds and spirits
Pratyaya	Toll tax
Bhog	King's share of produce
Bhag Bhagkar	Combination of Bhog and Bhaga
Bhatta	Police tax
Chate	Security tax
Chakrasana	Grazing tax
Hiranya	Tax on special produce taken in tax
Udranga	Water tax
Uparikara	The tax collected from tenants
Taradaya	Tax on navigation
Rajju	Tax on measurement of land
Sarvarishtia	Forced tax
Bedakbhog	Irrigation tax
Uparnik	Tax is taken from border areas
Bhoga	General tribute

- Issued the **largest number of gold coins**, called **Dinars.**
- After the **conquest of Gujarat**, a large number of **silver coins were issued.** This was used for **local exchange.**

Coins issued by Gupta kings	
Kings	Types
Chandragupta I	Kumaradevi type
Samudragupta	Dhanurdhari- archer, Garuda, Axe; Ashvamedha Vyaghra-Anam (tiger-killing); Veenavadan (playing flute)

Chandragupta II	Ashvarohi, Chhatrahari, Chakra-Vikram type, etc
Kumaragupta	Gajarohi, Kadgadhari, Sinhnihanta, Khang-nihanta (Rhinoceros slayer), Kartikeya and Apratighmudra type
Skandagupta	Archer, lion slayer, swordsman, horseman

- **Golden Age of Ancient India** because of unprecedented developments in the field of architecture, art, paintings, sculpture, literature, sciences, etc.
- Places like **Ajanta, Ellora, Mathura, Sarnath;** and **Anuradhapura and Sigiriya** in Sri Lanka bear examples of Gupta art and architecture.
- **Sculpture-**
 - **Mathura school** of art was followed.
 - **Themes - Hinduism, Buddhism, and Jainism.**
 - The colossal figure of **Krishna lifting Govardhan** mountain in **Varanasi.**
 - A **bronze image of Buddha**, which is 7.5 feet high was found at Sultanganj in Bihar
 - **Stone sculpture of Nara Narayana** from **Dashavatara temple.**
- **Paintings-**
 - **Ajanta Cave Paintings-** Nagaraja and Nagini, Mahaparinirvana Buddha.
 - **Mural paintings** depicting the life of the Buddha as told in the Jataka tales.
- **Inscription-**
 - Are incised **mostly on stone**, and **some on metal** [copper plates].
 - **Royal land grant inscriptions** - information about the administrative structures and agrarian relations.
 - **Prasasti of royal grants** - mention details on royal genealogy and political events.
 - **Allahabad stone pillar** inscription of Samudragupta, **the Mehrauli iron pillar** inscription of Chandragupta II and **Junagarh rock inscription** of Skandagupta are important inscriptions.
- **Important Structure-**
 - **Dashavatara temple - Deogarh**
 - **5th century.**
 - **Earliest examples** of the **panchayatana** layout.
 - ✓ **Panchayatana** - a **style of temple architecture** where there are **four small shrines built in four corners**, and the **prime shrine** stands big in the centre.
 - **Depicts the ten incarnations** of Lord Vishnu.
 - **Kankali Devi temple - Tigawa, M.P**
 - **Square building with flat roof** and **shallow pillared porch**

- **Nucleus of a temple**, the sanctum or cella (**garbhagriha**) with a single entrance and a porch (**mandapa**) **appears for the first time** here.
- **Shiva temple - Bhumara, M.P**
 - **5th or 6th century.**
 - Has a **square plan with sanctum and Mandapa.**
 - Temple is called **Ekmukha Linga**
- **Krishna Temple- Bhitargaon**
 - **5th century A.D.**
 - **Oldest remaining terracotta Hindu shrine**
 - **Roof and Shikhara** (spire) paved the way for the **elaborate Nagara style of temple architecture**
- **Vishnu and Varaha temples - Eran**
 - **Hindu god Vishnu** in his **man-boar avatar** as Varaha
 - Shows **Varaha rescuing Bhudevi** (goddess of earth) from a cosmic flood.
 - **Varaha is shown as a hero** posing regally with the goddess as she dangles from his tusk.
- Gupta rulers encouraged higher learning by patronizing centers of higher education at **Nalanda, Takshila, Ujjain, Vikramshila and Vallabhi.**
- **Takshila** specialized in the study of **medicine, Ujjain** emphasised **astronomy** and **Nalanda**, being the most significant centre, **handled all branches of knowledge.**
- **Nalanda University**
 - Situated **near Rajgriha in Bihar**, was **established as a Buddhist monastery** during the reign of **Kumara Gupta I (414-445 A.D).**
 - **Famous Shilbhadra**, who was generally known as the '**Treasure of Right Law**', had once been the head of this university.
- **Takshila University**
 - Situated about **50 km west of Rawalpindi in Pakistan.**

- **Panini**, the **famous Sanskrit grammarian**, **Kautilya** who wrote **Arthashastra** and **Charaka**, the famous **physician of ancient India**, and **Chandragupta Maurya** were the products of this university.

Literature

- **Sanskrit - official language.**
- **Amarakosa by Amarsimha**- thesaurus in Sanskrit.
- **Book on grammar** called **Chandravyakaranam** was composed by **Chandragomia.**
- **Puranas** were rewritten in **Sanskrit by Brahmanas.**
- **Vasubandhu**- composed the **first Buddhist work on logic.**
- A **Jain version of Ramayana** was composed by **Vimala.**
- **Kalidasa**, the great poet and playwright adorned the **court of Chandragupta Vikramaditya** - composed **Abhijnanashaakuntalam, Kumarasambhavam, Malavikagnimitram, Ritusamharam, Meghadootam, Vikramorvashiyam, and Raghuvamsham.**
- **Poet Harisena** - court of **Samudragupta.**
 - Composed the **Allahabad Prashasti (inscription).**
- **Vishnu Sharma of Panchatantra** fame lived **during this era.**
- **Vatsyayana**- **Nyaya Sutra Bhashya.**
 - **First commentary on Gautama's Nyaya Sutras.**
- **Kathasaritsagara** by **Somadeva** is a **collection of Indian legends, and folk-tales.**
- **Kirtarjuniya** - **epic poem by Bharavi** - very famous **story in the Mahabharata** in which Lord Shiva tests the power of Arjuna.
- **Kavyadarshana and Dasakumarcharita** written by **Dandin.**
- **Dasakumarcharita "The Tale of the Ten Princes"** depicts the adventures of 10 princes.

21

CHAPTER

Post-Gupta Age

Ruling Dynasties between 600-750 AD

North India	South India
The Maitrakas	Ikshvakus
The Maukharis	Chalukyas of Badami
The Gaudas	Pallavas of Kanchi
The Hunas	The Kadamba Kingdom
Pushyabhutis of Thanesar	The Kalabhras

Ruling dynasties of North India

Maitrakas

- Western India from the 5th to middle 8th century AD.
- **Region:** Tributary chiefs of the Guptas ruling over Saurashtra (Gujarat).
- **Capital - Vallabhi**- an important center for learning and acted as a port.
- **Dhruvasena II** was the most famous ruler of this dynasty- contemporary of Harsha and was married to his daughter.
- **Dhruvasena II attacked Harsha's assembly at Prayag**- according to Hsuan Tsang.
- **Lost power when Arabs attacked in 712 AD.**

Maukharis

- Ruled over Kannauj.
- Subordinate rulers of the Guptas.
- Used the title of Samanta.
- Mentioned on a clay seal on which the legend Mokhalinam is written in Mauryan Brahmi characters.
- Ruler **Ishanavarmana** offered resistance to the Hunas- mentioned in the Asigarh copper plate inscription in Nimar district (MP)- great patron of education, a brave warrior, and a learned man. His kingdom included **Andhra Pradesh and Orissa.**
- **Grahavarmana**, the last ruler of this dynasty was killed by **Shashanka** (ruler of Gauda) and **Devagupta** (ruler of Malwa).

Abhira dynasty

- Ruled over the western Deccan, where they succeeded the Satavahanas.
- **Founder- Ishwarsena**
- **Gunda inscription** refers to **Abhira Rudrabhuti** as the senapati of the Saka ruler Rudrasimha.
- Patanjali in his Mahabhashya mentioned about **Abhira kings.**
- **Abhiras spoke Apabhramśa**, and seem to have patronized Sanskrit

- **Nasik cave inscription** of Isvarsena is written mostly in Sanskrit
- **Sakasena** was probably the first great Abhira king.
- His inscriptions from the Konkan and coins from **Andhra Pradesh** suggest that he ruled over a large portion of the Satavahana Empire.

Pushyabhuti Dynasty

- **Period: 550-647 AD**
- Also known as **Vardhana dynasty**
- **Founder: Pushyabhuti** who ruled over Thanesar (Haryana).
- **Feudatories of Guptas** and later attained independence after the invasion of the Hunas.
- Became powerful under **Prabhakara Vardhana.**
 - Fought against the Hunas and established control over Gujarat and Malwa
- **Made Kannauj his ally by marrying his daughter Rajyashri to Grahavarmana (Maukharis) of Kannauj.**

Harshavardhana

- Assumed the title of **Siladitya.**
- **Succeeded** his elder brother **Rajavardhana** who was murdered by **Shashanka.**
- **Ascended the throne** on the advice of **Avalokitesvara Bodhisattva** with the title of **Rajputra** in **606 AD** and from this year started the Harsha era.
- **Hsuan Tsang** - came to India during Harsha's rule and wrote **Si-Yu-Ki** and gave details about the **Kannauj assembly** held by him in **643 AD.**
- **Organized religious assemblies** in the 5th year of his reign at **Prayag**
 - Shifted his capital from **Thanesar to Kannauj.**
 - **Patronized Nalanda University.**
 - **Defeated by Pulakeshin II** of the Chalukya dynasty of Badami on banks of **Narmada river.**
 - **Defeated Dhruvasana II**, the Maitraka ruler of Vallabhi.
 - Became a **great patron of Buddhism.**
 - Convened an **assembly at Kannauj** to popularise the **doctrines of Mahayana Buddhism** and to honor **Hsuan Tsang.**
 - **Constructed a golden statue of the Buddha** and worshipped the image.
 - **Nalanda had a huge monastic establishment** during the reign of Harshavardhana.
- **Literature**
 - Court poet **Banabhatta - Harshacharita, Kadambari, and Parvati Parinay.**
 - Also wrote three Sanskrit plays- **Nagananda, Ratnavali, and Priyadarshika.**

Ruling Dynasties of South India

Ikshvakus

- Originally feudatories of the Satavahanas and bore the title Mahatalavara.
- Rose in power after the fall of the Satavahanas in the Eastern part of the peninsula.
- Founder: Vashishti Putra Seri Santamula
- Capital: Vijayapuri
- Built monuments at Nagarjunakonda and Dharanikonda.
- Ikshvaku coins were found in the interior Telangana
- Brahmanical faith flourished.
- Peddabankur (Karimnagar) inscriptions of Virapurushadatta - donation of thousands of ploughs to promote agriculture.
- Rule ended by Pallavas of Kanchi.

Chalukya Dynasty

- Western Chalukyas - Deccan (Badami) from 543 to 757 CE and again from about 972 to about 1189 from Kalyani.
- Eastern Chalukyas - Vengi (in eastern Andhra Pradesh) from 624 to 1070 CE
- Claimed descent from Pulakesin I (reigned 543-566), who established himself at Badami (in Bijapur)
- Early Chalukyas held power in northern Karnataka from the 6th century until 757, and were rivals to the Pallavas.
- Vengi (in East Andhra Pradesh) - centre of Eastern Chalukya dynasty, which ruled there from 624 until the 11th century, surviving the fall of the Early Chalukyas in Badami.
- Late Chalukyas gained ascendancy in the Deccan about 973, centered at Kalyani.
- Pulakesin I
 - Founder of Western Chalukya Dynasty
 - Built a fortress at Vapati in Bijapur district of Karnataka
 - Declared independence by performing a horse sacrifice.
 - Assumed the titles Satyasraya (the asylum of truth) and Ranavikrama (the valorous in war).
- Pulakesin II (609 – 642 CE):
 - Aihole inscription, composed by Ravikiriti, narrates his campaigns and his qualities.
 - Pulakesin II defeated Harshavardhan on the banks of the Narmada river and assumed the title of Dakshina Patheswar.
 - Pulakesin II was the first king in South India to issue gold coins.
 - Also received an embassy from Persia.
 - Killed by the Pallava king, Narasimhavarman.
- Vikramaditya I (644 - 681 CE) :
 - A temporary decline in the fortunes of the Chalukyas after Pulakesin II.
 - Vikramaditya I was able to re-establish the glory by driving out the Pallava forces after 12 years.

- In 668 CE he advanced against Kanchi and defeated the Pallava Mahendravarman II, who later died.
- Pallava king Parameswara Varman defeated Vikramaditya I in 674 CE at Peruvalanallur.
- Art and Architecture
 - New style of Architecture known “the Chalukyan Style” or the “Vesara” style .
 - Eg - Aihole temple, Badami temples, Pattadakal temples.
 - Chalukyan monuments represent two phases.
 - Cave temples represent the first phase.
 - ✓ Found in Ajanta, Ellora and Nasik.
 - ✓ Monolithic and excavated in sloppy hills.
 - ✓ Brahmanical dedication and Buddhist in style and technique.
 - Structural temples represent the second phase.
 - ✓ Durga temple at Aihole
 - ✓ Virupaksha temple

Pallavas of Kanchi

- The local tribe established their authority in the Thondai Nadu or land of creepers.
- Authority extended over both Southern Andhra Pradesh and northern Tamil Nadu.
- Capital - Kanchi (modern day Kanchipuram).
- Founder: Simhavishnu (550-590)
- Political History
 - Simhavishnu adopted the title of Avanisimha.
 - Extended his kingdom southward upto the Kaveri delta.
 - Mahendravarman II (600-630 A.D.) was the most remarkable of the Pallavas monarchs.
 - Narasimhavarman I is credited with repelling the second invasion of Pulakesin II and adopted the title of Vatapikonda
 - Constructed the port of Mahabalipuram and Rathas at Mahabalipuram.
 - Assumed titles like Maharaja, Maharajathi Raja and Dharma Rajathiraja
- Art and Architecture
 - Great age of temple building.
 - Introduced the art of excavating temples from the rock.
 - Dravidian style of temple architecture began with the Pallava rule.
 - Mahendravarman I introduced the rock-cut temples.
 - Narsimhavarman II laid the foundation of the Shore temple at Mahabalipuram.
 - Five rathas, popularly called as the Panchapanadava rathas, signifies five different styles of temple architecture.
 - Rajasimha introduced the structural temples built by using the soft sand rocks.
 - Kailasanatha temple at Kanchi is the greatest architectural masterpiece of the Pallava art.

22

CHAPTER

Early Medieval India (750-1200AD)

Gurjara-Pratiharas (8th - 11th CE)

- Held their sway over **western and northern India**.
- Primarily **pastoralists and fighters**.
- **Capital - Bhinmal**.
- **Founder:** A Brahmana named **Harichandra**.
- **known for their patronage of art, sculpture and temple-building**
- **Rajashekhhar** (Sanskrit poet and dramatist) - **court of Mahipala**, grandson of Bhoja.
- Embellished **Kanauj** with many fine buildings and temples.
- **915 - 918 AD**, the **Rashtrakuta king, Indra III**, again **attacked Kanauj**, devastated the city
- **Al-Masudi** - Pratiharas had **no access to the sea**.
- **Rashtrakuta ruler, Krishna III**, invaded north India in about **963 AD** and **defeated the Pratihara ruler**.

Nagabhata I (c. 730–760 CE)

- Known for **checking the invasion of the Arabs** and **defeating them** under Junaid and Tamin during the Caliphate campaigns in India.
- Exercised control over the areas of **Malwa, Rajputana, and Gujarat**.
- **Defeated by** the Rashtrakuta king, **Dhruva**.

Bhoja I / Mihir Bhoja (c.836–885 CE)

- **Long reign** of over 46 years - **most successful and popular ruler**.
- **Feudatories- Chedis and the Guhilas**.
- **Defeated the Palas and the Rashtrakutas**.
- **Capital- Kannauj**, which was also called **Mahodaya**.
- **Barah copper plate inscription** - mention of a **military camp** i.e., **skandhavara at Mahodaya**.
- Called **King Baura** by the Arab traveller, **Al-Masudi**.
- **Expansion checked by Sankarvarmen of Kashmir and Rashtrakuta Krishna II and Devapala**
- **Devotee of Vishnu** and adopted the title of **'Adivaraha.'**

Mahendrapala (c. 885–910 CE)

- **Successor of Bhoja**
- **Empire reached its peak** of prosperity and power.
- **Empire:** west to the border of Sindh, east to Bengal, north to the Himalayas, and south past the Narmada.
- **Battle with the king of Kashmir** but had to **yield to him** some of the **territories in Punjab won by Bhoja**.
- Took the **title Maharajadhiraja of Aryavarta** (Great King of Kings of Northern India).

- **Court** adorned by **Rajashekhha- eminent Sanskrit poet**, dramatist and critic who **wrote** Karpuramanjari, Kavya Mimansa, Vidhasalabhanjika, Bhrinjika, Balaramayana, Prapanch Pandav and Balabharata.

Art & Architecture

- **Great patrons of arts, architecture and literature**
- **Teli-ka-Mandir in Gwalior fort** is the **oldest surviving large-scale Pratihara work**.
- Female figure named **Sursundari** exhibited in **Gwalior Museum** is one of the most charming sculptures
- **Nataraj/Natesha murti**, in "chatura pose with jatamakuta and trinetra" and almost four feet tall, is a **rare depiction of Lord Shiva** in the **Pratihara style**.
- Temples belonging to **Nagara Style of temple Architecture**.
- **Started the Maru- Gujara style of architecture**. Eg- Bateshwar Hindu temples complex, Baroli temple complex.
- **Greatest development - Khajuraho**, Madhya Pradesh

Palas of Bengal (8th-12th century)

- Ruled in **Bihar and Bengal**
- **Founder: Gopala-** a local chieftain who rose to power in the **mid-8th century**.
- Supporters of **Buddhism-** Mahayana and Tantric schools.
- **Built** temples and monasteries, including the **Somapura Mahavihara**, and **patronised** the great universities of **Nalanda and Vikramashila**.
- **Abbasid coinage** found in Pala archaeological sites- **depicting trade contacts**.
- Also known as **"Ruhimi or Ruhma Dharma"** by the Arab merchant **Sulaiman**.
- **Pala records** are **full of eulogistic verses portraying Dharmapala and Devapala** as great conquerors.
- **Astute diplomats and military conquerors**.
- Known for their **elephant cavalry**.
- **Relations with the Srivijaya Empire, the Tibetan Empire and the Arab Abbasid Caliphate**.
- **Navy** performed both **mercantile and defensive roles** in the Bay of Bengal.

Gopala (around c.750 CE)

- **Khalimpur copper plate** - Gopala, to **rescue the people from Matsya-Nyaya** (a period of **anarchy**), **founded the Pala dynasty** when he was elected the king by notable men of the realm.
- An **ardent Buddhist**.
- **Taranatha- Gopala built** the famous **monastery at Odantapuri**.

Dharmapala (c.770–810 CE)

- **Most important event: Tripartite struggle** for **Madhyadesha** of northern India- **Palas** v/s **Rashtrakutas** of Deccan v/s **Gurjara-Pratiharas** of Malava and Rajasthan.
- Founded the **Vikramshila monastery** near Bhagalpur in Bihar
- Founded the **Somapuri monastery (near Paharpur, Bihar)**.
- **Santarakshita**- 8th-century Buddhist scholar (abbot of Nalanda), **belonged to his reign**.
- **Founded** the philosophical school **Yogacara-Svatantrika-Madhyamika**, which united the **Madhyamaka tradition of Nagarjuna**, the **Yogacara tradition of Asanga** and the **logical and epistemological thought of Dharmakirti**.

Devapala (c. 810–850 CE)

- Covered **Pragyoytishpur/Kamarupa** (Assam), parts of Orissa (**Utkala**) and **modern Nepal**.
- **Badal Pillar Inscription** - paramount lord of northern India.
- **Conquered the Utkalas, Huns and the Gurjaras**.
- **Conquered the Dravidians** in South India and the **Pandya king Srimara Srivallabha**.
- **Court Poet: Vajradatta**, Buddhist scholar who wrote **Lokesvarasataka**.

Art and Architecture

- **Odantapuri Vihara** - by **Gopala** -excellent specimen of the architectural skill of the time
- **Somapura mahavihara at Paharpur** - **Dharmapala** is one of the largest Buddhist viharas in the Indian subcontinent.
- **Various maha viharas, Stupas, chaityas, temples and forts** were constructed.
- **Deity figures became more rigid in posture**, often **heavily loaded with jewellery**; have multiple arms, a convention allowing them to hold many attributes and display mudras.
- **Vikramshila university**
 - Founded by Pala king **Dharmapala**
 - **Destroyed** by **Bakhtiyar Khilji**
 - **Buddhist textbooks** belonging to both branches of Buddhism- **Mahayanism and Hinyanism** were taught.

The Rashtrakutas (8th - 10th century CE)

- **Founder: Dantidurga**
- **Capital: Manyakhet** or **Malkhed** near **modern Sholapur**.
- **Source:** writings of **Al-Masudi** and **Ibn Khordadbeh** (10th century CE).

Dantidurga (c. 733–756 CE)

- **Feudatory** of the Chalukya king, **Kirtivarman II**.
- His **name** (meaning he whose elephant is his fortress) **signifies his military feats and accomplishments**.
- **Helped** Pallava King **Nandivarmana** to **regain Kanchi** from the **Chalukyas**.
- **Defeated the Gurjaras of Malwa** and the **rulers of Kalinga, Kosala** and **Srisailam**.

Krishna I (c.756–774 CE)

- **Extended the empire** and **brought** major portions of **Karnataka** and **Konkan** under his control.
- Magnificent **rock-cut Monolithic Kailashnath Temple of Lord Shiva at Ellora** (near Aurangabad, Maharashtra) was built during his reign.

Amoghavarsha I (c.814–878 CE)

- **Built** a new capital city, **Manyakhet (modern Malkhed)**.
- **a peace-loving ruler**.
- Preferred **friendly relations** with his feudatories over war and **used marriages** and other amiable gestures **to secure their loyalty**.
- **Scientists & artists prospered** under his rule and his kingdom was adorned with beautiful and intricate artworks and architecture all around.
- Equally **patronised Buddhism, Jainism, and Hinduism & Jainism**.
- **Patron of literature** and accomplished **scholar in Kannada and Sanskrit** himself.
 - wrote the **Kavirajamarga** – the **earliest Kannada work** on poetics
 - **Prashnottara Ratnamalika in Sanskrit**, later translated into the Tibetan language.
- **Compared to emperor Ashoka**; also known as **“Ashoka of the South”**,
- Also compared to **Gupta king Vikramaditya** in giving patronage to men of letters.

Art & Architecture

- **Established** an aesthetic architectural form now known as the **Karnata Dravida style**.
- **Ellora, Ajantha and Elephanta** - **centres of their art**.
- **Kailasa Temple of Ellora** (a rock-cut structure) is the **epitome of Rashtrakuta architectural achievement**.
- Many of the **caves of Ellora and Elephanta** have been **created and renovated under Rashtrakutas**.
- **UNESCO World Heritage Site** - temples at **Pattadakal** under **Rashtrakutas**.
- **Jain Narayana Temple** - solely created by the **Rashtrakuta Dynasty**.
- The **Pallava (Dravidian) style of architecture** was adopted by the **Rashtrakutas**.

23

CHAPTER

Rajput Kingdoms

- Name was assumed by royal families that claimed Kshatriya status.
- Linked their lineage with the Suryavamshi (solar) or the Candravamshi (lunar), or Agnikula (fire lineage).
- 4 major Rajput dynasties were Pratihara, Paramara, Chauhan, and Chalukya.
- Apart from them, there were about 36 Rajput clans.
 - Including Gahadavalas of Kannauj, the Tomaras of Delhi, the Solankis, the Chalukyas of Gujarat, and so on.

Gahadavalas of Kannauj

- Ruled present-day Indian states of Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.
- Capital: Varanasi.
- Controlled Kanyakubja (modern Kannauj).
- Founder: Chandradeva.
- Chandrawati inscriptions- Gahadavalas occupied Kanyakubja.
- Kingdom reached its zenith under Govindachandra.
- Jayachandra faced a Ghurid invasion led by Qutb al-Din Aibak.
 - Former defeated and killed at the Battle of Chandawar in 1194 CE.
- Hasan Nizami - Ghurids sacked Varanasi and destroyed many temples.
- Gahadavala inscriptions - mention a tax called Turushka-danda.

The Chahamanas (or Chauhans)

- Known as Chauhans of Sambhar.
- Ruled Rajasthan and its neighbouring areas.
- Between 7th and 11th centuries CE.
- Originally had its capital at Shakambari.
- Later, rulers moved the capital to Ajmer, therefore Also known as Chahamanas (Chauhans) of Ajmer.
- Feudatories of the Pratiharas

Vigraha Raja IV (c. 1150–1164 CE)

- Also known as Visaldev, who captured Delhi from the Tomars in c.1151 CE but allowed them to rule as feudatories.
- kingdom extended in the north up to the Siwalik Hills and in the south up to Udaipur.
- Moved the capital from Shakambari (Sambhar) to Ajmer.
- The structure, later converted into the Adhai Din Ka Jhopra mosque, was constructed during his reign.

Prithviraj III (c.1177–1192 CE)

- Most famous of all Chauhans, is popularly known as Prithviraj Chauhan/ Rai Pithora in the folk legends.
- Ascended the throne at the young age of 11, after the death of his father, Someshvara.

- Led an expedition in Bundelkhand against the Chandella ruler, and it was in this struggle the famous Chandella warriors Alha and Udal lost their lives.
- Defeated Muhammad Ghori in the First Battle of Tarain in c.1191 CE.
- Two great poems, Prithviraj Raso and Prithviraj Vijaya, were written by his court poets Chandbardai and Jayanaka, respectively.

Hari-Raja (c. 1193–1194 CE)

- Muhammad Ghori followed up his victory by conquering Ajmer and Delhi and placed the young son of Prithviraj, Govinda, as his vassal in Ajmer.
- Govinda was de-throned and banished by Prithviraj's brother Hari-raj for accepting Muslim suzerainty.
- Govinda then established the Chahamanas branch of Ranastambhapura (Ranthambore).
- Hari-raj regained Ajmer and followed a policy of hostility against the conquerors of Delhi.
- Qutabuddin Aibak invaded Ajmer, overthrew Hari-raj and took the principality.
- Chauhan dynasty retired to Ranthambore and ruled there in diminishing glory.
- But in c.1301 CE, Ala-ud-din Khilji captured Ranthambore.

Solanki Rajputs

- Chalukya family of Gujarat.
- Extended parts of Gujarat and Kathiawar
- Ruled between c.950 and 1300 CE.
- Had many branches, though three branches were the most prominent.
 - Oldest branch- from Central India's Mattamayura; earliest rulers were Simhavarmans, Sadhanva, and Avaniavarmans.
 - Second branch - founded by Barappa in Lata (South Gujarat); most prominent city of their kingdom was Bhrigukachchha (Broach).
 - Third branch - founded by Mularaja I, whose capital was at Anahilapataka (or Anahilavada, which is identical to modern Patan, Gujarat).
- Bhima I (c. 1022 – 1064 CE) built the Sun temple of Modhera.
 - Wife Udaymati built the Rani-ki vav (Queen's stepwell) (UNESCO's World Heritage Site)
- 5 famous Dilwara temples, one Vimal Vasahi temple dedicated to Jain lord Rishabha was built in c.1031 CE by Vimalsha, a minister of Bhima I.

- **Jayasimha Siddharaja** (c. 1092 – 1142 CE) **enlarged the kingdom** to become an empire.
- **Bhima II** (c. 1177–1240 CE) successfully **repelled the incursions of Muhammad Ghori** (at the **battle of Kayadara**), who had the ambition of repeating the act performed by Mahmud of Ghazni.
- In c.1195–97 CE, an **army led by Aibak**, Ghori's deputy, **invaded again**, but **Bhima II defeated Aibak** and **adorned** himself as **Abhinav Siddharaj**.
- After c.1243 CE, the **Solankis lost control of Gujarat** to their feudatories, the **Hindu Vaghela dynasty of Dholka**, who established a short-lived (76 years) but powerful principality.
- After c.1292 CE, **Vaghelas became tributaries of Seuna** (Yadava) dynasty of Devagiri in Deccan.
- The dynasty **ended when Khilji conquered Gujarat in c.1297 CE**.

The Tomars

- Period: **9th-12th century**.
- Ruled parts of **Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan and Haryana**
- **Capital - Dhillika** (Delhi)
- **Feudatory** of the **Pratiharas**.
- **Medieval bardic literature** names the dynasty as "Tuar".
- **Palam Baoli (step well) inscription** records that the **land of Hariyanaka** was first enjoyed by the **Tomaras** → **Chauhans** → **Shakas** (Delhi Sultans).
- **Iron pillar at Mehrauli inscription** - refers to **Anangapala Tomara**, who established Delhi.
 - His **coins** feature the **horseman-and-bull** figure and bear the title "**Shri Samanta-deva**".
- **Construction of the earliest surviving waterworks in the Delhi area**.
- **Anangapala II** founded the **citadel of Lal Kot** and **built a tank** known as the **Anang Tal**.
- **Suraj Kund reservoir** was **commissioned by** a Tomara king named **Surajpala**.

The Paramaras of Malwa

- Based in the **Mount Abu area of Rajasthan**.
- Ruled **Malwa** and surrounding areas in **west-central India**.
- **Harsola copper plates** by Paramara king, **Siyaka II** - establish that **Paramaras** were **feudatories** of the **Rashtrakutas of Manyakheta**.
- **Rose declined several times** due to their **struggles with the Chalukyas of Gujarat**, the Chalukyas of **Kalyani**, the **Kalachuris of Tripuri**, and other neighbouring kingdoms.
- **Later, Paramaras** moved their **capital to Mandapa-Durga** after **Dhara was sacked** multiple times by their enemies.
- well-known for their **patronage to poets and scholars**.
- **Bhoja** was himself a **renowned scholar**.
- **Kings** were **Shaivites** and built several Shiva temples.

- **Vairasimha II and Siyaka II** revived the power.

Munja (c. 972–990 CE)

- Also known as **Utpala** or **Vakpatiraja II**.
- **Extended empire** and achieved military successes.
- Adopted titles of **Amoghavarsha/ Prithvivallabha/ Srivallabha**.

Bhoja (c.1010–1055 CE)

- Adopted title of **Parameshvara-Paramabhattacharaka**.
- **After sacking Somnath, Mahmud of Ghazni changed his route to avoid confrontation** with a Hindu king **Param Dev (Bhoja)**.
- **Supported Anandapala's fight against Ghaznavids**.
- A **polymath**.
- **Patronised** the arts, literature, and sciences.
- Established the **Bhoj Shala**.
- Founded the city of **Bhojpur**.
- Credited with **building Bhojeshwar temple** and three dams in that area.
- Often **compared to the fabled Vikramaditya**.

The Chandellas

- Trace their **descent to a mythical ancestor** named **Chandratreya, born of the moon**.
- Ruled as **feudatories** of the **Gurjara-Pratiharas of Kannauj**.

- **Founder: Nannuka**

- **Capital : Mohoba, Khajuraho**

Yashovarman (c. 925–950 CE)

- **Khajuraho inscription**:
 - Had several **military successes** against **Gaudas, Khasas, Chedis, Kosalas** etc.
 - Beginning of the famous **Chandella style art** and architecture.
 - Commissioned **Lakshmana Temple** at **Khajuraho**.

Dhanga-Deva (c. 950–999 CE)

- Took the **title of Maharajadhiraja**.
- A **Khajuraho inscription** - claims that the rulers of **Kosala, Kratha, Kuntala, and Simhala** humbled to the commands of **Dhanga's officers**.
- Commissioned a magnificent **Vishvanatha Temple** at **Khajuraho**.

Vidyadhara (c.1003–1035 CE)

- **Killed Pratihara, king of Kannauj**, for fleeing his capital instead of fighting Mahmud of Ghazni.
- **Mahmud of Ghazni defeated Vidyadhara**, making him pay tribute.
- Commissioned the **Kandariya Mahadeva Temple**.

Vijayapala (c. 1035–1050 CE)

- Chandellas dynasty **weakened due to the invasion of Ghaznavids**.
- **Faced raids by the northern Muslim dynasties**, including the **Ghaznavids** and the **Ghurids**.

24

CHAPTER

Arab Invasion

- Expansion policy of the **Umayyad Caliphate** started as early as the 8th century in India.
- Arabs invaded India from Sindh under **Muhammad bin Qasim**.
- **Battle near Brahmanabad**: Muhammad bin Qasim defeated **Dahir** (ruler of Sindh).
- **Chach Nama**: Arab conquest of Sindh.

Muhammad bin Qasim

- Sent by the **Caliph Walid I** to conquer India.
- Entered **Sindh**, reached **Debal**, an ancient port city (near modern Karachi); defeated the nephew of **Raja Dahir**, in-charge of the port city.
- City was **plundered**, enormous wealth was looted and people killed who refused to accept Islam.
- **End of Hindu Kingdom of Sindh**.
- **Conquered Multan** and sent **Abu Hakim** to win **Kannauj**.
- **Died** because of the shrewd manipulation of **Raja Dahir's daughter Suryadevi**.

Mahmud of Ghazni

- **Mahmud ascended** the throne at Ghazni.
- **First ruler** to get the Title of "**Sultan**".
- Considered a **hero of Islam**.
- **Closely associated with the renaissance of the Iranian spirit**.
- A **high watermark in the Iranian renaissance** was reached with **Firdausi's Shah Namah**.
- **Firdausi - poet laureate** at the court of Mahmud.
- **Persian language** and culture became the language and culture of the **Ghaznavid empire**.
- **Claimed descent** from the legendary Iranian king, **Afrasiyab**.
- **Plunderer and a destroyer of temples** in India.
- **Made 17 raids** into India between **1000-1027 CE**.
- Known as **but-shikan** or **destroyer of images**.
- **Conducted raids** against the **Hindushahi rulers** who ruled **Peshawar** and **Punjab**.
- **Jayapala allied against Mahmud** had to suffer a defeat, and the coalition collapsed
- **Battle near Peshawar** in 1001CE (**Battle of Waihind**), **Jayapala** was again **defeated**.
 - **Died** and was **succeeded by Anandpala**.
- In the **Battle near Indus** in 1009CE (**Second Battle of Waihind**), **Anandpala** was **defeated**, and **Mahmud devastated** his capital, **Nandana**.
- **Mahmud overran Nagarkot**.
- In **1015**, **Mahmud advanced upto Lahore**, plundered it, and **ousted Anandpal**.

- In **1025**, he **attacked Somanath**.
 - Preceded through **Multan**, **defeated Bhimadeva of Anhilwad** and **reached Somanath Temple**.
- **Ghaznavid territories extended** up to river **Jhelum**.
- **Annexed Punjab** to have easy access to India.

Muhammad Ghori

- **17 invasions of India by Ghazni** exposed the **military weakness** of Indian rulers.
- After **Ghazni**, **Mohammad Ghori** also made an **invasion of India**
- In **1173**, **Shahabuddin, Muhammad** (1173-1206) **ascended the throne at Ghazni**.
- In **1178**, he **attempted** to penetrate **Gujarat**.
- Gujarat ruler **Solanki Bhima II** **defeated him** at the **battle of Kayadara** near **Mount Abu**.
- By **1190**, **Muhammad** had **conquered Peshawar, Lahore and Sialkot** and was poised for a thrust towards **Delhi** and the **Gangetic doab**.

First Battle of Tarain (1191 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Possession of Punjab • Attempt to advance into Gangetic Doab - direct conflict with the Rajput ruler Prithviraj Chauhan. • Immediate cause - conflict over capturing Tabahinda. • Prithviraj Chauhan defeated Mohammad Ghori and captured Tabahinda or Bhatinda.
Second Battle of Tarain (1192 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mohammad Ghori defeated Prithviraj Chauhan. • Delhi and Ajmer came under complete Turkish control.
Battle of Chandwar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mohammad Ghori defeated Jaichandra, the ruler of Kanauj. • Laid foundation of Turkish rule in Northern India.

- **Ghori returned to Ghazni** and India were left in the hands of his trusted slave **Qutub-ud-din-Aibak**.
- **Mohammad Baktiyar Khilji**, another general of **Mohammad Ghori**, **captured Bihar** in 1197 CE and **Bengal** in 1202 CE.
- In **1202-04**, **Khilji captured Nabadwip**, the capital of **Lakshman Sen**.
- **Khilji destroyed** the Universities of **Nalanda** and **Vikramshila** and became the **viceroy of Bengal and Bihar**.
- **Muhammad Ghori** undertook many **campaigns against the Khokhars** in Punjab.
- **Ramlal Khokhar** killed **Ghori** in the village of **Dhamiak**, located in the **Salt Range** in **March 1206**.

25

CHAPTER

Delhi Sultanate

- Qutubuddin Aibak established a Turkish State in India.
- Acknowledged by other Turkish officers as Sultan of India, and this ultimately resulted in the foundation of Delhi Sultanate.
- Rulers referred to as Sultans were of Turkish and Afghan origin.
- Extended rule over North India (i.e., Malwa and Gujarat), Deccan and South India.

Slave/Ilbari Dynasty (1206-1290)

- Also known as the Mamluk dynasty.
- Arabic - Mamluk means 'owned' and is used - to distinguish the important Turkish slaves (for military service) from the lower slaves (used as domestic labourers or artisans).
- 3 dynasties were established during this period.
 1. Qutbi dynasty (c. 1206-1211 CE) founded by Qutubuddin Aibak
 2. First Ilbari dynasty (c. 1211-1266 CE) was founded by Iltutmish
 3. Second Ilbari dynasty (c.1266-1290 CE) was founded by Balban.

Qutubuddin Aibak

- Founder of the Slave dynasty.
- Assumed the title of Sultan and made Lahore his capital.
- K/a Lakh Baksh or giver of lakhs for liberal donations.
- Built the first mosque in India-Quwwat-ul-Islam in Delhi.
- Started construction of Qutub Minar in memory of Sufi saint, Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki.
- Could not complete it due to his sudden death.
- Fell down from horseback while playing polo or Chaugan and died in 1210 CE.

Iltutmish

- Became the Sultan and took the name Shamsuddin .
- Ali Mardan Khan declared himself the king of Bengal and Bihar.
- Qubacha declared himself independent ruler of Multan, seized Lahore and parts of Punjab.
- Khwarizmi empire - most powerful state in Central Asia at that time, and its eastern frontier now extended up to the Indus.

- Destroyed by Mongols in 1218.
- Iltutmish ousted Qubacha from Multan and Uchch.
- In Bengal and Bihar, Sultan Ghiyasuddin took the title of Iwaz and had assumed independence.
- In 1226-27, Iwaz was defeated and killed in battle with Iltutmish's son near Lakhnauti.
- Bengal and Bihar passed under the suzerainty of Delhi once again.
- Iltutmish sent expeditions against Ranthambore and Jalore to reassert his suzerainty.
- Attacked on Nagda, the capital of Mewar (about 22 km from Udaipur).
- Organised turkan-i-chahalgani.
- The Abbasid Caliph of Baghdad recognised authority.
- Received the Mansur by the Caliph of Baghdad and became the legal sovereign ruler of India.
- Issued purely Arabic coinage of silver tanka and copper coin jital.
- Completed the construction of the Qutub Minar.

Raziya Sultana

- Iltutmish nominated his daughter, Raziya, to the throne.
- Marked beginning of a struggle for power between monarchy and Turkish chiefs, the forty or chahalgani.
- Discarded the female apparel and started holding court with her face unveiled.
- Iltutmish's wazir, Nizam-ul-Mulk Junaidi, opposed her and supported Rajputs.
- Sent an expedition against Ranthambore to control the Rajputs..
- Turkish nobles accused her of violating feminine modesty, and of being too friendly to an Abyssinian noble, Yaqut Khan.
- Yaqut Khan was appointed Superintendent of the Royal Stable.
- Personally led an expedition against Lahore, and compelled the governor to submit.
- On the way to Sirhind, an internal rebellion broke out in which Yaqut Khan was killed, and Raziya imprisoned at Tabarhinda.
- Won over her captor, Altunia, and after marrying him made a renewed attempt on Delhi.
- Fought valiantly, but was defeated and killed in a forest by bandits.

- **First and only female Muslim ruler of medieval India** and ruled from 1236-1239 CE.
- **After Razia, struggle for supremacy** broke out between the nobles and the sultans.
- **Bahram Shah and Alauddin Mahsud Shah** ruled for a very brief period(1240-1246 CE) .

Balban

- aka **Ulugh Khan**, gradually abrogated all power to himself.
- Finally **ascended** the throne in **1265**.
- Methods were **often harsh and undesirable**.
- Declared himself the **descendant** of the legendary Iranian king **Afrasiyab**.
- **Refused to entertain important** government posts for anyone **who did not belong to a noble family**.
- Virtually **excluded** the **Indian Muslims** from all positions of **power and authority**.
- **Not prepared to share power with anyone**, not even with family members.
- **Not prepared to hear any criticism** even from his own supporters.
- **Broke** the power of the **chahalgani**, i.e., the **Turkish nobles**.
- Administered **justice** with **extreme impartiality**.
- Underlined the theory that the **sultan was the shadow of the almighty Zil-i-Allah**, so he assumed the title of **Zil-i-illahi**
- Adopted a **policy of blood and iron**.
- **Insisted** on the ceremony of **sijda and paibos**.
- **Did not allow any noble to assume great power**.
- Formulated the **theory of kingship**.
- Adopted a **policy of consolidation rather than expansion**.

Khilji Dynasty (1290-1320)

- **Founder: Jalal-ud-din Khilji**.
- **Ruled** large parts of South Asia between **1290 and 1320**.
- **Court language: Persian**.
- **Followed Arabic** and some northern-Indian dialects.
- **Ibn Batuta** - Khiljis encouraged conversion to Islam.

Jalaluddin Khilji

- **Ruled only for a brief period of six years(1290-1296 CE)**.
- **Before ascending** the throne of Delhi he was k/a **Malik Firuz**.
- **Tried to mitigate** some of the **harsh aspects** of **Balban's** rule.
- **Tried to gain** the goodwill of the nobility by a **policy of tolerance** and **avoided harsh punishments**.
- **Succeeded by** his ambitious nephew and son-in-law **Alauddin Khalji**.

Alauddin Khalji (1296-1316)

- Ascended throne by **murdering** his uncle and father-in-law, **Jalaluddin Khalji**.
- As the **governor of Awadh**, accumulated vast treasure by **invading Deogir** in the Deccan.
- **Won over most of the nobles** and **soldiers** to his side by a **lavish use of gold**.
- **Adopted** methods of utmost **severity and ruthlessness**.
- Adopted the **title** of **Sikander-i-Azam** and gave **Amir Khusrau** the title of **Tuti-i-Hind (Parrot of India)**.
- **Severe punishments** were given to the **rebellious members** of his own family.
- Resorted to a **Wholesale massacre of the Mongols**, who settled down in Delhi
- Gave **harsh punishments** even to the **wives and children of the rebels**.

Military conquest of Alauddin Khalji

- Led **expedition** against **Gujarat, Rajputana and Deccan**.
- **Attracted by the wealth of Gujarat**, undertook expedition to Gujarat in 1299.
- Imperial army was **jointly commanded by Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan**.
- **Gujarat was plundered** and the **capital Anhilwara was sacked**.
- The **administrative control** of Gujarat was entrusted to **Alp Khan as governor**.
- **After Gujarat, Alauddin** turned his attention to **Rajasthan**.
- **First was Ranthambore** ruled by the Chauhan successors of Prithviraj.
 - **Amir Khusrau**, has given a **graphic description of the fort and its grandeur**.
 - The **fearful jauhar ceremony** took place.
 - **First description** of the **jauhar** in Persian.
 - **Mongols, too, fought with the Rajputs**.
- **Alauddin turned towards Chittor** which was one of the most powerful states in Rajasthan.
 - Also **dominated the route from Ajmer to Malwa**.
 - **Alauddin was closely invested in Chittor**.
 - After a **valiant resistance Alauddin stormed the fort (1303)**.
- **1306-07, Alauddin planned two campaigns**.
 - **First was** against **Rai Karan**.
 - Second expedition against **Rai Ramachandra, the ruler of Deogir, had an alliance with Rai Karan**.

Administrative Reforms of Alauddin Khalji

- **Considered himself a representative of God or "Shadow of God"**.

- **Restricted matrimonial relations** among nobles and officers as well as **prohibited secret meetings and parties etc.**
- **Appointed spies** to keep an eye on them and tried to confiscate their excess wealth.
- **Prohibited wine and gambling** and **refrained himself** from these activities.
- **Prevented** the interference of **Ulemas** in **administration.**

Military Reforms

- Had a **Permanent standing army, paid them in cash and Imported horses.**
- **Ferishta** - he **recruited 4,75,000 cavalrymen.**
- An innovative **Chehra and Dagh system** was introduced by him.
- **Chehra: detailed description of each soldier.**
- **Dagh: branding of horses**
- A **strict review of the army** from time to time was carried out.
- The '**Ariz-i-Mamlik**' (**Army Minister**) - **recruited** the soldiers of the army
- **Kept spies** in every unit of the army.
- **Submitted** regular reports to him about the movements of the military officers.
- **Controlled the price of the essential commodities** which **enabled the soldiers to make a good living** within their salaries.

Land Revenue Reforms

- For the **measurement of land.**
- Even the **big landlords could not escape from paying the land tax.**
- **Land tax** was collected in **cash.**
- **State officials measured the cultivable land and fixed the revenue accordingly.**
- **Biswa** - **standard unit of measurement.**
- **Tax- 1/5th** of the produce.
- **House tax(Grahi)** and **pasture tax (chari)** were also imposed.
- His land revenue reforms were **adopted by Sher Shah and Akbar.**
- **Centralized administration** and **confiscated religious endowments** and free lands.
- **Income Authorities:** Rai, Rana, Rawat, khut, Muqaddam etc.

Art and Culture

- Credited with the **rise of Indo-Mohammedan architecture**
- **Alai Darwaza** was added in **1311 CE** to Qutub Minar .
- **Started** the construction of a **huge Minar near the Qutub Minar** but **died before** its completion.
- Built a **Hauz-i-Khas** or **Hauz i-ilahi**, a **tank** cover-ing an area of nearly 70 acres.
- **Siri Fort** was constructed **along with the city of Siri**

The Tughlaq Dynasty (1320-1413)

- **Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq** raised banner of **revolt against** the last Khalji Sultan **Nasiruddin Khusrau Shah.**
 - **Khusrau** defeated and **killed.**
- **Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq** - a **new dynasty** which ruled till **1412CE.**
- Continued to rule till **1412, invasion by Timur** in **1398** marked the **end of the Tughlaq empire.**

Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq

- Ruled from **1320-1325 CE.**
- **First ruler** to take the **title of Ghazi/Slayer of infidels.**
- **First Sultan** to **start irrigation works.**
- Strong fort called **Tughlaqabad** near **Delhi.**
- **Dispatched Muhammad bin Tughlaq** to re-establish authority in **Warangal and Madurai.**

Muhammad bin Tughlaq c.1325–51

- **Undertook a number of bold experiments,** and showed a **keen interest in agriculture.**
- Considered an **ill-fated idealist** owing to his ambitious schemes and novel experiments.
- **Ziauddin Barni** - **5 experiments / campaigns:**
 - **Administrative Campaigns:**
 - **Forcibly transferred his capital from Delhi to Devagiri (Daulatabad)** to have better administration
 - **Capital shifted back to Delhi** after two years because of the **lack of water supply in Daulatabad.**
 - **Military Campaigns:**
 - **After repelling an attack of Mongols,** planned to **occupy Khurasan and Iraq.**
 - **Organised a huge army,** but as conditions improved in Iraq, he abandoned the plan and disbanded the army (**paid the extra army for one full year**).
 - **Qarachill expedition** (Kumaon Hills) met with **several setback**
 - **Financial Experiments:**
 - **Increased the land revenue (half the produce)** of farmers of Doab
 - ✓ Measure **proved to be ill timed** as Doab was facing **famine,** followed by **plague.**
 - Issued **token currency** (copper coins) **at par** with the **value of the silver tanka** coins.
 - **Very few people exchanged gold/silver for copper** and the **tokens were easy to forge** → **heavy losses.**
 - **Repealed his verdict,** and **all coins were redeemed in silver/gold,** making the **treasury empty.**

- **Revolts:**
 - **Revolt of Bahauddin Gurshap - of Gulbarga;** defeated by **Muhammad bin Tughlaq** in 1327 A.D.
 - **Revolt in Vijaynagar:** Harihara and Bukka established Vijaynagar Empire in **1336 A.D**
 - **Revolt of Bahram Aiba: Multan defeated by Muhammad bin Tughlaq**
- **Literature:**
 - Knew **Arabic and Persian languages.**
 - An **expert in philosophy, astronomy, logic, and mathematics;** A good calligrapher.
- **Religion:** Followed **Islam;** tolerant in religious matters.
- **Ibn Batuta:** A **Moroccan explorer** came to **India** in **c.1334 CE**
 - Known for the **account of his journeys** called the **Rihla**
- **Charity:**
 - Set up a **department of Agriculture, Diwan-i-amir kohi.**
 - Launched a **scheme under which taccavi loans** (loans for cultivation) were **given** to the farmers **to buy seed and to extend cultivation.**
- **Art and Architecture:** Built the **fort of Adilabad;** **Established** city of **Jahanpanah.**
- **Died** in **c.1351 CE.**
- **Baduani** - Sultan was freed from his people and the people from the Sultan.
- **Barani** - Muhammad bin Tughlaq was a mixture of opposites.
- His **reign** marked the **beginning of the process of decline.**

Firoz Shah Tughlaq (c.1351–1388 CE)

- Had the **unique distinction of being chosen as Sultan by the nobles.**
- **Policy:** **appease** the **nobles, the army, and theologians.**
- Appointed **Khan-i-Jahan Maqbal**, a Telugu Brahmin convert, as **Wazir.**
- Led **two unsuccessful campaigns to Bengal.**
- Led a **campaign against Jajnagar** (modern Orissa) looted temples such as the **Puri Jagannath temple.**
- **Marched against Nagarkot** and made its ruler pay him tributes.
- **Translated 1300 Sanskrit manuscripts** from the **Jawalamukhi temple library** into Persian by **Arizuddin Khan 'Dalail-i-Firuz Shahi'.**
- **Jaziya** was strictly imposed **on non-Muslims.**
- Treated **Hindus as second grade citizens** and adopted a very harsh attitude towards them.
- **Brahmins were burnt publicly** for questioning the Quran.

- **Prohibited Muslim women from going to worship at the grave of saints.**
- **Persecuted** a number of **heretical Muslim sects** (Shia Muslims and Sufis).
- **Revived the Iqtadari system** and made it **hereditary.**
- **Soldiers** were given **land assignments** (jagir system), and their **recruitment** was made **hereditary.**
- **First Sultan to impose Sharb** (irrigation tax).
- **Reforms:**
 - Set up a **separate department of public works.**
 - Developed **royal factories** called **karkhanas**
 - **Built a number of canals.**
 - **Sirsa to Hansi**
 - **Sutlej to Hansi: Longest canal (about 200 kilometres)**
 - **Yamuna to Hissar**
- During his reign there were about **1200 fruit gardens** in and around Delhi yielding good revenue:
 - **Kharaj** – 10% of produce
 - **Zakat** – alms for Muslims
 - **Khams** – 20% spoils of war
- **Coins:** **Adha** (50% Jital) and **Bitch** (23% Jital)
- Organised **Diwan-i-Bandagan:** department of slaves. Officer in-charge - **Wakil-i-dar.**
- **Towns:**
 - About **300 new towns** were built during his reign.
 - **Most famous - Firozabad** near Red Fort in Delhi aka **Firoz Shah Kotla, Hisar, Jaunpur** (considered the Shiraz of the east).
- **Repaired Old monuments** like the **Jama Masjid and the Qutub Minar** (which was struck by lightning, and the fourth storey was subsequently replaced by two smaller ones).
- **Ashokan pillars** from Topara and Meerut **brought to Delhi.**
- **Charity:**
 - **Diwan-i-Khairat** (Department of Charity) was created to **take care of orphans and widows.**
 - **Free hospitals** like **Dar-ul- Shafa** were established.
 - **Marriage bureaus** for poor Muslims were also established.
- **Literature:**
 - **Patronised** scholars like **Barani** (famous historian who wrote **Tarikh-i-Firoz Shah** and **Futwa-i-Jahandari**) and **Khwajja Abdul Malik Islami** (who wrote **Futuh-Us Salatin**).
 - **Wrote the Futuh-e-firoz shahi.**
- **Art and Architecture:**

- **Built** three main types of **tombs**: **square, octagonal and pavilion**
- Built **Fateh Khan's tomb, Firoz Shah's tomb,** and the **tomb of Khan-i-Jahan Tilangani**
- **His tomb** is the **first octagonal tomb to be built in Delhi.**
- Firoz Shah Tughluz **died** in c.**1388 CE.**

Sayyid Dynasty (1414-51)

- Sayyid Dynasty rulers **believed** in their **divine right to the Indian throne.**
- **4th dynasty of the Delhi Sultanate**
- **4 rulers** of Dynasty **claimed** to be the **direct descendants** of the **Prophet Muhammad,** the founder of Islam.
- **Short-lived** surviving a mere **37 years.**
- **Founder:** Khizr Khan
- **Capital:** Delhi

Khizr Khan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Timur appointed Khizr Khan as the governor of Multan. ● Given the Jagir of Multan by Firoz Shah Tughlaq. ● 1414 CE - Khizr Khan marched up to Delhi and defeated Daulat Khan and took possession of Delhi. ● Ruled for 7 years. ● Yahya Sirhindi - book Takhirik-i-Mubarak Shahi - Khizr Khan (descendant of prophet Muhammad) ● Tried to control the disorders prevailing in Delhi with the help of his minister Taj-ul-Mulk. ● He died in 1421 after designating his son Mubarak Shah as his successor.
Mubarak Shah	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rebellions in all parts of the empire and measures were taken by Sultan to suppress them. ● Successful expeditions against Mewatis, Katihar and the Gangetic Doab enabled him to collect revenue from that region. ● A just and kind ruler . ● Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi written by Yahya-bin-Ahmad Shirhindi during his reign. ● City of Mubarakabad was founded on the bank of Yamuna by the sultan.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Mubarak Shah was assassinated by some of his own nobles in 1434CE. ● Did not have a son of his own so after his death the nobles of Delhi put to the throne the son of his brother.
Muhammad Shah	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ascended the throne in 1434 CE. ● Rebellions from various parts of the country. ● Mahmud Shah Khilji of Malwa advanced to Delhi during his reign. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bahlul Khan Lodhi, the governor of Lahore checked the advancement of Mahmud Shah Khilji of Malwa. ● Died in 1444 CE. ● Succeeded by his son Ala-ud-din who took up the title of Alam Shah.
Alam Shah	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Incompetent and the weakest of the Syed rulers. ● In 1447CE , went to Badaun and founded the city. ● Appointed a Governor for Delhi to look into matters of the Sultanate. ● His Wazir invited Bhalol Lodhi to take charge of the army. ● Continued to live in Badaun till he died in 1478 CE.

Lodhi Dynasty (1451-1526)

- **Last ruling family of the Delhi Sultanate** and **first to be headed by the Afghans.**
- Ruled even **longer than Khiljis.**
- **Founder- Bahlul Lodi** in 1451 CE.
- Continued **up to 1526 CE.**

Bahlul Lodi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Founded the Lodhi Dynasty ● 1479- defeated and annexed the Sharqi dynasty based at Jaunpur. ● Ruled over Delhi for 38 years. ● Tomb - at Chirag Dilli in Delhi
Sikander Lodhi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The greatest and noblest of the Lodhi Dynasty. ● His mother was a Hindu and his real name was Nizam Khan. ● Brought Bihar under his control, and defeated many Rajput chiefs. ● Roads were laid and many irrigational facilities ● Laid great emphasis on justice. ● Prices of commodities were very affordable.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Introduced a new measurement yardstick, the Gaz-iSikandari, and a system of auditing of accounts. ● A bigot and showed little tolerance towards the non-Muslims. ● Destroyed many Hindu temples and imposed many restrictions on Hindus. ● Re-imposed jaziya on non-Muslims. ● Founded Agra in c.1504 CE. ● Wrote Persian verses under the name 'Gulrakhi'. 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disaffection b/w kings and courtiers became very common during his reign. ● Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of the Punjab, greatly displeased by the arrogance and insult of Ibrahim, invited Babur to invade India. ● Babur marched against Delhi and defeated and killed Ibrahim Lodhi in the first Battle of Panipat (c.1526). ● Afghan kingdom thus lasted for seventy-five years. ● Sultanate period ended with him.
Ibrahim Lodhi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Eldest son of Sikander Lodhi ● Defeated by Rana Sanga of Mewar. ● Openly insulted and humiliated his nobles in court 		



26

CHAPTER

Mughal Empire

Emperors of Mughal Empire

Babur (1526-1530 AD)

- **Founder**
- A **Chagatai Turkic prince** (reigned 1526–30).
- **1504 - conquered Kabul and Ghazni.**
- **1511- captured Samarkand.**
- **1519 -1524- invaded Bhera, Sialkot.**
- **Secured Punjab, advanced toward Delhi,** garnering support from many Delhi nobles.
- **Routed two advance troop contingents of Ibrāhīm Lodī,** Delhi's sultan, and met the sultan's main army at the **First Battle of Panipat (1526).**
- **Employed military aid** in the form of **matchlock guns** and **cast cannon** from the **Ottoman Empire** to **defeat** the Sultan of Delhi, **Ibrahim Lodhi.**
- Led an **expedition against the Rana Sanga** of Mewar and **crushed the Rana's forces** at **Khanua,** near Fatehpur Sikri (March 1527).
- **Continued his campaigns to subjugate the Rajputs of Chanderi.**
- **Bābur won the battles,** but his **failing health** forced him to withdraw.
- **Died** near Lahore in **December 1530.**
- A **devoted follower** of **Naqshbandiya Sufi Khwaja Ubaidullah Ahrar.**
- **Deeply learned in Persian and Arabic,** and is regarded as one of the two most famous writers of his mother tongue, Turkish.
- **Wrote his memoir** in Turki called **Tuzuk-i-Babri / Babarnama** (translated into Persian by Abdur Rahim Khan-i-Khana) and also wrote **Masnavi.**
- **Introduced Char-Baghs** and symmetrically laid out gardens with running waters and fountains.
- Built **two mosques- Panipat & Sambhat** in Rohilkhand.

First Battle of Panipat (21 APRIL 1526)

- Fought **between** the invading forces of **Babur** and the **Lodi Empire** on **21 April 1526.**
- **Babur's guns** proved **decisive in battle - Ibrahim Lodi lacked** any **field artillery;** also sound of cannon frightened Lodi's elephants, causing them to trample Lodi's own men.

- **Gunpowder** was known in India but its use for **artillery** became common in north India with the advent of **Babur.**
- Regarded as one of the **decisive battles of Indian history.**
- **Brought** under Babur's control the entire **area upto Delhi and Agra.**

Battle of Khanwa (1527)

- Babur **defeated Rana Sangha**
- assumed the **title of Ghazi**
- **Consolidated** the **Mughal dynasty** in India.

Battle of Chanderi (1528)

- Situated on the **border of Malwa and Bundelkhand**
- **Medini Rai** was **defeated by Babur**
- **Rajputana** was completely **shattered.**
- **Handed over to Ahmad Shah,** a **descendant of the ruling dynasty of Malwa.**

Battle of Ghagra(1529)

Afghans under **Mahmud Lodi** were **defeated** by Babur

Humayun (1530-1540)

- **Full name:** Nasiruddin Muhammad 'Humayun'.
- **Eldes son of Babur.**
- **Birth: 1508,** when Babur was in Kabul.
- Ascended the **throne in 1530** at the age of **22 years.**
- **2 major rivals:** Bahadur Shah of Gujarat & Sher Shah Suri of Malwa
- **Siege of Chunar. (1532):**
 - Sher Shah's success in Bengal and Bihar alarmed Humayun.
 - **Spent about six months besieging the fort of Chunar** in Bihar.
 - **Sher Shah submitted,** and Humayun raised the seize.
- **Battle of Chausa (1539):**
 - No major conflicts between Sher Shah and Humayun for about six years.
 - **Sher Shah** greatly strengthened his position- **reorganised his army.**
 - **Great victory for Sher Shah** at Chausa - **declared himself the Sultan- captured Bengal.**
- **Battle of Kannauj (1540):**
 - After his defeat at Chausa, **Humayun reached Agra** and sought **help from his brothers- could not** unite them.

- **Recruited a big army** -proceeded towards **Kannauj** when Sher Shah had already encamped himself.
- **Sher Shah won.**
- **Humayun fled** and reached Agra.
- **Results of the conflicts:**
 - After Kannauj defeat, **Humayun spent about 15 years in exile from 1540 - 1554.**
 - **Sher Shah** became the **ruler of Delhi.**
- **Humāyūn fatally injured** by falling down the staircase of his library.
- His **tomb in Delhi**, built several years after his death, is the **first of the great Mughal architectural masterpieces**; it was designated a **UNESCO World Heritage site in 1993.**

The Sur Empire (1540-1555 AD)

- **Founder: Sher Shah Suri** (c.1486–1545 CE); original name - Farid
- **Second Afghan Empire after the Lodhis .**
- **Son of Hasan Khan**, a jagirdar of Sasaram in South Bihar (Jaunpur).
- **Title of Sher Khan** was given to him **by his patron** for **killing a tiger** (sher) or, for services rendered.
- **Effectively managed the jagir** of his **father** and also **acquired great military and administrative skills.**
- **Defeated Humayun** again in the **Battle of Kannauj** and **proclaimed** himself as **Emperor of Hindustan** at the age of 54.
- A **pious Muslim**, adopted a **tolerant attitude** towards other religions.
- **Employed Hindus** in important offices.
- **Succeeded by his son Islam Shah** (Jalal Khan)- **had to face conflicts** with his brother **Adil Khan.**
- **Died in c.1553 CE** and the Afghan empire was **substantially weakened.**
- **Humayun** thus gradually **captured** his lost kingdom

Art and Culture

- **Built the Purana Qila (Old Fort), Sher Mandal**, an octagonal building inside the Purana Qila complex, which later served as the library of Humayun, and his own **mausoleum at Sasaram.**
- **Also built the Rohtas Fort** (now a UNESCO World Heritage Site in Pakistan), many structures in the Rohtasgarh Fort in Bihar, and the **Sher Shah Suri Masjid**, in Patna.
- Built a new city, **Bhera of modern day Pakistan**, in c.1545 CE and inside the city built the historical **grand Sher Shah Suri Masjid.**
- **Malik Mohammad Jaysi** completed his **Padmavat** during his reign.

- Famous historian, **Abbas Khan Sarwani**, wrote the **Tarikh-i-Shershahi** during his reign.

Akbar (1556–1605)

- **Humāyūn's son Akbar** (reigned 1556–1605),
- **Under** the guidance of the regent **Bayram Khan**, **defeated Hemu** at the **Second Battle of Panipat** (1556), which commanded the route to Delhi, and thereby turned the tide in Hindustan to the Mughal dynasty's favour.
- **An extremely capable ruler.**
- **Akbar's government - extent of Hindu, particularly Rajput participation.**
- **Rajput princes attained the highest ranks**, as generals and as provincial governors, **in the Mughal service.**
- **Discrimination against non-Muslims reduced - abolishing pilgrimage tax and jizyah** in lieu of military service.
- **Followed the feudal policy** toward the **Rajput** chiefs.
 - **Allowed to hold their ancestral territories** if they acknowledged **Akbar** as **emperor**, paid tribute, supplied troops when required, and **concluded a marriage alliance** with him.
 - **Emperor's service was also opened to them** and their sons, which offered financial rewards as well as honour.
- **Abolished** the practice of **forcibly converting prisoners** of war to Islam and encouraged Hindus as his principal confidants and policy makers.
- **Religious grants**, which were now available **to learned and pious men of all religions**, including Hindu pandits, Jain and Christian missionaries, and Parsi priests.
- **Created a new order** commonly called the **Dīn-e Ilāhī** ("Divine Faith"), which was **modeled on the Muslim mystical Sufi brotherhood.**
- **Ibadat Khana** was **established** by him for conducting **religious debates and discussions among theologians and professors of different religions.**

Patron of Art

- **Built the Agra fort** in red sandstone.
- Other forts - **Lahore and Allahabad.**
- **Built Fatehpur Sikri** near Agra and the most magnificent building in it is the **Jama Masjid** and the gateway to it called **Buland Darwaza** (the Lofty Gate).
 - in **c.1572 CE** to commemorate **Akbar's victory over Gujarat.**
- **Other buildings** at Fatehpur Sikri : **Jodha Bai's palace**,the **Panch Mahal**,the **Diwani-Khas**, the **Diwan-i-Aam**, and **Sheikh Salim Chisti's tomb.**

- **Built his own tomb** at Sikandra (near Agra) which was completed by Jahangir.
- Built the **temple of Govind Deva at Vrindavan**.
- Built the **Jahangiri Mahal in Agra fort**, according to Hindu design based on **Man Mandir**.
- **Commissioned** the illustrations of **Persian versions of Mahabharata and Ramayana** in miniature form.
- Historical works such as the **Akbar Nama - main themes of Mughal paintings**.
- **Hamznama**, which consisted of 1200 paintings, belonged to his reign.
- **Persian language** became **widespread** in the Mughal Empire by the time of Akbar's reign.
- **Court included: Abul Fazl** and his brother Abul Faizi, Abdul Qadir Badauni (who wrote Kitabul-Tawarikh), Khwaja Nizamuddin Ahmad Harami (who wrote Tabaquat-i-Akbari Tarikh Alfi), Muntakhab ul-Akbari, Utbi, and Naziri (leading Persian poets).
- Hindi poets: **Tulsidas**, who wrote the Hindi version of the **Ramayana, the Ramcharitmanas**.

Akbar's Navratnas

- **Abul Fazl**
 - Wrote **Ain-i-Akbari and Akbar Nama**.
 - **Lead Mughal imperial army** in its wars in **Deccan**.
- **Faizi**: Translated **Lilavati into Persian** (a work on mathematics), and under his supervision, the **Mahabharata** was translated **into Persian**.
- **Fakir Aziao Din**: A **Sufi mystic** and one of the **chief advisors of Akbar**.
- **Tansen: Great musician**, Hindu of Gwalior, served as a **court musician to King Ramachandra**.
- **Raja Birbal/ Mahesh Das**: Akbar gave the **title of both Raja and Birbal**.
- **Raja Todar Mal**: **Finance minister**, overlooked revenue system.
- **Raja Man Singh**: A **Mansabdar**, grandson of Akbar's father-in-law and a trusted general.
- **Abdul Rahim Khan-i-Khanan**: Great poet and **Son of Bairam Khan**
- **Mirza Aziz Koka**: Also known as **Khan-i-Azam or Kotaltash** and was one of the leading nobles, and also the **foster brother of Akbar**.

Mansabdari System

- Introduced by **Akbar**.
- **Every officer** (Mansabdar) was **assigned a rank** (mansab).
- **Princes of royal blood** received even **higher ranks**.
- **Not hereditary**.
- Ranks divided into –
 - **Zat - personal** and apart from **fixing the personal status of a person** in the administration hierarchy, it also **decides salary due to him**.

- **Sawar** - indicated the **number of cavalymen** (sawars) that a **person was required to maintain**.
- **3 categories** in every mansab (rank):
 - A person who was **required to maintain as many sawars as his zat rank**. Eg, in the first category, zat and sawar ranks were equal (7000/7000).
 - If the **person maintained half or more sawars as his zat rank**. Eg, in the second category, sawar rank was lower than the zat but stopped at half, or fifty percent, of the zat rank (7000/4000)
 - If the **person maintained less than half as his zat rank**. Eg, in the third category, the sawar rank was lower than fifty percent of the zat rank (7000/3000).
- Thus, **sawar rank \leq zat**.

Religious Policy of Akbar

- **Regularly visited** the shrine of **Sheikh Muinuddin Chisti at Ajmer**.
- **Abolished pilgrim tax**, and **jiziya**.
- **c.1575 CE - constructed the Ibadat Khana (Hall of prayers)** at his new capital **Fatehpur Sikri** wherein Akbar invited learned scholars from all religions like Hinduism, Jainism, Christianity, and Zoroastrianism and used to conduct religious discussions with them
- Some of the **scholars** were:
 - **Pursottam Das** – Hindu
 - **Dastur Maharji Rana** – Parsi (of Navsari)
 - **Hira Vijaya Suri** – Jain saint of Kathiawar
 - **Aquaviva and Monserrate** – Christian (sent by the Portuguese on Akbar's request)
- **c.1582 CE - promulgated** a new religion called **Din-i-Ilahi/Tauhindi-Ilahi** (Divine Monotheism), which believes in **one God and Sul-iKul/peace to all**.

Imperial expansion under Akbar

- **First expedition - Gwalior and Jaunpur** in 1559-60.
- **Ram Shah surrendered the Gawaliar fort**.
- **Khan Zaman sent to Jaunpur - ruled by Afghans**
 - **Defeated easily** and it was annexed to the Mughal empire
- **Malwa** in central India - ruled by **Baz Bahadur**.
 - **Adham Khan** and others led the expedition against Malwa.
 - **Baz Bahadur** was **defeated** and fled towards Burhanpur.
- **Garh Katanga or Gondwana**, an independent state ruled by **Rani Durgawati**, widow of Dalpat Shah, was conquered in **1564**.
 - **1567 - Akbar** handed over the **kingdom to Chandra Shah**, the brother of Dalpat Shah.
- During this period, Akbar had to face a **series of revolts** in central India:
 - **Abdulah Khan Uzbek** - leader of the revolt.
 - **Joined by** a number of **Uzbek**.

- Khan Zaman and Asaf Khan also rebelled.
- With the help of Munim Khan, suppressed it

Conquest of Rajputana

- Akbar - a great pragmatist.
- First Muslim ruler to realize that without the help of the Rajputs, no permanent empire could be set up in India.
- Rajput rulers who opposed him were attacked and efforts were made to force them to accept his sovereignty.
- After the fall of the fort of Chittor some Rajput states like Bikaner and Jaisalmer voluntarily accepted the suzerainty of Akbar while some of them entered into matrimonial alliances with him.
- Banswara, Bundi and Orcha accepted the suzerainty after the Battle of Haldighati

Deccan and South India

- 1591 - Akbar sent a few missions to the Deccan states asking them to accept Mughal sovereignty.
 - Faizi was sent to Asir and Burhanpur (Khandesh),
 - Khwaja Aminuddin to Ahmednagar
 - Mir Mohammad Amin Mashadi to Bijapur
 - Mirza Ma'sud to Golconda
- 1593 - all the missions returned without any success
- Expedition dispatched to Ahmednagar under Prince Murad and Abdul Rahim Khan Khanan.
 - 1595, the Mughal forces besieged Ahmednagar.
- Asirgarh and adjoining regions were conquered in 1600 A.D.
- Adil Shah of Bijapur also expressed allegiance and offered his daughter in marriage to Prince Daniyal.
- Mughal territories in Deccan included Asirgarh, Burhanpur, Ahmednagar and Berar.

Literary works under Akbar

- 'Navratans' (Nine Jewels) - great literary figures.
- Abul Fazal was a great historian, philosopher and scholar of the period.
 - famous - works 'Akbarnama' and 'Ain-i-Akbari'.
- Badauni, a historian of fame wrote, 'Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh',
- Historian Nizam-ud-Din wrote 'Tabaqat-i-Akbari' and translated the Atharva Veda, the Ramayana and the Mahabharata.
- Sur Das, a blind bard of Agra wrote 'Sursagar' in Brij Bhasha.
- Saint Tulsi Das produced the immortal Ramcharitmanas' in Awadhi, the eastern Hindi dialect.
- Guru Granth Sahib, the central holy religious scripture of Sikhism was compiled during this period in Punjabi.
- Dictionary of Persian-Sanskrit, named Parsi Parkash'.

Jahangir (1605-1627 AD)

- Only surviving son of Akbar who after his father's death ascended the throne, at the age of 34 years.
- Had to ruthlessly fight his own son Khusrou- got Khusrou blinded.
- Lacked his father's valor and administrative genius.
- Great patron of art and literature - spent lavishly in building splendid buildings and gardens and mausoleums.
- Mughal paintings reached zenith during him.
- Got constructed Akbar's tomb, Idmaat ud Daula tomb and the famous Jahangir Fort.
- Married a young widow of his own Mughal officer, "Noor Jahan" or 'light of the world.'
 - A very intelligent and capable lady who understood weaknesses of her husband and very quietly took over the command of the stately matters in her hands.
- Fought many wars of succession which gave him great pleasure.
- Mostly at war with Rana of Mewar, Amar Singh.
- Also led campaigns against the Ahoms of Burma, Kangra, and most of the States of Deccan trap regions.
- Personal enmity with Sikhs- beheaded fifth Guru of Sikhs at Sheesh Ganj Gurudwara.
- Increased trade and commerce under his kingship
- Sought the help of the British forces to curb the Portuguese from entering the Southern regions of India.
- Main item exported - Indian Liquor.
- 1622 AD - Persians and the Uzbeks were fully aware of the political loop holes and handicaps that were jeopardizing Jahangir's rule.
 - Started attacking Jahangir's forces.
- Died: November 1627.
- Succeeded by his son Shah Jahan under the patronage of his Father in law, Asaf Khan.

Shah Jahan (1628-1658 AD)

- Prince Khurram succeeded in attaining the throne and took the name Shah Jahān.
- Notable for successes against the Deccan states.
- By 1636, Ahmednagar had been annexed, Golconda and Bijapur (Vijayapura) forced to become tributaries.
 - In the Deccan, Shah Jahan carved out four Mughal provinces: Khandesh, Berar, Telangana, and Daulatabad.
- Mughal power was also temporarily extended in the northwest.

- In **1638** - the Persian **governor** of **Kandahār**, **‘Alī Mardān Khan**, **surrendered** the fortress to the Mughals.
- In **1632 CE** - **Shah Jahan defeated the Portuguese near Hughli** due to the regular abuse of trading privilege by them.
- **Transferred his capital from Agra to Delhi in 1648**, creating the new city of **Shāhjahānābād** there.
- **Expeditions** against **Balkh and Badakhshān** and his attempts to recover Kandahār brought the empire to the verge of bankruptcy.
- **Foreign travellers** who visited India during his reign were:
 - French travellers- **Bernier and Tavernier**
 - Italian traveller – **Manucci**
 - **Peter Mundy** described famine during Shah Jahan’s time.

Art and Culture

- **Built Taj Mahal** using the techniques of **Pietra Dura**- method of decoration in the memory of his wife **Arjūmand (Mumtāz Maḥal)**
 - Chief glory - **massive dome** and **flour slender minarets** linking the platform to the main building.
- **Mosques** building reached its climax
 - **Moti masjid (Pearl mosque)** at the **Agra fort** is built like Taj Mahal , **entirely in white marble**
 - **Jama Masjid** in **Delhi** is made of **red sandstone**
- **Designed the Pearl Mosque** in Agra, the **Red Fort** in Delhi, the **Jama Masjid** in Delhi, the **Shalimar Gardens**, **Jami masjid** (Great mosque) or the Friday mosque
- Also responsible for the construction of the famous **Peacock Throne**.
- **Old Delhi, also known as Purani Dilli, was founded in 1639 as a walled city known as Shahjahanabad.**
- **Mughal paintings** mainly were **limited to court paintings**.
- Also **patronised** many writers and historians like **Abdul Hamid Lahori**, author of **Padshah Nama** and **Inayat Khan**, who wrote **Shah Jahan Nama**.
- Shah Jahan’s son **Dara Shikoh** translated the **Bhagavad Gita** and **Upanishads** into the Persian language.

Aurangzeb (1658-1707 AD)

- **Expanded the empire** to its greatest extent, particularly after **annexing** the Muslim Deccan kingdoms of **Bijapur (1686)** and **Golconda (1687)**
- **Political and religious intolerance** also laid the seeds of its decline.

- **Continued** his predecessors’ recipe for **conquest, defeating one’s enemies, reconciling** them, and **placing** them in imperial service.
- Thus, **Maratha chief Shivaji** compelled into **vassalage** upon **his defeat in 1666**.
- **Escaped the Mughal court** and **challenged the Mughal Empire** anew.
- **Elaborate coronation** in **1674**, complete with **Hindu religious consecration** (abhisheka), rallied many Hindus to his cause; his successful rise also gained the attention and cooperation of Muslim sultans in the Deccan.
- **Excluded Hindus** from **public office** and destroyed their schools and temples.
- **Beheaded Guru Tegh Bahadur** on 24 November **1675**, in front of a massive crowd.
- **Heavy taxes** levied by Aurangzeb (including the reimposition of the jizyah) steadily **impoverished the farming population**.
- A **staunch and orthodox Muslim** in his personal life.
- Created a **separate department** to **enforce moral codes** under a high-powered officer called **Muhtasib**.
- **Drinking** was **prohibited**.
- **Cultivation** and **use of bhang** and other drugs were **banned**.
- **Forbade music** in the Mughal court.
- **Discontinued Jharokha-darshan**.
- **Discontinued Dashara** and **royal astronomers and astrologers dismissed**.
- **Banned the construction of new Hindu temples** and **repair** of old Temples.
- Began a policy of **destroying Hindu temples**.
 - The celebrated **temples at Mathura and Benares** were reduced to ruins.
- **1679-** reimposed **jizya** and **pilgrim tax**.
- **Not tolerant** of other Muslim sects.
 - The celebration of **Muharram** was **stopped**.
- **Also against the Sikhs** and he executed the ninth Sikh **Guru Teg Bahadur**.

Maratha Empire and Other Regional States

- **Dominated** much of the Indian **subcontinent** in the **17th and 18th century**.
- **To effectively manage** the large empire, **Madhavrao I gave semi-autonomy** to the strongest of the knights, which **created a confederacy of Maratha states**.
 - **Gaekwads** of Baroda,
 - **Holkars** of Indore and Malwa,
 - **Scindias** of Gwalior and Ujjain,
 - **Bhonsales** of Nagpur
 - **Puars** of Dhar and Dewas.
- **Marathas** remained the **pre-eminent power** in India until their **defeat** in the **Second and Third Anglo-Maratha Wars** (1805-1818) against East India Company.

Shivaji Raje Bhonsle (1674–1680)

- **Birth:** hill fortress of **Shivmer in Poona** on February 19, **1630**.
- **Mother-** Jijabai
- Named **“Shiva”** after the local goddess **“Shivai”**.
- **Influenced by** Jijabai (his mother), Dadaji Kondev (his teacher), Sufi saint Pir Shaikh Yacub, Guru Ramdas, Tukaram (Bhakti Saint), Hazrat Baba of Ratnagiri, the Ramayana, and the Mahabharata on the development of his personality.
- **Started his career** as an **independent young prince at Poona** after **inheriting the jagir of Poona** from his father in 1637.
- **Conflict with the ‘Adil Shāhīs** on the one hand and the **Mughals** on the other.
- **1660 - Aurangzeb sent** the Mughal governor of the Deccan, **Shaista Khan- Shivaji defeated and lost Poona**.
- **c.1663 CE, Shivaji attacked** the camp of **Shaista Khan**, injuring Khan and killing his son.
 - **Affected the prestige of Khan** and he was **recalled by Aurangzeb** and **sent to Bengal as punishment**.
- **Also raided Portuguese settlements** at Daman and **received tribute** from them.
- **1664 - raid on** Gujarat port city of **Surat** - most important port under Mughal control.
 - **Enraged Aurangzeb** and he **sent Raja Jai Singh of Amber and Diler Khan to destroy the Maratha power**.
- **Shivaji opened negotiations** with Jai Singh and the **Treaty of Purandar** was signed in c.1665 CE.
 - **Shivaji had to surrender 23 forts** to the Mughals out of the 35 forts held by him
 - **Remaining 12 forts** were to be **left to Shivaji** on the condition of service and loyalty to the Mughal empire.
 - **Mughals recognised right of Shivaji to hold certain parts of Bijapur kingdom**.
- **1665- Shivaji visited Agra** with his son but was **humiliated by Aurangzeb** who put them **under house arrest**.
 - **Shivaji escaped** along with his son while **disguised as a palanquin bearer**.
- **1667 -1669 - Shivaji adopted a low profile** and built his army.
- **1670 -1680-** Era of **expeditions, from Thanjavur** in southeast to **Khandesh and Berar** in north.
- **Recovered** most of his **lost forts** and **sacked Surat**.
- **Defeated Mughals** in the **Battle of Salher (c.1672 CE)** and **crowned** himself at Raigarh and assumed the title **Maharaja Chhatrapati**.
- **Death-** due to fever in **c.1680 CE**.
- **Founded the Maratha kingdom** that dominated western India for a century and a half.
- **Promoted Sanskrit**, but **respected all religions** and opposed forced conversion.
- Had 2 sons: **Sambhaji and Rajaram**, who had different mothers and were half-brothers.

Sambhaji (1681–1689)

- **1681 - Sambhaji succeeded** to the crown after his father's death and resumed his expansionist policies.
- **Defeated Portuguese and Chikka Deva Raya** of Mysore.
- **Gave shelter to Prince Akbar**, the rebellious son of Aurangzeb.
- Consequently. Mughal Emperor **Aurangzeb headed south** in 1681.
- **Early 1689-** Called his commanders for a strategic meeting at **Sangameshwar** to consider an **onslaught on the Mughal forces**.
 - **Ganoji and Aurangzeb's commander, Mukarrab Khan, attacked Sambhaji** in Sangameshwar
 - **Sambhaji ambushed and captured** by Mughal troops on **1 February 1689**.

- He and **Kavi Kalash**, taken to **Bahadurgad** - executed by the Mughals on **21 March 1689**.
- **Widow of Sambhaji, Yesubai could not protect** the fort of **Raigarh**, and she along with her son, Shahu were made prisoners.

Peshwa (1640–1818)

- **Sonopant Dabir** (1640–1652) - First unofficial Peshwa.
- **Moropant Trimbak Pingle** (1657–1683) - appointed Peshwa by Chhatrapati Shivaji.
- **Moreshwar Pingle** (1683–1689) - Peshwa under Sambhaji
- **Ramchandra Pant Amatya** (1689–1708)- **Peshwa under Rajaram**, and when Rajaram had to escape to Ginjee in 1689, he gave **Hukumat Panha** (King status) to Pant before leaving.

Balaji Vishwanath Bhatt (1713–1719)

- Belonged to **Bhatt family of Shri Vardhan** in the Konkan region.
- **Made post of Peshwa hereditary.**
- **Played a crucial role in the civil war.**
- **Helped Shahu** become the Maratha ruler by seeking the support of all Maratha leaders for Shahu.
- **1719- Balaji Vishwanath got certain rights from** the Mughal Emperor, **Farrukh Siyar**, such as the recognition of Shahu as the Maratha king and the permission to collect **chauth and sardeshmukhi from the six Mughal provinces** of the Deccan, including the Carnatic and Mysore.
- **Major achievement** - conclusion of the **Treaty of Lonavala in 1714** with **Kanhoji Angre**, the **most powerful naval chief on the Western Coast**.
- **Later accepted Shahu as Chhatrapati.**

Baji Rao I (1720–1740)

- **Eldest Son of Balaji Vishwanath** who succeeded him as Peshwa at age 20.
- **Most famous** of all nine Peshwas and aka "**Thorale**", meaning 'Elder' Baji Rao.
- **Greatest exponent of guerrilla tactics** after Shivaji.
- **Fought over 41 battles** before his death in April 1740 and is reputed to have **never lost any**.
- **Maratha power reached its zenith under him.**
- **Formulated** policy of **Northward expansion** to extend empire from Krishna to Attock.
- **Preached** and popularised the idea of **Hindu-padshahi** (Hindu Empire) to **secure the support of the Hindu chiefs** against the common enemy, the Mughals.
- **1722** - captured **Salsette and Bassein** from the Portuguese.
- **Shifted** the administrative capital from **Satara to Pune in 1728**.
- **Initiated** the **system of confederacy** among the Maratha chiefs.
 - **Each Maratha chief** was assigned a **territory** - could be **administered autonomously**.
- So, **Maratha families** became **prominent**.

- **Gaekwads** at Baroda
- **Bhonsles** at Nagpur
- **Holkars** at Indore
- **Scindias** at Gwalior
- **Peshwas** at Poona.

Balaji Baji Rao I/ Nana Sahib I (1740–61)

- **Succeeded his father** as Peshwa at the young age of nineteen.
- **Appointed** as Peshwa **by Shahuji**.
- **Defeated** Bengal Nawab **Alivardi Khan** and **1/3rd of Indian subcontinent** was **under the Marathas**.
- Entered into an **agreement with the Mughal Emperor in 1752** -
 - **Gave assurance** to Mughal Emperor that **he would protect the Mughal Empire** from internal and external enemies
 - Under it, Marathas fought the **Third Battle of Panipat (1761)**.

Third Battle of Panipat (1761)

- Fought b/w **Maratha** and **Afghan general Ahmed Shah Abdali of Durrani Empire in 1761**.
- **Abdali** was **supported by two Indian allies**—the Rohillas **Najib-ud-daulah**, Afghans of the Doab region and **Shuja-ud-Daula-the Nawab of Awadh**.
- **Marathas** **defeated** in the battle.

Madhav Rao (1761–1772)

- **Defeated** the **Nizam**, compelled **Haidar Ali** of Mysore to pay tribute, and reasserted control over northern India by defeating **Rohillas** and **subjugating Rajput and Jat chiefs**.
- **1772** - brought back **Emperor Shah Alam to Delhi**.

Mahadji Scindia - Maratha Maharaja of Gwalior state (1768-1794)

- **Instrumental in resurrecting** Maratha power in North India **after Third Battle of Panipat in 1761**,
- Along with **Madhavrao I** and **Nana Fadnavis**- one of **three pillars** of Maratha Resurrection.
- **Gwalior** became **leading state** in **Maratha Empire** and one of the foremost military powers in India.
- After **accompanying Shah Alam II in 1771** to Delhi, he **restored the Mughals in Delhi** and became the **Vakil-ul-Mutlaq (Regent of the Empire)**.
- **Annihilated** the power of **Jats** of Mathura.
- **During 1772-73-** **destroyed** the power of **Pashtun Rohillas in Rohilkhand** and captured **Najibabad**.
- First Anglo-Maratha War- **defeated British in Battle of Wadgaon** → **Treaty of Wadgaon**
- Central India - **Treaty of Salbai, 1782** → **mediated between Peshwa and British**.
- **1782** - **defeated Timur Shah Durrani** who had attacked Lahore to gain it back from the Sikhs.

- **After defeating the Afghans**, Mahadji Shinde and the Marathas **brought back three silver gates** taken from **Somnath Temple** stored in Lahore
- **Priests** of Gujarat **refused** to place them back on Somnath Temple
- Decided to **place these gates** in the **temples of Ujjain** instead.
- Seen in 2 temples of Madhya Pradesh, **Mahakaleshwar Jyotirlinga**, and **Gopal Mandir of Ujjain**.
- **1787- attempted to invade Rajputana - repulsed by Rajput armies at Lalsot.**
- **1790- defeated Rajput kingdoms of Jodhpur & Jaipur in battles of Patan and Merta.**

Raghunath Rao (1772–1773)

- **After Madhav Rao's death (1772), power struggle** ensued between **Raghunath Rao**, the **younger brother of Nana Sahib** and **Narayan Rao**, the **younger brother of Madhav Rao**.

Treaty of Purandar (1776)

- **Raghunath Rao sought the help of the British** stationed at Bombay and entered into an agreement k/a **Treaty of Surat**.
 - **British got Salsette and Bassein (Vasai)** and also part **revenues from Baruch and Surat**.
 - In return **Raghunath Rao got 2500 soldiers**.
- **Calcutta Council** of the East India Company **annulled Surat Treaty** and sent an officer, Colonel Upton to make a new agreement to Pune.
- New treaty - **Treaty of Purandar** signed by the **British Calcutta Council** with **Nana Phadnavis** representing the Peshwa.

Sawai Madhav Rao (1774–1795)

- **Son of Narayan Rao**, who was merely 40 days old when crowned as Peshwa.
- **Empire managed by Nana Phadnavis** with the help of a twelve member regency council called the **Barbhai Council**.
- Out of frustration, **Raghunath Rao went to the British for help** which resulted in the **First Anglo–Maratha war (1775–82)**.
- **Battle of Talegaon (1776) - Nana Phadnavis defeated the British** and the famous **treaty of Purandar (1776)** and the **treaty of Salbai (1782)** were signed.
- **Virtually restored the status quo** except the fact that the **English retained Salsette** and dropped the cause of Raghunath Rao.

Baji Rao II (1796–1818)

- **Son of Raghunath Rao** and the last Peshwa.
- **Weakest and most incompetent** Peshwa who signed the humiliating **Treaty of Bassein with the British (1802)** → gave the **British effective control** of not only the **Maratha region** but also of **Deccan and western India**.

- **Defeated by the East India Company** in the **Third Anglo– Maratha War in 1818 CE** after which the Peshwa's territory in central Maharashtra was annexed to the British East India Company's Bombay province, and he was pensioned.
- **Nana Sahib** (alias Dhondu Pant) was the **adopted son of Baji Rao II**, and he participated in the famous Revolt of 1857.

Post-Mughal Regions

Bengal

- **Murshid Quli Khan**, earlier the **Diwan of Bengal** (under Aurangzeb), became **virtually independent** but kept on sending tribute to the Mughal emperor.
- **1739 - Alivardi Khan deposed** the family of **Murshid Quli Khan** and **became the Nawab himself**.
- **Nawabs - brought stability** and peace to Bengal and at the same time **promoted agriculture, trade, and industry**.

Awadh

- Weakening of the Mughals → **Awadh** under governor **Saadat Khan Burhan ul Muluk**.
- **Disciplined** the local zamindars
- **Maintained** a well-paid, armed and **well-trained army**.
- **Death in c.1739 CE, Saadat Khan made his position as hereditary**.
- Successors - **Safdar Jung and Asaf ud Daulah** gave a **long-term administrative stability** to the Awadh province.

Punjab

- **Sikh religion began** around the time of the conquest of the Northern Indian Subcontinent by **Babur**.
- **Akbar, supported religious freedom** and after **visiting** the langar of **Guru Amar Das** got a favourable impression of Sikhism.
- **Jahangir** → **saw** the Sikhs as a **political threat**.
 - **Ordered Guru Arjun Dev**, who had been arrested for supporting the rebellious Khusrau Mirza, to **change the passage about Islam in Adi Granth**.
 - **Guru refused** → **put to death** by torture.
 - **Guru Hargobind** declared **Sikh sovereignty** in the creation of the **Akal Takht** and established a **fort to defend Amritsar**.
 - **Jahangir** attempted to **assert authority** over the Sikhs by **jailing Guru Hargobind at Gwalior**, but **released him** after many years when he no longer felt threatened.
- 9th Guru, **Guru Tegh Bahadur**, **moved** the Sikh community to **Anandpur** and travelled extensively to visit and preach in **defiance of Aurangzeb**, who attempted to install **Ram Rai as new guru**.

- Guru Tegh Bahadur **aided Kashmiri Pandits** in **avoiding conversion** to Islam
- **Arrested by Aurangzeb.**
- **Asked to convert to Islam or die** → **chose to die.**

Ranjit Singh

- His kingdom represented the **culmination of nearly a century of Sikh rebellions** against the Mughal rule.
- His rise to power was **based on superior military force**, partly **serviced by European mercenaries** and by the **strategic location** of his territories.
- **Applied the principles of statecraft intelligently.**
- **Captured Lahore in c.1799 CE** - used it to his economic advantage.
- By **1809** – the **undisputed master of Punjab.**
- **Rule lasted four decades**, from c.1799 to 1839 CE.
- **Within 10 years of his death**, the **British annexed Punjab.**

Ahmed Shah (1411-1441)

- **Grandson of Muzaffar Shah**
- **Real founder** of the kingdom of Gujarat - controlled the nobility, settled the administration, expanded and consolidated the kingdom.
- **Tried to extend his control over Rajput states** in the Saurashtra region (Girnar), those located on the Gujarat–Rajasthan border such as Jhalawar, Bundi, and Dungarpur.
- Pertained to be an **orthodox Muslim** who **imposed jaziya on the Hindus** in Gujarat and **destroyed several temples**
- **Appointed Hindus** to important **administrative positions.**
- **2 ministers Manik Chand and Motichand** were Hindus.
- **Founded** the city of **Ahmedabad** and made it his capital in 1413, shifting the **capital from Patan.**
- Also noted for **imparting justice.**

Malwa

- **Strategic position** - **situated on the high plateau** between the rivers **Narmada and Tapti**
 - **Commanded the trunk routes** between **Gujarat and northern India**, as also between north and south India.
- **After invasion of Timur**, in c.1401 CE, **Dilawar Khan Ghorī** who **belonged to the court of Firoz Shah Tughlaq**, **threw off his allegiance to Delhi**, though he **did not take the royal title of 'Sultan'.**
- **Shifted the capital from Dhar to Mandu**, renaming it **Shadiabad**, the city of joy -**highly defensible** and had a great deal of natural beauty.
- After his **death in 1405**, his son **Alp Khan** ascended the throne and acquired the **title of Hoshang Shah.**

Hoshang Shah (1406–35)

- **First formally appointed Islamic king of Malwa** who was a **bold and ambitious ruler.**
- Adopted a broad policy of **religious toleration** - inscription of the **Lalitpur temple.**
- Made **Mandu** one of the most **impregnable forts** of India.
- **Hoshangabad**, Madhya Pradesh founded by **Hoshang Shah.**

Mahmud Khalji (c.1436–1469 CE)

- The **son of Hoshang Shah**, under his reign the **Malwa Sultanate reached its greatest height.**
- An **ambitious ruler** who **fought with** almost all his neighbours— ruler of **Gujarat**, the **rajās of the Gondwana**, and **Orissa**, the **Bahmani Sultans**, and even an unsuccessful campaign against the **Delhi Sultanate.**
- **Prime targets** - south Rajputana states, especially Mewar.
- **Mahmud Khalji fought with Rana Kumbha** of Mewar- **both sides claimed victory.**
 - **Rana Kumbha** erected a **tower of victory** in Chittor, and the **Sultan** erected a **seven-storied column** at Mandu.

Ghiyas-ud-Din(1469-1500 CE)

- **Eldest son** of Mahmud Khalji.
- A period of **peace and prosperity.**
- **Succeeded by his son Nasir-ud-din** who ruled for **till 1510 CE.**
- **Next Sultan** was **Mahmud Shah II** who became the **last ruler of the Khalji dynasty of Malwa.**

Baz Bahadur (1555-1561 CE)

- **Mahmud Shah II surrendered** to **Bahadur Shah** the Sultan of Gujarat in **1531 C.E**
- **c.1531-1537 CE-** kingdom was under the control of **Bahadur Shah.**
- **c.1542 CE**, **Sher Shah Suri** conquered kingdom and **appointed Shujaat Khan** as the governor,
- His son, **Baz Bahadur**, **declared himself independent** in c.1555 CE.
 - **Baz Bahadur (1555-1561 CE)** - **last sultan of Malwa**
 - **Romantic liaison** with **queen Roopmati.**
- **c.1561 CE**, **Akbar's army** led by **Adham Khan** and **Pir Muhammad Khan** **attacked Malwa** and **defeated Baz Bahadur** in the **battle off Sarangpur**

Kashmir

- **Rajatarangini** by **Kalhana** in the mid12th century, stated that the **valley of Kashmir was formerly a lake.**
- A **forbidden land for all outsiders.**
- **Alberuni**, famous Arab traveller remarked in his work **Al-Hind** that **entry into Kashmir was not allowed even to the Hindus.**

-
- **11th century- rulers were followers of Shaivism** - central religion.
 - **Oppressive taxation, corruption, internal fights, and rise of the Damaras** (feudal lords) during the unpopular rule of the **Lohara dynasty** (1003–1320) paved the way for **foreign invasions** of Kashmir.
 - 1320 - **Suhadeva**, the last king of the **Lohara dynasty**, **fled** from Kashmir **after Zulju (Dalucha)**, a Turkic–Mongol chief, **led a savage raid** on Kashmir.
 - **1339 CE - Shamsuddin Shah** deposed the Shaiva ruler and **became the ruler of Kashmir** and from this period onwards, **Islam started influencing the Kashmiri society**.

- **A group of Sufi saints k/a Rishis** propagated a religion that combined features of **Hinduism and Islam**.
- **Islamic preacher Sheikh Nooruddin Noorani**, who is traditionally **revered by Hindus as Nund Rishi**, **combined** elements of **Kashmir Shaivism + Sufi mysticism** in his discourses.
- 14th century- under **Noorani, Islam** became **dominant religion** in Kashmir.
- **Akbar conquered Kashmir** and made it a part of the Mughal Empire in 1586, .



toppersnotes
Unleash the topper in you

28

CHAPTER

Religious Movements in Medieval Period

- **Bhakti saints** like Vallabhacharya, Ramanuja, Nimbaraka brought **new philosophical thinking** which had its **origin** in Shankaracharya's advaita (non-dualism) philosophy.

Vishistadvaita of Ramanujacharya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Means modified monism. • Ultimate reality - Brahman (God) and matter and soul are his qualities.
Sivadvaita of Srikanthacharya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ultimate Brahman is Shiva, endowed with Shakti. • Shiva exists in this world as well as beyond it.
Dvaita of Madhavacharya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Literal meaning - dualism which stands • In opposition to non-dualism and monism of Shankaracharya. • Believed that the world is not an illusion (maya) but a reality full of differences.
Dvaitadvaita of Nimbaraka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Means dualistic monism. • God transformed himself into world and soul → different from God (Brahman). • Could survive with the support of God only. • Separate but dependent.
Suddhadvaita of Vallabhacharya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brahman (God) was Sri Krishna who manifested himself as souls and matter. • God and soul are not distinct. • Stress was on pure non-dualism. • Philosophy came to be k/a Pushtimarga (the path of grace) and the school k/a Rudrasampradaya.

Bhakti Movement

- Refers to trend brought forward by Hindu saints during the medieval period.
- Sought to bring religious reforms by adopting method of devotion to achieve salvation.
- Prominent in south India and spread northwards.

- Swept over east and north India from the 15th century onwards, reaching its zenith between the 15th and 17th century.
- Began with the aim of reforming Hinduism against evil practices, the caste system and the dominance of Brahmanas.

Nayanars & Alvars

- Movement started with Saiva Nayanars and the Vaisnava Alvars
- Lived between 5th and 9th century CE.

Alvars	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vaishnava poet-saints who sang praises of Vishnu as they travelled from one place to another. • Established temple sites such as Srirangam, and spread ideas about Vaishnavism. • Various poems compiled: Alvar Arulicheyalgal or Divya Prabhandham, developed into an influential scripture for the Vaishnavas. • Alvar saints-Sri Andal, Thirumazhisai Alvar, Thiruppan Alvar, Nammalwar, Kulasekara Alvar
Nayanar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Saiva Nayanar poets influential. • Tirumurai - a compilation of hymns on Shiva by 63 Nayanar poet-saints, developed into an influential scripture in Shaivism. • Itinerant lifestyle helped create temple and pilgrimage sites and spread spiritual ideas built around Shiva. • Tamil-Siva bhakti poets influenced Hindu texts that came to be revered all over India. • Nayanar saints - Tiru Neelakanta, Viralminda, Meiporul, Amaraneedi, Yenathinathar, Eripatha

Nirguna & Saguna

- **Bhakti movement of Hinduism** - 2 ways of imaging the nature of the divine (Brahman) – **Nirguna and Saguna**.
 - **Nirguna Brahman** - Ultimate Reality as formless, without attributes or quality.
 - **Saguna Brahman**- envisioned and developed as with form, attributes and quality.

- **2 had parallels** in the ancient **pantheistic unmanifest** and **theistic manifest traditions**, respectively, and traceable to **Arjuna-Krishna dialogue in the Bhagavad Gita**.
- **Nirguna bhakta's poetry - Jnana-shrayi**, or had roots in knowledge.
- **Saguna bhakta's poetry - Prema-shrayi**, or with roots in love.
- **Emphasis - reciprocal love and devotion**, where the devotee loves God, and God loves the devotee.

Bhakti Saints

Sankaracharya

- **Great thinker, distinguished philosopher**, and leader of **Hindu revivalist movement** of the 9th century - gave a **new orientation to Hinduism**.
- **Born in Kalady (Kerala)**
- **Propounded the Advaita (Monism) philosophy** and **Nirgunabrahman** (god without attributes).
- **Gyaan (knowledge) alone can lead to salvation**.
- **Wrote commentary** on the **Bhagavad Gita**, on the **Brahma Sutra** and the **Upanishads**.
- **Wrote books like Upadesha Shastri, Viveka Chudamani, Bhaja Govindum Stotra**
- **Established mathas** at Sringeri, Dwarka, Puri, and Badrinath.

Ramanuja

- **Born at Sriperumbudur** near modern Chennai in the **12th century**.
- **Opposed the mayavada of Shankara** and **advocated** the philosophy of **Vishisht Advaita** (qualified monism), and **founded the Sri Vaishnava sect**.
- God is **Saguna Brahman**.
- **Considered Brahman to be Vishnu** or one of his avatars.
- **Wrote: Sribhashya, Vedanta dipa, Gita Bhasya, Vedantasara**

Madhavacharya

- **13th century** - Madhava from Kannada region propagated **Dvaita**
- **Brahman and the world - two equally real entities** and **not related** in any way.
- **God of dualism** - Hindu God, **Vishnu**.
- **Also founded the Brahma Sampradaya**.

Vallabhacharya

- **Born in Benaras in the 15th century** and lived at the court of **Krishnadeva Raya**.
- **Propounded the Shuddhadvaita (pure monism)**.
- **His system of thought** is aka **Brahma Vada**.
- **Entire universe is real** and delicately **Brahman**.
- **Individual souls** are in **quintessence with Brahman**.

- **Jiva, Kala (time) and Prakriti** are eternal existences.
- **No separate existence** apart from **Brahman**.
- **Worshipped Lord Krishna** under the title of **Srinathji**.
- **Founded the Rudra Sampradaya**.
- **Surdas - disciple**.

Chaitanya Mahaprabhu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ascetic Hindu monk, and social reformer of Bengal. ● Popularised the Krishna cult in the 16th century. ● Bhakti Movement in Bengal began to develop into a reform movement as it questioned social division on the basis of caste ● Popularised the Sankirtan/Kirtan system ● Proclaimed the universal brotherhood and condemned all distinctions based on religion and caste, and emphasised love and peace. ● Showed great empathy towards the suffering of other people ● Accepted disciples from all classes and castes, and his teachings are widely followed in Bengal even today. ● Biography of Chaitanya - by Krishnadas Kaviraj.
Jayadev	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Sanskrit poet during the 12th century. ● Known for his epic poem Gita Govinda <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Concentrates on Krishna's love with the gopi, Radha. ○ Presents the view that Radha is greater than Krishna, is considered an important text in the Bhakti movement of Hinduism.

Ramananda

- Originally the **follower of Ramanuja**.
- **Founded his own sect** and preached his principles in Hindi at **Benaras and Agra**.
- **Raised his voice** against the **increasing formalism of the orthodox cult**.
- **Founded** a new school of **Vaishnavism** based on the gospel of love and devotion.
- **Contribution - abolition** of distinctions of **caste** among his followers.
- Looked upon **Ram and not Vishnu** as the **object of bhakti**.
- **Worshipped Ram and Sita** a.
- **Identified** as the **founder of the Ram cult** in north India.
- Also **rejected caste hierarchies** and **preached** in the **local languages** in his attempt to popularise the cult.

- Followers k/a **Ramanandis**, like Tulsidas.
- **Emphasized on bhakti.**
- **2 schools of thought:**
 - **Orthodox school** – Represented by **Nabhadas, Tulsidas**
 - **Liberal** – Represented by **Kabir, Nanak, and other followers** included:
 - **Raidasa** – A cobbler whose songs are included in the **Guru Granth Sahib**
 - **Kabir** – A weaver who preached that Ram, Rahim, and Allah are all the same
 - **Sena** – A barber
 - **Sadhana** – A butcher
 - **Dhanna** – A farmer
 - **Narahari** – A goldsmith
 - **Pipa** – A Rajput prince

Dadu Dayal (1544–1603)

- **Major representative of the Nirguna Sant traditions in Northern India.**
- **From Gujarat**, who spent the best part of his spiritual life in Rajasthan.
 - **Foster son of a businessman** who had found him floating on the river Sabarmati.
- **'Dadu' means 'brother', and 'Dayal' means 'the compassionate one'.**
- **Followers** came to be k/a the **Dadu Panthis** who **set up ashrams** known as **Thambas** around the region in Rajasthan.
- **Emperor Akbar** was one of his **followers.**

Ravidas

- A **14th century saint** and **reformer** of the Bhakti movement in **North India.**
- **Born in Varanasi** in a cobbler's family.
- Gained prominence due to his **belief in one God** and his unbiased religious poems.
- **Dedicated** his whole life to the **abolition of the caste system** and openly **despised the notion of a Brahminical society.**
- **Adi Granth of Sikhs, + Panchvani** = two of the **oldest documented sources** of the **literary works** of **Guru Ravidas.**
- A **disciple** of the bhakti saint-poet **Ramananda** and a **contemporary** of the bhakti saint-poet **Kabir.**
- **Rejected** the idea that **people of lower caste cannot meet God.**
- **Only way to meet God** was to **free the mind from the duality**

Namdeva (1270–1350)

- A **poet-saint from Maharashtra** belonging to the **14th century**, who belonged to the **Varkari sect.**
- **Attracted individuals from diverse classes and castes** during community-driven bhajan singing sessions.

- **Remembered** in the **north Indian** monotheistic tradition as a **nirguna saint**
- **Maharashtra** - part of the **Varkari tradition** (the Vaishnava devotional tradition).
- **Considered** one the five **revered gurus** in the **Dadupanth tradition** within Hinduism, the other four being **Dadu, Kabir, Ravidas, and Hardas.**
- **His Abhangas** were **included** in the **Guru Granth Sahib.**

Sant Eknath

- A **prominent Marathi saint, scholar, and religious poet** of the **Varkari sampradaya**, belonging to the **16th century CE.**
- In the **development of Marathi literature**, Eknath is seen as a **bridge between his predecessors, Dnyaneshwar and Namdeva and the later Tukaram and Ramdas.**
- **Introduced** a new form of Marathi religious song called **Bharood.**
- Believed to be a **family man** and **emphasised** on the fact that **stay in monasteries or resignation from the world are not necessary for leading a religious life.**

Tukaram

- A **17th century poet-saint of the Bhakti movement** in Maharashtra
- A part of the **egalitarian Varkari devotionalism tradition** and was a **Sudra by birth.**
- **Known for his Avangas (dohas)**, which constitute the gatha devotional poetry, and community oriented worship with spiritual songs known as **kirtans.**
- **Poetry** was devoted to **Vitthala or Vithoba**, an avatar of the **Hindu God Vishnu.**
- A **contemporary of Shivaji** and was responsible for creating a **background for Maratha nationalism, 'Parmaratha'.**

Kabir

- Most famous **disciple of Ramananda**
- A **15th century Bhakti poet and saint**, whose verses are found in the Sikh holy scripture, **Adi Granth.**
- **Born near Benares to a Brahman widow**, but was **brought up** by a **Muslim couple** who were weavers by profession.
- **Learnt** about **Hinduism** and became familiar with **Islamic teachings** also.
- **Denounced idolatry and rituals** and laid great **emphasis on the equality of man before God.**
- **Regarded devotion to God** as an effective means of **salvation.**
- **Familiar with yogic practices.**
- Considered **neither asceticism nor book knowledge** important for **true knowledge.**

- Strongly **denounced the caste system, especially** the practice of **untouchability**.
- **Objective** - to **reconcile Hindus and Muslims** and establish harmony between the two sects.
 - To him **“Rama and Allah, temple and mosque”** were the same.
- Regarded as the **greatest of the mystic saints**
- **Followers** are called **Kabirpanthis**.
- **Bijak** is the best known of the **compilations of the compositions of Kabir**.

Guru Nanak

- **First Sikh Guru** and **founder of Sikhism**.
- A **Nirguna Bhakti Saint** and social reformer.
- **Born** in a Khatri household in the village of **Talwandi (now called Nankana)**, on the banks of the **river Ravi** in **c.1469 CE**.
- **Trained in Persian** to follow in his father’s footsteps (who was an accountant), but he was inclined towards mysticism.
- **Opposed to all distinctions of caste** as well as the religious rivalries and rituals
- **Preached the unity of god**
- **Condemned the formalism and ritualism** of both **Islam and Hinduism**.
- **Good deeds** alone would be **counted in god’s court of justice**.
- Conceived of **God as Nirakara** (formless)
- **Emphasis on the purity of character** and conduct as the **first condition of approaching God**, and the **need of a guru** for guidance.
- **Compositions** were **included in the Adi Granth** compiled by **Guru Arjan(1563-1606)**, the **fifth Sikh guru**.

Vaishnavite Bhakti

- **Bhakti Movement in north India** developed around the worship of **Ram and Krishna**, two of the incarnations of the God Vishnu.
- Followers of the **Krishna cult** founded the **RadhaBallabhi sect under HariVamsa** in **c.1585 CE**.
- **Early 16th century, Vallabacharya**, a popular bhakti saint **popularised the Krishna bhakti cult**.
- **Followed by Surdas** (c.1483–1563 CE) and **Mirabai** (c.1503–1573 CE).
 - **Sur Das** wrote **Sursagar in Braj Bhasha**, which is full of verses on the charm of **Lord Krishna** and his beloved **Radha**.
- **Mirabai** was the **great devotee of Krishna**, and she became **popular in Rajasthan** for her bhajans.
- **Vaishnava Bhakti Movement in Bengal** - influenced by the **Vaishnava Bhakti tradition** of the **Bhagavata Purana**, the **Sahajiya Buddhist**, and **Nathpanthi traditions**.

- **Focused on the esoteric and emotional aspects** of devotion.

Tulsidas (1511-1623 AD)

- Renowned for his **devotion to the deity Rama**.
- **A contemporary of Akbar**.
- Wrote **‘Ramcharit Manas’** aka **Tulsi-krita Ramayana**, in the **language of Avadhi**.
- **Founded the Sankatmochan Temple** dedicated to **Lord Hanuman in Varanasi**, believed to stand at the place where he had the sight of the deity.
- **Started the Ramlila plays**, a folk-theatre adaptation of the Ramayana.
- **Other works:** Dohavali, Sahitya ratna or Ratna Ramayan, Gitavali, Krishna Gitavali or Krishnavali and Vinaya Patrika.
- A **great scholar** and had made a **profound study of Indian philosophy and literature**.

Saint Thyagaraja (1767–1847)

- One of the **greatest composers of Carnatic music**
- **Composed** thousands of devotional compositions, most in Telugu and in **praise of Lord Ram**.
- Also **composed** the famous **Pancharatna Kritis** (meaning five gems).
- **Highly influential** in the development of the **classical devotional music tradition**.

Purandar Das

- A renowned **composer of Carnatic music**, a great devotee of the supreme Lord Krishna.
- **Vaishnava poet**, a **saint** and a **social reformer**.
- A **disciple of the celebrated Madhwa philosopher-saint Vyasa-tirtha**, and a **contemporary of yet another great laridasa, Kanakadasa**.
- One of the **chief founding-proponents of South Indian classical music** (Carnatic Music).
- **Often quoted as Karnataka Sangeeta Pitamaha**

Female Bhakti Poets

Mirabai

- **Known for her songs of devotion to Krishna** and for forsaking traditional women's roles to devote life to Krishna-worship.
- A **Bhakti saint, poet and mystic**, and also a Rani or princess.
- **Lived** from about **1498 - 1545**.
- **Born into a Rajput royal family**.
- **Contribution** to the Bhakti movement was primarily in her **music**.
 - Express **her love and devotion to Krishna**, almost always as Krishna's wife.
 - **Wrote** her songs in **Rajasthani and Braj Bhasa languages-** translated into **Hindi and Gujarati**.

Janabai

- Born around the 13th century in Maharashtra in a low-caste sudra family.
- Worked in upper-caste family of Namdev, one of most revered bhakti poet saints.
 - Continued to serve Namdev, both as a servant and as his devotee.
- Wrote over three hundred poems focusing on domestic chores and the restrictions facing her as a low-caste woman.

Bahinabai

- A poet-saint from 17th century Maharashtra, writing in the form of abangas, women's songs that accompanied their labors, especially in the fields.
- Writings are mainly autobiographical, recounting her childhood, puberty and married life.
- Despite having obvious conflicts with her husband due to her overarching and ecstatic love for her Divine Lover in the form of Lord Vithoba/ Krishna, she took her role as wife and responsibilities to her earthly husband seriously.
- Her poetry reflects an attitude of duty and respectful empathy toward both her marriage and her spouse.

Akkamahadevi

- Also known as Akka or Mahadevi
- Belonged to the southern region of Karnataka
- An ardent devotee of Shiva whom she addressed as Channamallikarjuna.

Veerashaiva / Lingayat Movement

- A Shaivite Hindu religious tradition in India.
- Followers k/a Lingayats.
- Founded, or revived by the 12th-century philosopher and statesman Basavanna in Karnataka.
- Composed hymns, known as vachanas (sayings), in Kannada and considered them as authoritative.
- Lingayat scholars thrived in northern Karnataka during the Vijayanagara Empire (14th-18th century).
- Veerashaivism means - Shaivism of the stalwarts or heroic Shaivism.
- Lingayats wear a small Shiva linga around their neck.
- Believed in worshipping only Shiva in the form of an ishtalinga.
- Rejected the Brahmanic idea of worshipping deities and doing good in order to go to heaven.
- Do not practise funerary rites such as cremation
- Soul in union with Siva - final state of experience k/a linganga-samarasya i.e. identity in essence between Linga (Siva) and anga (soul).

Sufism

- A mystical Islamic belief and practice in which Muslims seek to find the truth of divine love and knowledge through direct personal experience of God.
- Based on Pir-Murid (Teacher- student).
- Earliest known Sufis - Rabia al-Adawiya, Al-Junaid, and Bayazid Bastami.
- Al Hujwiri, - oldest Sufi in the sub-continent.
- 4 most popular Silsilahs - Chishtis, Suhrawardis, Qadiriya, and Naqshbandis.
- Divided into 12 orders each under a mystic Sufi saint like Khwaja Moinuddin Chishti, Fariuddin Ganj-i-Shakar, Nizam-ud-din Auliya etc.
- Sought an interpretation of the Qur'an on the basis of their personal experience
- Devotion is more important than fast (Roza) or prayer (Namaz).

Silsilas

- An Arabic word meaning chain, often used in various senses of lineage.
- Translated as "order" or "genealogy".
- Divided into two types:
 - Ba-shara - followed Islamic Law (Sharia) and its directives such as namaz and roza.
 - Beshara - not bound by the Sharia.

Chishti Silsilah

- Founded in a village called Khwaja Chishti.
- India - founded by Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti (born c. 1142) who came to India around 1192.
- Made Ajmer the main centre for his teaching.
- Died in Ajmer in 1236.
- Ajmer - a leading pilgrim centre because the emperors regularly visited the Sheikh's tomb.
- Disciples- Sheikh Hamiduddin of Nagaur and Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki.
- Sheikh Fariduddin of Ajodhan (Pattan in Pakistan) popularised the Chishti silsilah in modern Haryana and Punjab.
- Baba Farid respected by both Hindus and Muslims.
 - Disciple- Shaikh Nizamuddin Auliya (1238-1325) - responsible for making Delhi an important centre of the Chishti silsilah.
- Sheikh Nasiruddin Mahmud, popularly k/a Nasiruddin Chirag-i-Dilli (The Lamp of Delhi).

Suhrawardi Silsilah

- Founder - Sheikh Shihabuddin Suhrawardi.
- Established in India by Sheikh Bahauddin Zakariya (1182-1262).

- Accepted gifts, jagirs and even government posts in the ecclesiastical department.
- Firmly established in Punjab and Sind.

Naqshbandi Silsilah

- Established in India by Khwaja Bahauddin Naqshbandi.
- Propagated by his successors, Sheikh Baqi Billah and Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi.

Qadri Silsilah

- Initiated during the Mughal rule under the teachings of Sheikh Abdul Qadir and his sons, Shaikh Niamtullah, Mukhdum Muhammad Jilani, and Miyan Mir, who had enrolled the Mughal princess Jahanara and her brother Dara as disciples.
- Another prominent pir was Shah Badakhshani.

Sikhism

- Founder: Guru Nanak.
- 10 recognised Gurus in the Nanak line.

Guru Nanak (1469–1539)

- Founder, born in Talwandi near Lahore in a respectable family of accountants.
- Rejected the authority of the Vedas
- Preached the new idea of God as the supreme, universal, all-powerful, truthful, formless, fearless, without hate, self-existent, everlasting creator of all things, the eternal and absolute truth.
- Denounced caste distinctions and rituals
- Laid stress on concepts of justice, righteousness, and liberty.
- Advised people to follow the principles of conduct and worship: sach (truth), halal (lawful earning), khair (wishing well of others), niyat (right intention) and pangat (service to the lord)
- Philosophy - 3 basic elements: a leading charismatic personality (the Guru), ideology (Shabad), and organisation (Sangat).
- Repudiated idol worship and did not favour pilgrimage,
- Condemned formalism and ritualism.
- Introduced the concept of Langar
- Necessity of the guru in the worship of God conceptualised as Nirguna and Nirankar

Guru Ramdas (1574–81)

- Composed the four Lawans (stanzas) of the Anand Karaj, a distinct marriage code for Sikhs separate from the orthodox and traditional Hindu Vedic system.
- Had very cordial relations with Akbar.
 - Who granted him a plot of land where Harmandir Sahib was constructed.

- First brick of Harmandir Sahib - by Hazi Mian Mir
- Also laid the foundation stone of Chak Ramdas or Ramdas Pur, now called Amritsar.
- Strongly decried superstitions, caste system, and pilgrimages.

Guru Arjun Dev (1581–1606)

- Compiled the Adi Granth, i.e., Guru Granth Sahib, and installed it at Sri Harmandir Sahib.
- Completed construction of Amritsar, Taran, and Kartarpur.
- Executed by Jahangir for helping his rebellious son Khusrau
- Hailed as the first martyr of the Sikh religion, and as Shaheedan-de-Sartaj (The crown of martyrs).

Guru Hargobind (1606–1644)

- Longest tenure as Guru.
- Transformed Sikhs into a militant community.
- Established Akal Takht, and fortified Amritsar.
- Waged wars against Jahangir and Shah Jahan, and defeated a Mughal army at Sangrama.
- Took the title of Sachcha Padshah.
- Shifted his headquarters to Kartarpur.
- Proprietor of the concept of miri and piri (keeping two knives).

Guru Tegh Bahadur (1665–1675)

- A learned spiritual scholar and a poet whose 115 hymns are included in Sri Guru Granth Sahib.
- Revolted against Aurangzeb, but was executed by him before the public in Delhi's Chandni Chowk in 1675.
- Sis Ganj Sahib Gurudwara - at the site of his martyrdom today.
- Martyrdom remembered as the Shaheedi Divas of Guru Tegh Bahadur every year on 24 November.

Guru Gobind Singh (1675–1708)

- 10th Sikh Guru, a spiritual master, warrior, poet and philosopher.
- Last Sikh Guru in human form, who passed the Guruship of the Sikhs to the Guru Granth Sahib.
- Found Khalsa in 1699.
- Introduced the Five Ks:
 - Kesh (uncut hair),
 - Kangha (a wooden comb for the hair),
 - Kara (an iron bracelet),
 - Kachera (a 100% cotton tieable undergarment, must not be elastic), and
 - Kirpan (an iron dagger large enough to defend oneself with).

Socio-Religious Reform Movements

Raja Ram Mohan Roy

- “Father of the Indian Renaissance”.
- Born in 1772 in Radhanagar, a small village in Bengal.
- Studied Sanskrit literature and Hindu philosophy in Varanasi and Persian, Arabic and Quran in Patna.
- Great scholar and mastered several languages including English, Latin, Greek and Hebrew.

Social Reforms of Rammohan Roy

- **Abolished Sati** : Organised a movement against sati and helped William Bentinck to pass a law abolishing practice of sati (1829).
- **Education**: One of the earliest propagators of modern Western education.
 - Foundation of the Hindu College in Calcutta (Presidency College)
 - Established a Vedanta College.
 - Recognised the importance of vernaculars for spreading new ideas.
- **Samvad Kaumudi** was the most important journal brought out by him.
- **Religious Reforms**
 - Argued that Vedas and Upanishads upheld the doctrine of monotheism.
 - Translated Vedas and five Upanishads into Bengali.
 - In 1849 wrote Gift to Monotheism in Persian.
 - Believer in the philosophy of Vedanta (Upanishads).
 - In 1829 founded Atmiya Sabha (Brahmo Samaj)
 - Brahmo Samaj emphasised human dignity, criticised idolatry and denounced social evils like sati.
 - Opposed the caste rigidity as it destroys unity
 - Wanted to mould Hinduism into a new form to suit the requirements of the age.

Henry Vivian Derozio

- Started a radical movement for reform of Hindu Society, k/a Young Bengal Movement.
- Born in 1809- an Anglo-Indian (father Portuguese, mother Indian).
- In 1826 - age 17, joined Hindu College as teacher and taught there till 1831.

- Deeply influenced by revolutionary ideas of liberty, equality and fraternity.
- Inspired students to think rationally and freely, to question authority, to love liberty, equality and freedom and to worship truth.
- Followers were aka the Derozians.
- Condemned religious rites and the rituals, and pleaded for eradication of social evils, female education and improvement in the condition of women.
- He was removed from Hindu College because of radicalism; died soon after at age of 22.

Debendranath Tagore

- Father of Rabindranath Tagore, was responsible for revitalising the Brahmo Samaj.
- In 1839, founded the Tattvabodhini Sabha
- Through brahmo Samaj, actively supported widow remarriage, the abolition of polygamy, women’s education and improvement in condition of the peasantry.
- Compiled selected passages from Upanishads, which are k/a Brahma Dharma.
- Laid down fundamental principles of Natural Theism for acceptance of members of Samaj.

Keshab Chandra Sen

- Established "The British India Society" in 1855.
- Set up schools, organised famine relief and propagated widow remarriage.
- Joined Brahmo Samaj in 1857 and set up Brahmo School in 1859.
- In 1860 publish tracts and the first chapter was called, "Young Bengal, this is for you".
- In 1872 Native (Civil) Marriages Act legalising marriages according to Brahmo Samaj rites.
- Instrumental in popularising the movement, and branches of the Samaj were opened outside Bengal—in the United Provinces, Punjab, Bombay, Madras and other towns.

Pandit Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar

- Renowned Sanskrit scholar and became the Principal of the Sanskrit College in 1851.
- Sanskrit College conferred the title of ‘Vidyasagar’ because of his profound knowledge of Sanskrit.

- **Admitted non-Brahmin students to Sanskrit College**
- Supporter of **women's education & widow remarriage** (Widow Remarriage Act, 1856.)
- In **1849** supported John Elliot Drinkwater Bethune to **establish first permanent girls' school in India, the Bethune School, on May 7, 1849.**
- Wrote a **Bengali primer, 'Varna Parichay',** which is used even today.
- Associated with **prestigious journalistic publications** like **'Tattwabodhini Patrika', 'Somprakash', 'Sarbashubhankari Patrika' and 'Hindu Patriot'.**

Jyotibha Phule

- Fought for **improving condition of women, poor and untouchables.**
- Started a **school for education of girls of lower castes**
- **Founded** an association called **Satyasodhak Samaj.**
- **Opposed to domination of Brahmins**
- **Started practice** of conducting **marriages without Brahmin priests.**
- **Work was inspired by Thomas Paine.**
- **Father of Indian Social Revolution.**
- **Major Publications:** **Tritiya Ratna (1855); Powada: Chatrapati Shivajiraje Bhosle Yancha (1869); Gulamgiri (1873), Shetkarayacha Aasud (1881).**
- Bestowed with **title of Mahatma** on 11th May, 1888 by a **Maharashtrian social activist Vithalrao Krishnaji Vandekar.**

Dadabhai Naroji

- **"Grand Old Man of India"**
- Founded **Rahnumai Mazdayasnan Sabha in 1851** to revive **Zoroastrian religion.**
- In 1865 and 1866, Founded **London Indian Society and East India Association.**
- Founded **East India Association in 1867** for putting Indian views across to British public.
- **First Asian to become a British MP** - elected to House of Commons in **1892.**
 - Elected from **Finsbury Central** as a **Liberal Party representative.**
- **Member of Legislative Council of Mumbai during 1885 – 88**
- In 1885, became **vice-president of Bombay Presidency Association**
- **Nominated to Bombay legislative council** by Governor **Lord Reay**
- Helped form the **Indian National Congress.**
- **Congress President thrice, in 1886, 1893, and 1906.**
- In 1893, helped form an **Indian parliamentary committee** to attend to Indian interests.
- In 1895, became **member of royal commission on Indian expenditure.**
- Among key proponents of **'Drain Theory'**

- disseminating it in his **1901** book **'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India'.**

Ramakrishna Paramahansa

- No formal education but discourses were full of wisdom.
- Chief priest of **Kali temple at Dakshineswar near Calcutta.**
- Believed in **underlying unity among all religions** only methods of worship were different.
- **Believed that service to man was service to God,** man is embodiment of God on earth.
- Believed that **religious salvation could be attained through renunciation, meditation and devotion.**

Swami Vivekananda

- **Narendra Nath Dutta,** disciple of **Ramakrishna Paramhansa.**
- After death of Sri Ramakrishna, he became a **'sanyasi'** and **devoted his life to preaching and spreading Ramakrishna's message** to the people.
- **Condemned the caste- system, religious rituals, ceremonies and superstitions.**
- At Parliament of **World Religions in Chicago (1893),** spoke about Hindu religion at length.
- His brilliant speech on Hindu philosophy was well received.
- American newspapers described him as an **'Orator by Divine Right'.**

Swami Dayanand Saraswati

- **Mul Shankar Tiwari**
- Founder of **Arya Samaj** on **April 7, 1875.**
- **First to call for Swaraj** as **"India for Indians"** in **1876**
- Sri Aurobindo and S. Radhakrishnan called him one of the **"makers of Modern India".**
- **Believed in the infallible authority of Vedas.**
- Advocated **doctrine of Karma and Reincarnation.**
- Emphasized **Vedic ideals of Brahmacharya, including celibacy and devotion to God.**
- Promoted **equal rights for women,** regarding education and reading of Indian scriptures.
- Major contribution is **Satyartha Prakash.**
- Other books include **Sanskar Vidhi, Rig Veda Bhashyam.**
- Introduced **Anglo-Vedic schools** to offer Indian students an updated curriculum teaching
 - **Knowledge of Vedas along with contemporary English education.**
- Given **epithet of Maharishi** and is considered as **Makers of Modern India.**
- **Shuddhi Movement** was introduced to bring back the individuals to Hinduism.

M G Ranade

- Popularly referred as **Justice Ranade**
- Founding member of Indian National Congress.
- Established **Vaktruttvottejak Sabha, the Poona Sarvajanic Sabha, Maharashtra Granthottejak Sabha, and the Prarthana Samaj, and edited a Bombay Anglo-Marathi daily paper, the Induprakash**, founded on his ideology of social and religious reform.
- Summarized mission of Indian Social Reform Movement as being to **Humanize, Equalize and Spiritualize**.
- Co-founded and championed activities of **Prarthana Samaj**.
- Campaigned against 'purdah' system (keeping women behind the veil).
- Founder of **Social Conference** movement.
- 1861-Co-founded '**Widow Marriage Association**' promoted marriage for Hindu widows.

Sir Syed Ahmad Khan

- A section of Muslims led by Syed Ahmed Khan was ready to allow the official patronage to stimulate a process of growth among Indian Muslims through better education and employment opportunities.
- **Loyalty earned him a knighthood in 1888.**
- Wanted to reconcile **western scientific education with teachings of the Quran.**
- **Argued Muslims should first concentrate on education and jobs**
- **1859** completed - **Tarikh Sarkashi-I Dhillah Bijnor** (History of insurrection in **Bijnor district**) and **Asbab Baghawat Hind** (causes for the revolt of India).
- **1864** established- **Scientific Society** - translated European scientific works into Urdu and arranged public lectures on scientific subjects.
- Released two journals: **Aligarh Institute Gazette & Tehzibul Akhlaq**, (Mohammedan Social Reformer in English)
- **All-India Muhammadan Educational Conference** - Established in 1886
 - Sought to channel restless flow of Muslims' energies
 - Accentuated by rising expectations of educated youth, into a national organization.
- In 1875 founded **Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College in Aligarh.**
 - Urdu name- **Madrasatul Uloom**
 - Now recognised as **Aligarh Muslim University**

Hindu Reform Movements

Brahmo Samaj

- renamed as **Brahmo Samaj**
- Started at Calcutta on **20 August 1828** by **Raja Ram Mohan Roy**.
- **Objectives:**
 - Worship of the **eternal God**.

- **Against priesthood**, rituals and sacrifices.
- **Focused on prayers, meditation** and reading of scriptures.
- Believed in the **unity of all religions**.
- Led to **emergence of rationalism and enlightenment** in India
- Indirectly contributed to **nationalist movement**.
- Raja Ram Mohan Roy did not want to create another religion.
 - Wanted to **purify Hinduism**.
- **Following doctrines**, as noted in **Renaissance of Hinduism**, common to all varieties and offshoots of the Brahmo Samaj:
 - **No faith in any scripture as an authority.**
 - **No faith in Avatars**
 - **Denounce polytheism and idol-worship.**
 - **Against caste restrictions.**
 - **Faith in the doctrines of Karma and Rebirth optional.**

Debendranath Tagore and Brahmo Samaj

- Gave new life to Brahmo Samaj, joined in 1842.
- Earlier, headed **Tattvabodhini Sabha (founded in 1839)**
 - Devoted to systematic study of India's past with a rational outlook.
- **Worked on two fronts:**
 - within Hinduism, the Brahmo Samaj was a reformist movement;
 - Outside, it opposed Christian missionaries for their criticism of Hinduism and their attempts at conversion.
- **Revitalised Samaj supported widow remarriage, women's education, abolition of polygamy, improvement in ryots' conditions and temperance.**

Keshab Chandra Sen and the Brahmo Samaj

- **Keshab Chandra Sen (1838-1884)** - acharya by **Debendranath Tagore** soon after he joined the Samaj in 1858.
- Instrumental in popularising the movement
- **Branches** of Samaj were opened **outside Bengal**—in the United Provinces, Punjab, Bombay, Madras and other towns.
- **Debendranath did not like some of Sen's ideas;** Found **too radical**- such as cosmopolitanizing of Samaj's meetings by inclusion of teachings from all religions
 - Strong views **against the caste system**
 - Open support to **inter-caste marriages**.
- **Sen was dismissed** from the **office of acharya** in **1865**.
- **Keshab and his followers** founded **Brahmo Samaj of India** in **1866**,
 - **Debendranath Tagore's Samaj** came to be k/a the **Adi Brahmo Samaj**.

- In **1878**, **Keshab's** married his **thirteen-year-old** daughter to minor Hindu Maharaja of Cooch-Bihar with all the orthodox Hindu rituals
 - Caused **another split** in Keshab's Brahmo Samaj of India.
- After **1878**, disgusted followers of Keshab set up a new organisation
 - **Sadharan Brahmo Samaj and sen's followers formed the Nava-Vidhana.**
- **Sadharan Brahmo Samaj**- started by **Ananda Mohan Bose, Shibchandra Deb and Umesh Chandra Datta.**
 - Reiterated Brahmo doctrines of **faith in a Supreme being, one God**, the belief that no scripture or **man is infallible**, belief in the dictates of reason, truth and morality.
- In Punjab, **Dayal Singh Trust** sought to **implant Brahmo ideas** by opening of **Dayal Singh College at Lahore in 1910.**

Prarthana Samaj

- Founded by **Dadoba Pandurang and his brother Atmaram Pandurang in 1863.**
- Became popular after **Mahadev Govind Ranade** joined.
- Advocated **reforms of social system of Hindus.**
- **Spread to southern India** by noted Telugu reformer and writer, **Kandukuri Veeresalingam.**
- **Precursor of Prarthana Samaj in Mumbai was Paramahansa Sabha**
 - **Secret society** for furtherance of liberal ideas by **Ram Balkrishna Jaykar** and others in Mumbai.
- Emphasised on **monotheism**
- More concerned with social reforms than religion.
- **Relied on education and persuasion and did not confront Hindu orthodoxy.**
- **Four-point social agenda:**
 - Disapproval of caste system
 - Women's education
 - Widow remarriage
 - Raising the age of marriage for both males and females
- **Dhondo Keshav Karve and Vishnu Shastri** were **champions of social reform with Ranade.**
- Along with Karve, Ranade founded **Widow Remarriage Movement** as well as **Widows' Home Association** to provide education and training to widows so that they could support themselves.

Arya Samaj

- **Monotheistic Indian Hindu reform movement**
- Promoted values based on belief in infallible authority of Vedas.
- **Founded by Maharishi Dayanand Saraswati on 10 April 1875 in Bombay.**

- **Organized in local samajas ("societies") that sent representatives to provincial samajas and to an all-India samaja.**
- **Each local samaja elects** its own officers in a democratic manner.
- **Features:**
 - **Opposed idol worship**, animal sacrifice, shraddha (rituals on behalf of ancestors), **caste upon birth rather than merit**, untouchability, child marriage, pilgrimages, priestly craft, and temple offerings.
 - **Upholds infallibility of Vedas, doctrines of karma** (the accumulated effect of past deeds) and **samsara** (the process of death and rebirth), sanctity of the cow, the importance of the **samskaras** (individual sacraments), efficacy of Vedic oblations to the fire, and programs of social reform.
 - Worked to further **female education and intercaste marriage**
 - **Built orphanages, and homes for widows** established a network of schools and colleges; and famine relief and medical work.
- **Fixed minimum marriageable age for boys-25 and for girls-16**
- **Intercaste marriages and widow remarriages** were also encouraged.
- Helped people in crises like floods, famines and earthquakes.
- Attempted to give **new direction to education.**
 - **Dayanand Anglo-Vedic (D.A.V.) schools**, established at **Lahore in 1886**
 - Sought to emphasise the importance of Western education.
 - **Swami Shradhanand** started **Gurukul at Haridwar in 1902**
 - To impart **education** in the **traditional framework.**
- **Social ideals comprised**
 - **Fatherhood of God** and brotherhood of Man
 - **Gender equality**
 - **Absolute justice** and fair play b/w man and man and nation and nation.
- Samaj started **shuddhi (purification) movement** to **reconvert** to the **Hindu fold** who got **converted** to **Christianity and Islam.**

Paramhansa Mandali

- Founded in **1849** in **Maharashtra** by **Dadoba Pandurang, Mehtaji Durgaram and others.**
- Ideology of society was closely linked to **Manav Dharma Sabha.**
- Believed in **one god** and real **religion** is based on **love and moral conduct.**

- **Freedom of thought** was encouraged as a rationality.
- **Founders of mandali** were primarily interested in **breaking caste rules**.
- **Advocated widow remarriage** and women's education.
- Branches of Paramahansa Mandali existed in **Poona, Satara** and other towns of Maharashtra.

Young Bengal Movement

- Launched in Calcutta by **Derozians** from Hindu College.
- **Posed an intellectual challenge to religious and social orthodoxy of Hinduism**.
- k/a **Bengal Renaissance in early 19th century Bengal**.
- **Carried Raja Rammohan's tradition of educating the people in social, economic and political questions** through newspapers, pamphlets and public associations.
- **Carried on public agitation on public questions** such as revision of Company's Charter, freedom of the Press, better treatment for Indian labour in British colonies abroad, trial by jury, protection of the riots from oppressive zamindars, and employment of Indians in the higher grades of government services.
- **Criticism: Unsuccessful** because **failed to gather support** from **other Bengali academics**.

Satyasodhak Samaj

- Founded by **Jyotiba Phule in Pune, Maharashtra, on 24 September 1873**.
- Leadership came **from backward classes, malis, telis, kunbis, saris and dhangars**.
- **Aim: social service, spread of education among women and lower caste people**.
- Phule's works - **Sarvajanic Satyadharma and Gulamgiri**, sources of inspiration
- Used **symbol of Rajah Bali** as **opposed to brahmins' symbol of Rama**.
- Published **Deenabandhu** newspaper from 1877 to 1897.
- **Emphasized special importance of English education** vital in building occupational skills
 - Served as the basis for **intellectual emancipation of disadvantaged groups**.
 - Believed that **English education might open opportunities for employment** with British Government.
- Samaj's view of colonial government went **against nationalist groups** at the time.
- Through the **tamashas (traditional Marathi theatre)**, **Samaj** was able to **connect its activities** and those of **non-Brahman leaders** with **general peasant interests**.

Servants of India Society

- Founded by **Gopal Krishna Gokhale in 1905**.
- First secular organization and devoted itself to the **underprivileged, rural and tribal people, emergency relief work, the increase of literacy**, and other social causes.
- Members go through a 5-year training period and serve on extremely modest **salaries**.
- **1915- Gokhale was succeeded as president** by **Srinivasa Sastri**.
- **Headquarters - Pune (Poona) and branches in Chennai (Madras), Mumbai (Bombay), Allahabad, Nagpur**, and other locales.
- Organized many campaigns to **promote education, sanitation, health care**, and fight the social evils of untouchability and discrimination, alcoholism, poverty, oppression of women, and domestic abuse.
- Publication of **The Hitavada, the organ of the Society in English from Nagpur commenced in 1911**.

Ramakrishna Movement

- **Teachings of Ramakrishna Paramhansa (1834-86)**, formed the **basis**
- Based on Vedanta.
- **Objectives:**
 - To promote a **life of renunciation and practical spirituality**
 - To carry on **preaching, philanthropic and charitable works**, looking upon all men, women and children, **irrespective of caste, creed or colour**, as veritable manifestations of the Divine.
- **Paramahansa laid the foundations** of the **Ramakrishna Math** with his young monastic disciples as a nucleus to fulfil the first objective.
- **Second objective** was taken up by **Swami Vivekananda** founded the **Ramakrishna Mission in 1897**.
- **Headquarters of Ramakrishna Math and Mission** are at **Belur near Calcutta**.
- Took care of **religious developments of the people**.
- Laid **emphasis not on personal salvation but on social good and social service**.
- Stood for religious and **social reform based on the ancient culture** of India.
- **Emphasis on the essential spirit of Hinduism** and not on rituals.
- Believed that **servicing a human being was the same as worshipping God**.
- Opened a chain of schools, hospitals, orphanages and libraries throughout the country.
- Provided relief during famines, earthquakes and epidemics.

Self-Respect Movement

- Founded in **1925** by **E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker** (aka **Periyar**) in **Tamil Nadu** to **oppose Casteism, Brahmanism** etc.
- Number of **political parties** in **Tamil Nadu**, such as **Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)** and **All India Anna Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (AIADMK)** owe their **origins** to the **Self-respect movement**, the latter a **1972 breakaway** from the **DMK**.
- **Objectives of Self-Respect Movement** have been outlined and stated in two pamphlets "**Namathu Kurikkol**" and "**Tiravitakkalaka Lateiyam**":
 - aims to **do away with caste based social structure** of the society
 - work for **getting equal opportunities for all people**, irrespective of their communities it will strive to secure equal status for women along with men in life and according to law.
 - Completely **eradicate untouchability**
 - **Establish a united society** based on brotherhood and sisterhood.
 - Establish and maintain **homes for orphans and widows** and to run educational institutions.
 - Common **funds should be utilized for educational purposes** and for creating employment opportunities for the unemployed.
- **Against Hindu orthodoxy.**
- Led to **promotion of inter-caste and inter-religious marriages** and legalization of marriages without Brahman priests.
- **Post-independence, Tamil Nadu** passed a law and became the **first state to legalise Hindu marriage without a Brahmin priest.**
- System of allotting **separate places for Harijan members in the Municipal Councils** was also discontinued.

Muslim Reform Movements

Deoband School

- **Deoband Movement** begun at **Darul Uloom** in **Saharanpur district** (United Provinces) in **1866** by **Mohammad Qasim Nanotavi** (1832-80) and **Rashid Ahmed Gangohi** (1828-1905) to **train religious leaders** for the Muslim community.
- **Twin objectives:**
 - pure **teachings of the Quran and Hadis** among Muslims
 - Keeping alive **spirit of jihad** against **foreign rulers.**
- **Aim** was **moral and religious regeneration** of the **Muslim community.**
- **Instruction** imparted in the **original Islamic religion.**

- **Welcomed** the formation of the **Indian National Congress**
- **1888** - Issued a **fatwa** (religious decree) **against Syed Ahmed Khan's organisations**, the **United Patriotic Association** and the **Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Association.**
- **Mahmud-ul-Hasan**, the **Deoband leader**, gave a **political and intellectual content** to the religious ideas of the school.
 - Worked out a synthesis of Islamic principles and nationalist aspirations.
- **Shibli Numani** - **supporter of Deoband school**, **favoured the inclusion of English language and European sciences** in the system of education.
 - Founded **Nadwatal Ulama and Darul Uloom in Lucknow in 1894-96.**

Ahmadiyya Movement

- **Sect of Islam** which **originated** from India.
- **Started around 1899** at a town **Quadiyan (Gurudaspur, Punjab)** under the leadership of **Mirza Ghulam Ahmed of Quadim (1835-1908).**
- Emphasized that **Islam is the final dispensation for humanity** as revealed to Muhammad
- **Emphasized humanitarian and universal character of Islam.**
- **Strictly a political movement.**
- **Conservative in social morals.**
- **Ahmadi community** better educated and more prosperous compared to other Muslims.
- **Movement split into two** following the **death of Ahmad's successor, Maulana Nur ad-Din in 1914** into **Quadiyani and Lahori.**

Aligarh Movement

- Emerged as liberal, modern trend among the Muslim intelligentsia **based in Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College, Aligarh.**
- **It aimed at spreading**
 - **Modern education among Indian Muslims** without weakening their allegiance to Islam;
 - **Social reforms among Muslims** relating to purdah, polygamy, widow remarriage, women's education, slavery, divorce, etc.
- Ideology based on **liberal interpretation of Quran**
- Sought to **harmonise Islam with modern liberal culture.**
- Wanted to impart a **distinct socio-cultural identity to Muslims** on modern lines.
- **Aligarh became centre of religious and cultural revival** of Muslim community.

Wahabi/Waliullah Movement

- Founded by **Shah Waliullah (1702-1763)** of Rae Bareilly.
- **First Indian Muslim** leader of **18th century** to **organise Muslims** around the **two-fold ideals** of this movement:
 - **Desirability of harmony** among 4 schools of Muslim jurisprudence
 - **Recognition of individual conscience** in religious interpretations
- Teachings **further popularised** by **Shah Abdul Aziz and Syed Ahmed Barelvi** who also gave them a political perspective.
- **Un-Islamic practices** that had crept into Muslim society were sought to be **eliminated**.
- **India** was considered to be **dar-ul-Harb (land of the kafirs)** and it **needed to be** converted to **dar-ul-Islam** (land of Islam).
- **Initially**, the movement was **directed at the Sikhs in Punjab** but **after** the British annexation of Punjab (1849), **Directed against the British**.

Faraizi Movement

- Founded by **Haji Shariatullah** in 1818.
- **Scene of action = East Bengal**
- **Aimed at eradication of social innovations or un-Islamic practices**.
- **1840** onwards, under the **leadership** of **Haji's son, Dudu Mian**, movement became **revolutionary**.
- Gave **movement** an **organisational system** from the village to the provincial level with a khalifa or authorised deputy at every level.
- Fara'idis **organised paramilitary force** armed with clubs to fight the zamindars who were mostly Hindu, though there were some Muslim landlords too, besides the indigo planters.

- **Asked** his followers **not to pay rent**.
- **Organisation** established its own **Law courts**.
- Arrested several times, and his **arrest** in **1847** finally **weakened the movement**.
- Movement survived merely as a religious movement without political overtones after the death of Dudu Mian in 1862.

Theosophical Movement

- **H.P. Blavatsky (1831- 1891)** and **Colonel M.S. Olcott** founded **Theosophical Society** in **New York City, United States** in **1875**.
- In **1882**, shifted their **headquarters** to **Adyar**, outskirts of **Madras** (at that time) in India.
- Believed that a **special relationship** could be established **b/w a person's soul and God** by contemplation, prayer, revelation, etc.
- **Accepted Hindu beliefs** in reincarnation and karma,
- **Drew inspiration from philosophy** of the **Upanishads** and **samkhya, yoga** and **Vedanta** schools
- **Aimed** to work for **universal brotherhood** of **humanity** without distinction.
- Sought to investigate the unexplained laws of nature and the powers latent in man.
- **Opposed child marriage** and advocated the abolition of caste discrimination, uplift of outcastes, and improvement in the condition of widows.
- In **India**, movement became **popular** with the election of **Annie Besant (1847-1933)** as its **president** after the death of Olcott in 1907.
- Annie Besant came to **India** in **1893**, laid the **foundation** of the **Central Hindu College** in **Benaras** in **1898**.
- **College** became the **nucleus** for **formation** of **Banaras Hindu University** in **1916**.
- Worked for the cause of education of women.

30

CHAPTER

Establishment of British Rule in India

Arrival of Europeans in India

1. Portuguese

Important Personalities

Vasco Da Gama	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Arrived at Calicut in May 1498 Received permission to establish business by King Zamorin of Calicut At Cannanore, he set up a trading factory.
Pedro Alvarez Cabral	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Established first European factory in India in 1500 at Calicut Successfully retaliated Arab attack on Portuguese Bombarded Calicut and made advantageous treaties with rulers of Cochin and Cannanore
Francisco De Almeida	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In 1505, Francisco De Almeida tried to consolidate the position of Portuguese in India. He built fortresses at Anjadiva, Cochin, Cannanore and Kilwa. Vision: to make the Portuguese the master of the Indian Ocean. His policy was k/a the Blue Water Policy and cartaze system.
Alfonso de Albuquerque	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Real founder of the Portuguese power in India. Introduced a permit system for other ships. Acquired Goa in 1510 and Goa became "the first bit of Indian territory to be under the Europeans since the time of Alexander the Great". Encouraged Portuguese men to take local wives and stressed the abolition of sati

Portuguese Establishments in India

- Occupied **regions around the coast of Goa from Mumbai to Daman and Diu and then to Gujarat**, they controlled four important ports and towns and villages.
- Established **military posts and settlements** on the east coast at **San Thome (in Chennai)** and **Nagapattinam (in Andhra)**.
- Imperial farman circa 1579** made them settle near **Satgaon in Bengal** for trading activities.

Portuguese Policies in India

- Monopolised the manufacture of salt**,
- Built a **custom house** and started **levying a duty on tobacco**.
- Started **slave trade**, purchased Hindu and Muslim children and converted to Christianity.
- Religious Policy of the Portuguese**
 - Zeal to **promote Christianity**.
 - Intolerant** toward Muslim and Hindu religions.

2. Dutch

- In 1596, **Cornelis de Houtman** → **first Dutchman to reach Sumatra and Bantam**.
- In 1602, many trading companies amalgamated → **EIC of the Netherlands**.
- Company was **empowered to carry out war, conclude treaties, to take possession of territory and to erect fortresses**.

Dutch Settlements in India

- First factory in Masulipatnam (in Andhra) in 1605**.
- In 1609 opened a **factory in Pulicat**, north of Madras.
- Other principal factories at **Surat (1616), Bimlipatam (1641), Karaikal (1645), Chinsurah (1653), Baranagar, Kasimbazar (near Murshidabad), Balasore, Patna, Nagapatam (1658), Cochin (1663)**.

Trade under Dutch in India

- Manufactured:**
 - Indigo:** the Yamuna valley and Central India,
 - textiles and silk:** Bengal, Gujarat and the Coromandel,
 - Saltpeter:** Bihar
 - Opium and rice:** the Ganga valley.
- Monopolized trade in black pepper and spices.**
- In the **Third Anglo-Dutch War (1672-74)** English ships were captured in Bay of Bengal by Dutch forces → retaliation by the English → defeat of the Dutch in the **battle of Hooghly (1759)**.
- Battle of Colachel (1741)** b/w Dutch and the **king of Travancore Marthanda Varma** leading to complete rout of Dutch power in the Malabar region.
- Anglo-Dutch Treaty (1814):**
 - Facilitated the **restoration of Dutch Coromandel and Dutch Bengal to Dutch rule**
 - Anglo-Dutch Treaty (1824)** returned these places to **British**

3. British

- **Factors contributed:**
 - **Charter of Queen Elizabeth I** → Francis Drake's voyage the world in **1580**
 - **English victory over the Spanish Armada in 1588**
- **On December 31, 1600**, Queen Elizabeth I issued a charter with **rights of exclusive trading** to the company named the '**Governor and Company of Merchants of London trading into the East Indies**'.
- Initially, a **monopoly of 15 years** was granted, extended indefinitely in **May 1609**

Expansion of the English Company

a. Expansion in West and South

1609	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Captain Hawkins arrived at Jahangir court to establish a factory at Surat but failed● Faced opposition from the Portuguese● Left Agra in November 1611.
1611	Started trading at Masulipatnam and later established a factory in 1616.
1612	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Captain Thomas Best defeated the Portuguese in the sea off Surat;● Received permission from Jahangir to establish a factory at Surat under Thomas Aldworth in 1613.
1615	Sir Thomas Roe , an accredited ambassador of James I, came to the court of Jahangir, staying there till February 1619.
1632	Received ' Golden Farman ' issued by the Sultan of Golconda
1662	Bombay had been gifted to King Charles II by the King of Portugal as a dowry when Charles married the Portuguese princess Catherine.
1687	The seat of the Western Presidency shifted from Surat to Bombay

b. Expansion in Bengal

- **Shah Shuja**, the subahdar of Bengal in **1651**, allowed the **English to trade in Bengal** in return for an annual payment of Rs 3,000, in lieu of all duties.
- **Factories in Bengal: Hooghly (1651)**, Kasimbazar, Patna and Rajmahal.
- **William Hedges**, the first governor of the Company in Bengal, **appealed to Shayista Khan**, the Mughal governor of Bengal in **August 1682**, for redressal of the grievance.
 - Resulted in **hostilities b/w the English and the Mughals**.
- The English captured the **imperial forts at Thana** (modern Garden Reach) and **raided Hijli** in east **Midnapur** and the **Mughal fortifications at Balasore**.

- English bought the **zamindari of the three villages of Sutanuti, Gobindapur and Kalikata (Kalighat)** from their owners on payment of Rs 1,200.
- Established **Fort William in 1700**,
 - **Seat of the eastern presidency** (Calcutta)
 - First President: **Sir Charles Eyre**

Farrukhsiyar's Farmans

- In 1715, **John Surman** secured **farmans** from **Farrukhsiyar**, giving the Company **privileges in Bengal, Gujarat and Hyderabad**.
- **Magna Carta of the Company** and its terms were:
 - **In Bengal:**
 - **Imports and exports were exempted** from additional customs duties in Bengal, accepting the annual payment of 3,000 rupees as settled earlier.
 - **Permitted to issue dastaks** for the transportation of such goods.
 - **Permitted to rent more lands** around Calcutta.
 - **In Hyderabad**, the **privilege of duty-free trade** and **paying rent only for Madras**.
 - **In Surat**, for an annual payment of 10,000 rupees, **exempted from levy of all duties**.
 - Coins of the **Company minted in Bombay**.

4. French

- **Last Europeans to come to India to trade**.
- **Louis XIV**, the king's famous minister Colbert laid the foundation of the **Compagnie des Indes Orientales (French EIC) in 1664**.
- Granted a **50-year monopoly on French trade** in the Indian and Pacific Oceans.
- In **1667**, **Francois Caron** headed an expedition to India, setting up a **factory in Surat**.
- **Mercara**, a Persian who accompanied Caron, **founded another French factory in Masulipatnam in 1669** after obtaining a patent from the **Sultan of Golconda**.
- In **1673**, French obtained permission from **Shaista Khan**, Mughal Subahdar of Bengal, to establish a **township at Chandernagore near Calcutta**.
- In 1673, **Sher Khan Lodi**, the governor of Valikandapuram (under the Bijapur Sultan), granted **Francois Martin**, the director of the Masulipatnam factory, a site for a settlement.
- **In 1674, Pondicherry was founded**, and **Francois Martin** became **French governor**.
- Established its factories in coastal regions of India.
- Important trading Centers: **Mahe, Karaikal, Balasore and Qasim Bazar**
- **Dutch captured Pondicherry in 1693**.
- **Treaty of Ryswick** concluded in **September 1697** and **restored Pondicherry** to the French

5. Danes (Denmark)

- In 1616, the Danish EIC was founded.
- In 1620, a factory at **Tranquebar** (Tanjore) was established.

- **Principal settlement:** at **Serampore near Calcutta**.
- **Danish factories** were sold to **British** in 1845.
- Danes are better **known** for their **missionary activities** than for commerce.

Carnatic Wars

<p>First Carnatic War (1740-48)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extension of the Anglo-French War in Europe caused by the Austrian War of Succession. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ English navy under Barnet seized French ships to provoke France. ◦ Admiral La Bourdonnais, French governor of Mauritius, retaliated by seizing Madras in 1746 with the help of the fleet from Mauritius. • Ended in 1748 with Treaty of Aix-La Chapelle <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Madras was handed back to the English, and the French got territories in North America. • Remembered for the Battle of St. Thome (in Madras) fought b/w the French forces and the forces of Anwar-ud-din, the Nawab of Carnatic, to whom the English appealed for help.
<p>Second Carnatic War (1749-54)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dupleix, the French governor → sought to increase his power and French political influence in southern India • Hyderabad → After the death of Nizam-ul-Mulk → civil war b/w Nasir Jang (son) and Muzaffar Jang (grandson) <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Nasir Jang Musafar Jang</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Claimed the Throne of Hyderabad</div> </div> </div> • Carnatic → Anwar-ud-din Khan vs Chanda Sahib. <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Anwaruddin Khan Chandha Sahib</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Claimed the Throne of Carnatic</div> </div> </div> • French supported Muzaffar Jang and Chanda Sahib while English sided Nasir Jang and Anwar-ud-din. <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Dupleix + Chandha Sahib + Musafar Jang</div> <div style="text-align: center;">Battle of Ambur 1749</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Defeated and killed anwar-ud-din khan and made the Chandha Sahib the Nawab of Carnatic</div> </div> </div> • War ended with the Treaty of Pondicherry in 1754
<p>Third Carnatic War (1758-63)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Europe, when Austria wanted to recover Silesia in 1756, the Seven Years' War (1756-63) started. • In 1758, the French army under Count de Lally captured the English forts of St. David and Vizianagaram in India in 1758. • Battle of Wandiwash- decisive battle of Third Carnatic War → English (victorious) in 1760 at Wandiwash (or Vandavasi) in Tamil Nadu. <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">General Eyer Coote headed British Forces</div> <div style="text-align: center;">Battle of Wandiwash</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Count de Lally headed French forces which lost the battle</div> </div> </div> • Treaty of Peace of Paris (1763): french allowed to use their settlements for commercial purposes only and banned fortification

Bengal

Nawabs of Bengal and the British

- **Murshid Quli Khan** was appointed as the **Diwan of Bengal** by **Aurangzeb**.
- **Shujauddin Khan** annexed **Suba of Bihar** to become a part of Bengal.
- **Sarfaraz Khan** took the title of **Alam-ud—daula Haider Jung**.

- **Alivardi Khan** nominated **Siraj-ud-daula** as his successor.
- **Siraj-ud-daula prohibited the English from fortifying** their factories at Calcutta, which led to the **Battle of Plassey in 1757**.
- **Mir Qasim** granted **Zamindari of Burdman, Midnapore and Chittagong to the British**.
- **Mir Jafar** granted the **right to free trade** in Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa and the **Zamindar of 24 Parganas** to the British. He is aka the **Jackal of Clive**.

- **Najm-ud-daula** was the son of Mir Jafar and made **Nawab** British puppet ruler during the period of 'Dual System of Government'.

Black Hole Tragedy (1756)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Siraj-ud-daula sieged Fort William. ● 146 British people were compelled to surrender. ● Stuffed for a night in a room of 18 square feet, with only two windows, and 123 people (Including natives) suffocated to death. ● Clive relieved Calcutta survivors & recovered the city on January 2, 1757 ● An indecisive engagement led to a treaty with Sirāj ud-Daula on February 9, which restored the company's privileges.
---------------------------	--

Battle of Plassey (1757)

- **Clive forged a secret alliance** with the traitors of the nawab—**Mir Jafar, Rai Durlabh, Jagat Seth (an influential banker of Bengal) and Omi Chand.**
- On 23 June 1757, the armies of Siraj-ud-Daulah and the EIC met at Plassey.
- Mir Jafar, the Commander in Chief of the Siraj-udDaulah, did not participate in the battle.
- Jagat Seth, the most prosperous banker of Bengal, also refused to help the Siraj-udDaulah
- **Siraj-ud-Daulah was defeated, imprisoned and later killed.**
- **The British made Mir Jafar the Nawab of Bengal.**
- After Plassey, the **English virtually monopolised the trade and commerce of Bengal.**

Battle of Buxar (1764)

- **Mir Qasim** tried to free himself from British control.
- He **dismissed the British officials** and hired European experts to train his army.
- He **abolished all duties on internal trade** and made Indian and British merchants trade on equal terms.
- The **British decided to depose Mir Qasim.**
- **Mir Qasim fled to Awadh and allied with Shuja-ud-Daulah**, the Nawab of Awadh and **Shah Alam II, the Mughal Emperor.**
- **Combined armies** that met the British forces at Buxar on 22 October 1764 were **defeated by the English forces under Major Hector Munro.**
- **Mir Jafar was made the nawab.**
- **English were permitted duty-free trade in Bengal**, except for a **duty of 2% on salt.**
- **Treaty of Allahabad** was signed with Shuja-ud-Daula and Shah Alam II

Dual Government in Bengal (1765-72)

- **Robert Clive** introduced the **dual system of government** in Bengal, i.e., **rule of the two—the Company and the Nawab** in which the **Diwani**, i.e. collecting revenues, and **nizamat**, i.e. Police and judicial functions, **came under the control of the Company.**
- **Nawab** was responsible for **maintaining peace and order**
- **Warren Hastings** did away with the dual system in **1772.**

Mysore

Anglo-Mysore Wars

First Anglo-Mysore War (1767-69)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Nizam + Marathas + English vs Haidar Ali. ● Haider paid the Marathas to turn them neutral and converted the Nizam into his ally against Nawab of Arcot. ● English concluded treaty with Haidar on April 4, 1769—Treaty of Madras. Treaty of Madras <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Haidar Ali was promised the help of the English in case he was attacked by any other power.
Second Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In 1771, Haidar was attacked by the Marathas and the English failed to come to his aid. ● Haidar Ali accused the English of breaching the Treaty of Madras. ● American war of independence had broken out in which the French were against the English. ● Haidar forged an anti-English alliance with the Marathas and the Nizam. ● English (under Sir Eyre Coote) detached both the Marathas and the Nizam from Haidar's side. ● Haidar lost at Porto Novo in November 1781. Treaty of Mangalore <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Haidar Ali died of cancer and his son, Tipu Sultan carried on the war for one year.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Signed the Treaty of Mangalore (March, 1784). • Under which each party gave back the territories it had taken from the other.
Third Anglo-Mysore War (1790-92)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In 1790, Tipu declared war against Travancore for the restoration of his rights. • The English, siding with Travancore, attacked Tipu. • In 1790, Tipu defeated the English under General Meadows. • In 1791, Cornwallis marched to Seringapatam. • With the support of the Marathas and the Nizam, the English attacked Seringapatam. • Tipu lost and signed the Treaty of Seringapatam. <p>Treaty of Seringapatam</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nearly half of the Mysorean territory was taken over by the victors. • Baramahal, Dindigul and Malabar went to the English. • Marathas got the regions surrounding the Tungabhadra and its tributaries. • Nizam acquired the areas from Krishna to beyond the Pennar. • A war damage of three crore rupees was also taken from Tipu. • Tipu's two sons were taken as hostages by the English.
Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1798-99)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tipu fulfilled all terms of the Treaty of Seringapatam and released his sons. • In 1796, the Hindu ruler of the Wodeyar dynasty died, and Tipu declared himself sultan. • In 1798, Lord Wellesley succeeded Sir John Shore as the new Governor General, concerned about Tipu's growing friendship with the French. • Wellesley aimed at annihilating Tipu's independence through the system of Subsidiary Alliance. • War began on April 17, 1799, and ended on May 4, 1799, with the fall of Seringapatam. • Tipu was defeated first by English General Stuart and then by General Harris. • The English was again helped by the Marathas and the Nizam. • Tipu died • English throned a boy from earlier Hindu royal family of Mysore as the maharaja and also imposed on him the subsidiary alliance system.

Mysore after Tipu Sultan

- **Wellesley offered the Soonda and Harponelly districts** of Mysore Kingdom to the **Marathas** but later refused.
- The **Nizam was given the districts of Gooty and Gurrampakonda**.
- The **English took possession of Kanara, Wayanad, Coimbatore, Dwaraporam and Seringapatam**.

- The new state of **Mysore was handed over to the old Hindu dynasty (Wodeyars)** under a **minor ruler Krishnaraja III**, who accepted the **subsidiary alliance**.
- In **1831, William Bentinck took control of Mysore on the grounds of misgovernance**.
- In **1881, Lord Ripon restored the kingdom to its ruler**.

Marathas

Anglo-Maratha Wars

First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-82)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Raghunath Rao had concluded the treaty of Surat with the English in 1775, agreeing to cede Salsette and Bassein in return for the post of Peshwa. • British Calcutta Council condemned the Treaty of Surat (1775) and sent Colonel Upton to Pune to annul it and make a new treaty (Treaty of Purandar, 1776). • In 1777, Nana Phadnavis violated his treaty by granting the French a port on the west coast. The English retaliated by sending a force towards Pune. • Maratha army was commanded by Mahadji Sindhia (Also known as Mahadji Shinde). • English signed the Treaty of Wadgaon that forced the Bombay government to relinquish all territories acquired by the English since 1775. <p>Treaty of Salbai (1782)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Governor-General in Bengal rejected the Treaty of Wadgaon and sent a large force under Colonel Goddard. Sindhia proposed a new treaty b/w the Peshwa and the English, and the Treaty of Salbai
--	---

	<p>was signed in May 1782.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The treaty guaranteed peace b/w the two sides for twenty years.
Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803-1805)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Peshwa Madhavrao Narayan committed suicide in 1795 and Bajirao II, son of Raghunathrao, became the Peshwa. On April 1, 1801, the Peshwa brutally murdered the brother of Jaswantrao Holkar, Vithuji. Bajirao II fled to Bassein, where, on December 31, 1802, he signed a treaty with the English.
Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817-19)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pindaris were attached to Maratha armies as mercenaries could not get regular employment when Marathas became weak. They started plundering neighbouring territories, including those of the Company. The English charged the Marathas with giving shelter to the Pindaris. A repentant Bajirao II in 1817 rallied against the English. The Peshwa attacked the British Residency at Poona, and Appa Sahib of Nagpur attacked Nagpur. The English, striking back vigorously, succeeded in not allowing the Peshwa to exert his authority again on the Maratha confederacy. The Peshwa was defeated at Khirki, Bhonsle at Sitabuldi, & Holkar at Mahidpur. Some important treaties signed were: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> June 1817, Treaty of Poona, with Peshwa. November 1817, Treaty of Gwalior, with Sindhia. January 1818, Treaty of Mandsaur, with Holkar Peshwa was exiled to North India and territories were taken over by British

Punjab

Maharaja Ranjit Singh

- Son of **Mahan Singh**, the leader of the **Sukarchakiya misl.**
- Maharaja Ranjit Singh **founded the Sikh Kingdom and became the Maharaja despite the monarchy not being sanctioned** by the Sikh religion.
- Sikhs were temporarily united** into a state which ruled from **Kashmir in the north to Sindh in the south and Afghanistan in the north-west to Haryana in the east.**

Treaty of Amritsar (1809)

- Ranjit Singh offered to accept **Metcalf's proposal** of an **offensive and defensive alliance** on the condition

that the **English would remain neutral in case of a Sikh-Afghan war** However, the **negotiations failed.**

- To avoid Napoleonic danger**, the English became more assertive, and **Ranjit Singh signed the Treaty of Amritsar** (April 25, 1809).
- Ranjit Singh's ambition to extend his rule over the entire Sikh nation was shattered by **accepting the river Sutlej as the boundary line for his dominions** and the Company's.
- In June 1838, Ranjit Singh was compelled by political compulsions to **sign the Tripartite Treaty with the English**; however **he refused to give passage to the British army** through his territories **to attack Dost Mohammad, the Afghan Amir.**
- Ranjit Singh died in June 1839 and with his death the process of the decline of his empire began.

Anglo-Sikh Wars

First Anglo-Sikh War (1845-46)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> First Anglo-Sikh war was attributed to the action of the Sikh army crossing the River Sutlej on December 11, 1845. English saw that step as an aggressive manoeuvre and declared war. War began in December 1845 under the Sikh commander Lal Singh. But the treachery of Lal Singh and Teja Singh caused five successive defeats to the Sikhs at Mudki (December 18, 1845), Ferozeshah (December 21-22, 1845), Buddelwal, Aliwal (January 28, 1846), and at Sobraon (February 10, 1846). Lahore fell to the British forces on February 20, 1846. <p>Treaty of Lahore (March 8, 1846)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> >1 crore of rupees was to be given to the English. Jalandhar Doab (b/w Beas and Sutlej) was annexed to EIC's dominions. A British resident was to be established at Lahore under Henry Lawrence. The strength of the Sikh army was reduced. Daleep Singh was recognised as the ruler under Rani Jindan as regent and Lal Singh as wazir.
--------------------------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Kashmir, including Jammu was sold to Gulab Singh as Sikh didn't pay the complete war indemnity. ● A separate treaty formalised the transfer of Kashmir to Gulab Singh on March 16, 1846. <p>Treaty of Bhairowal</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In December, 1846, the Treaty of Bhairowal was signed. ● Rani Jindan was removed as regent and a council of regency for Punjab was set up. ● The council was presided over by the English Resident, Henry Lawrence.
Second Anglo-Sikh War (1848-49)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Inhuman treatment meted out to Rani Jindan, who was sent to Benares as a pensioner, added to the resentment of the Sikhs. ● Mulraj, the governor of Multan, revolted and murdered two English officers. ● Sher Singh joined Mulraj, leading to a mass uprising in Multan. ● Lord Dalhousie fought three important battles before the final annexation of Punjab. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Battle of Ramnagar, led by Sir Hugh Gough, the commander-in-chief of the Company. ○ Battle of Chillianwala, January, 1849. ○ Battle of Gujarat, February 21, 1849; the Sikh army surrendered at Rawalpindi, and their Afghan allies were chased out of India. (Gujarat is a small town on the banks of River Jhelum.)

British Policies of Expansion

1. Policy of Ring Fence

- **Warren Hastings followed a policy** to create **buffer zones** to defend the Company's frontiers.
- It was the **policy of defence** of their neighbours' frontiers for safeguarding their territories.
- The states brought under the ring-fence system were **assured of military assistance against external aggression**—but at their own expense.
- These allies were **required to maintain subsidiary forces** which were to be organised, equipped and commanded by the officers of the Company.

2. Policy of Subsidiary Alliance

- **Introduced by:** The subsidiary alliance system was used by **Lord Wellesley**.
- **Subsidiary alliance system:** Under the system, the allying Indian state rulers were compelled to accept the **permanent stationing of a British force** within his territory and to **pay a subsidy for its maintenance**.
- **Indian rulers could not employ any European in their service** without the prior approval of the British. **Nor could negotiate with any other Indian ruler** without the consultation of the governor-general.
- In return, the **British would defend the ruler** from his enemies and adopt a **policy of non-interference** in the internal matters of the allied state.

● Indian princes and States which Accepted Alliance

- Nizam of Hyderabad (September 1798 and 1800)
- Ruler of Mysore (1799)
- The ruler of Tanjore (October 1799)
- Nawab of Awadh (November 1801)
- Peshwa (December 1801)
- Bhonsle Raja of Berar (December 1803)
- Sindhia (February 1804)
- Rajput states of Jodhpur, Jaipur, Macheri, Bundi and the ruler of Bharatpur (1818).
- Holkars (1818).

3. Doctrine of Lapse

- Doctrine of Lapse was introduced **by Lord Dalhousie**
- **The doctrine stated that the adopted son could be the heir to his foster father's private property, but not the state.**
- **States Annexed under Doctrine of Lapse**
 - Satara (1848)
 - Jaitpur and Sambalpur (1849)
 - Bhagat (1850)
 - Udaipur (1852)
 - Jhansi (1853)
 - Nagpur (1854)
 - Tore and Arcot (1855)

31 CHAPTER

Revolt of 1857

Causes of Revolt of 1857

- The **British expansion policy** through the Doctrine of Lapse and direct annexation.
- **1849:** Dalhousie announced that the **successor of Bahadur Shah II would have to leave the Red Fort.**
- **Rani Lakshmi Bai's adopted son was not permitted to sit on the throne of Jhansi.**
- **Annexation of Awadh by Lord Dalhousie on the pretext of maladministration left thousands of nobles, officials, retainers, and soldiers jobless.**
 - This measure **converted Awadh, a loyal state, into a hotbed of discontent and intrigue.**
- **The sepoys also had religious or caste grievances of their own.** The Indians of those days were very strict in observing caste rules, etc.
- **The episode of greased cartridges was a big enough issue to start the rebellion on its own.**
- **Cartridges of the new Enfield rifle had a greased paper cover whose end had to be bitten off-before the cartridge was loaded into the rifle.**
- **The grease was in some instances made of beef and pig fat.**
- **This completely enraged the Hindu and Muslim sepoys.**

Regional Leaders during the 1857 Revolt

Leader Name	Place of Revolt	Role Played in 1857 Revolt
Bakht Khan	Bareilly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bakht Khan: Led the revolt of the soldiers at Bareilly, arrived in Delhi on 3rd July, 1857. • Bakht Khan exercised real authority and he formed a Court of soldiers composed of both Hindu and Muslim rebels.
Nana Saheb and Tantya Tope	Kanpur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nana Saheb, the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II with the help of Tantya Tope. • They expelled the British from Kanpur and declared Nana Saheb as Peshwa, who acknowledged Bahadur Shah as the Emperor of India. • Tatya Tope was the great fighter who helped Rani Laxmi Bai to capture Gwalior. A friend betrayed Tatya Tope and he was imprisoned and later hanged in Shivpuri. • Nana Saheb was believed to have escaped to Nepal by 1859.
Begum Hazrat Mahal	Lucknow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Begum of Awadh provided the leadership and proclaimed her son, Birjis Kadr, as the Nawab of Awadh. • During the revolt she worked with Nana Saheb, Tantya Tope, etc. against the Britishers. • She fought as long as she could and finally found asylum in Nepal, where she died in 1879.
Rani Lakshmi Bai	Jhansi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She was against the Policy of Doctrine of Lapse and fought for her adopted son to the throne of Jhansi. • March 1858: British forces attacked Jhansi; Laxmibai escaped from the fort with her son. • She fled to Kalpi, where she joined Tatya Tope. • Together, they captured Gwalior. But the British gained the upper hand yet again. • June 17, 1858: During the fighting at Kotah-ki-Serai, five miles southeast of Gwalior, the Rani, dressed in male attire, was shot at and fell from her horse and died.
Kunwar Singh	Arrah, Bihar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Most representative and outstanding leader of Arrah, Bihar. • Under his leadership the military and civil rebellion were so completely fused that the British dreaded him most. • March 1858: Kunwar Singh occupied Azamgarh. Pursued by Brigadier Douglas, he retreated towards his home arrah. • 23rd April 1858: He fought bravely and drove away the British Army. But due to injuries encountered in a fight he soon died on 26 April 1858.
Shah Mal	Baghat, Uttar Pradesh	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Organised the headmen and peasants of 84 villages (referred as chaurasi desh), marching at night from village to village, urging people to rebel against the British hegemony. • He established a "hall of justice", resolving disputes and dispensing judgments. • July 1858; Shah Mal was killed by an English officer, Dunlap.

British Army Officials Associated with Revolt

General John Nicholson	Captured Delhi on 20th September 1857 (Nicholson died soon due to a mortal wound received during the fighting).
Major Hudson	Killed Bahadur Shah's sons and grandsons in Delhi.
Sir Hugh Wheeler	Defense against Nana Sahib's forces till 26th June 1857. British forces surrendered on 27th on the promise of safe conduct to Allahabad.
General Neil	Recaptured Banaras and Allahabad in June 1857. At Kanpur, he killed Indians as revenge against the killing of English by Nana Sahib's forces. Died at Lucknow while fighting against the rebels.
Sir Colin Campbell	Final recovery of Kanpur on 6th December, 1857. Final reoccupation of Lucknow on 21 st March, 1858. Recapture of Bareilly on 5th May, 1858.
Henry Lawrence	Chief Commissioner of Awadh. Who died during the seizure of British residency by rebels at Lucknow on 2nd July, 1857.
Major General Havelock	Defeated the rebels (Nana Sahib's force) on 17th July, 1857. Died at Lucknow in December 1857.
William Taylor and Eye	Suppressed the revolt at Arrah in August 1857.
Hugh Rose	Suppressed the revolt at Jhansi and recaptured Gwalior on 20th June, 1858. The whole of Central India and Bundelkhand was brought under British control by him.
Colonel Ocell	Captured Banaras



toppernotes
Unleash the topper in you

32

CHAPTER

Moderate Phase of Indian National Congress

Political Associations before the Indian National Congress

Organisation	Founder/s	Objectives
Bangabhasha Prakasika Sabha 1836	Associates of Raja Rammohan Roy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Liberty of Press Indianization of Services Codification of law
Zamindari Association 1838	Dwarkanath Tagore	Safeguarding the interests of landlords
British India Society 1839	William Adams	To draw attention to the despotic character of the Company's administration.
Bengal British India Society 1843	George Thomas	Collection and dissemination of information about the condition of people under the colonial rule
British India Association 1851	Radha Kant Deb	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Safeguarding class interests Sending petitions to the Government formed by merging of Landholders' Society and the Bengal British India Society.
Bombay Association 1852	Jagannath Shankar Seth	Ensured representation of Indians in Councils
East India Association 1866	Dadabhai Naroji	Influence public opinion in England regarding India
Poona Sarvajanik Sabha 1867	Mahadev Govind Ranade	Served as a bridge b/w the Government and the People
Indian League 1875	Sisir Kumar Ghosh	Political education
Indian Association (also called Indian Association of Calcutta) 1876	Surendranath Banerjee and Anand Mohan Bose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Centre of leading representatives of the educated community of Bengal. Protested against reducing the age limit in 1877 for candidates of the Indian Civil Service examination. Demanded simultaneous holding of civil service examinations in England and India and Indianization of higher administrative posts. Merged with Indian National Congress in 1886
Madras Mahajan Sabha 1884	M. Veeraraghavachary and B. Subramania	Coordinate the activities of local associations
Bombay Presidency Association 1885	Badruddin Tyabji, Pherozeshah Mehta and K.T. Telang	Unite Indian Masses against reactionary policies of Lytton

Establishment of Indian National Congress

- Hume witnessed the plight faced by Indians and wanted to establish a political platform from where the grievances of Indians could be raised in front of the Government.

Aims and Objectives of the Congress

- Promote the feeling of unity and national consciousness among the masses.
- Politically educate the people about their rights.

- Found a democratic & nationalist movement.
- Present demands to the Government aiming to unify the people of India
- Provide a political platform to leaders from different parts of the country
- To develop and propagate the anti-colonial ideology
- Develop a feeling of national unity among Indians irrespective of religion, caste or province.

Important Sessions of INC

Year	Location	President	Importance
1885	Bombay	W C Bonnerjee	1st session attended by 72 delegates
1886	Calcutta	Dadabhai Naoroji	National Congress and National Conference

1887	Madras	Syed Badruddin Tyabji	Appeal made to Muslims to join hands with other national leaders
1888	Allahabad	George Yule	First English president
1896	Calcutta	Rahimtullah M. Sayani	National song 'Vande Mataram' sung for the first time
1905	Benares	Gopal Krishna Gokhale	Expressed resentment against the partition of Bengal
1906	Calcutta	Dadabhai Naoroji	The word 'Swaraj' was mentioned for the first time
1907	Surat	Rash Behari Ghosh	Party splits into extremists and moderates
1908	Madras	Rash Behari Ghosh	Previous session continued
1909	Lahore	Madan Mohan Malaviya	Indian Councils Act, 1909
1910	Allahabad	Sir William Wedderburn	–
1911	Calcutta	Bishan Narayan Dhar	'Jana Gana Mana' sung for the first time
1916	Lucknow	Ambica Charan Mazumdar	Lucknow Pact – joint session with the Muslim League
1917	Calcutta	Annie Besant (1847 – 1933)	First woman president of the INC
1918	Bombay And Delhi	Syed Hasan Imam (Bombay) and Madan Mohan Malaviya (Delhi)	Two sessions were held. First in Bombay in August/September Second in Delhi in December
1919	Amritsar	Motilal Nehru	Jallianwala Bagh massacre strongly condemned
1925	Kanpur	Sarojini Naidu (1879 – 1949)	First Indian woman president
1928	Calcutta	Motilal Nehru	All India Youth Congress formed
1929	Lahore	Jawaharlal Nehru	Resolution for 'Poorna Swaraj.' Civil Disobedience movement for complete independence to be launched, 26 January to be observed as 'Independence Day'.
1930	No Session	–	–
1931	Karachi	Vallabhbhai Patel	Resolution on fundamental rights and national economic progress. Gandhi-Irwin pact endorsed. Gandhi nominated to represent INC in the second-round table conference
1936	Faizpur	Jawaharlal Nehru	First rural session/first session to be held in a village
1938	Haripura	Subhas Chandra Bose	National planning committee set up under Nehru
1939	Tripuri	Subhas Chandra Bose	Bose was elected but had to resign since Gandhi supported Pattabhi Sitaramayya. Instead, Rajendra Prasad was appointed
1941-45	–	–	No session because of arrest
1946	Meerut	Acharya Kripalani	Last session before independence
1948	Jaipur	Pattabhi Sitaramayya	First session after independence
1950	Nashik	Purushottam Das Tandon	Resigned in 1951; Nehru became President

Moderate Phase (1885-1905)

- **Leaders:** Dadabhai Naoroji, Pherozshah Mehta, D.E. Wacha, W.C. Bonnerjea, S.N. Banerjea, Pherozshah Mehta.
- They **believed in constitutional agitation** within the confines of the law.

Economic Critique of British Imperialism

- Presented by **Dadabhai Naoroji, R.C. Dutt, Dinshaw Wacha and others.**
 - **Dadabhai Naoroji:** Poverty and Unbritish rule in India.
 - **R C Dutt:** The economic History of India.
 - Put forward the “**drain theory**” to explain the British exploitation of India.
- They **opposed the transformation of a self-sufficient Indian economy into a colonial economy** and the subordination of the Indian economy to the British.

Constitutional Reforms

- **Moderates demanded increased participation of Indians in the decision making** process by expanding and reforming the Legislative Councils.
- **Indian Councils Act in 1892** was **severely criticised** at Congress sessions as it did **not confer much power** on Indians especially in financial matters and the final decision rested with the British.
 - **demanded-** a majority of elected Indians, and greater control over the budget, i.e., the power to vote upon and amend the budget. Raised the slogan— “**No taxation without representation**”.
- **Demands of dominion status for India** on the lines of self-governing colonies of Canada and Australia by leaders like Dadabhai Naoroji (1904), Gopal Krishna Gokhale (1905) and Lokmanya Tilak (1906).

33

CHAPTER

Extremist Phase (1905-1909)

Partition of Bengal

- **1903:** The British government decided to partition Bengal.
- **Rationale was to have two provinces:** Bengal comprising Western Bengal and the provinces of Bihar and Orissa, and Eastern Bengal and Assam.
 - **Calcutta: Capital of Bengal.**
 - **Dacca: Capital of Eastern Bengal.**
- The administrative reason behind the partition given by Curzon.

Anti-Partition Movement

- **1903-1905: Leaders** like Surendranath Banerjee, K.K. Mitra and Prithwishchandra Ray **led the anti-partition movement.**
- **July 1905:** The government announced the partition of Bengal, ignoring the pleas of the moderate leaders.
- **August 7, 1905: The formal proclamation** of the **Swadeshi Movement** with the **passage of the Boycott Resolution.**
- **On October 16, 1905, The partition formally came into force.**
- The day was observed as a **day of mourning** throughout Bengal.
 - **People took out processions and walked barefoot** singing **Bande Mataram** (the theme song of the movement).
- **'Amar Sonar Bangla',** composed by **Rabindranath Tagore** was **sung by crowds** while marching on the streets.
- **Movement also spread to other parts of the country-** in Pooana and Mumbai under Tilak, in Punjab under Lala Lajpat Rai and Ajit Singh, in Delhi under Syed Haider Raza, and in Madras under Chidambaram Pillai.
- **Congress session 1905 (Benares):** Presided over by **Gopal Krishna Gokhale,** resolved to **support the proposal of Swadeshi and Boycott movements.**

Swadeshi and Boycott Movement

- **Aim:** To **promote indigenous industries** by boycotting the use of British goods.
- **Boycott:** Included boycott and **public burning of foreign cloth, foreign-made salt or sugar,** refusal by priests to ritualise marriages involving the exchange of foreign goods, refusal by washermen to wash foreign clothes. **People also boycotted British schools and colleges.**

- To **mobilize the masses,** public meetings and **processions** were organized.
- Committees were **set up to mobilize the masses** like the **Swadesh Bandhab Samiti of Ashwini Kumar Dutta (in Barisal).**
- **Leaders popularized the idea of the celebration of traditional festivals** as a means to reach out to the masses for spreading political messages.
 - **Eg: Tilak's Ganpati and Shivaji festival**
- **Swadeshi enterprises were set up** like textile mills, soap and match factories, tanneries, banks, insurance companies, shops, etc.
- **The Swadeshi Steam Navigation Company** at **Tuticorin in Tamil Nadu** set up by **V.O. Chidambaram Pillai** presented a challenge to the British India Steam Navigation Company.
- **21st October 1905: The Painters Union** was formed in Calcutta.
- **Nandalal Bose** received first scholarship offered by the **Indian Society of Oriental Art, founded in 1907.**
- The **Bengal National College,** inspired by Tagore's Shantiniketan, **was set up.**
- **August 15, 1906: The National Council of Education** was established.
- **1906: Aurobindo formulated the National Education Policy,** focusing on vernacular education.
- A **Bengal Institute of Technology** was **set up to advance technical education** and funds were raised to send students to Japan for advanced learning.

Annulment of Partition

- **1911: The partition of Bengal** was **annulled.**
- **Muslim political elite felt unhappy** with the decisions of annulment of partition.
- The capital of India was shifted from **Calcutta to Delhi in 1911** to **appease the Muslims but the Muslims were not pleased.**
- Later, **Bihar and Orissa were taken out of Bengal,** and **Assam was made a separate province.**

All India Muslim league

- **Founded: 31st December, 1906 at Dacca (Dhaka).**
 - By Nawab Khwaja Salimullah with Agha Khan as its President along with Nawab Mohsin-ul-mulk.
- **1907: First annual session (Karachi).**
- **1908: The second Session (Amritsar).**
- **1913: M.A.Jinnah joined the League (Lucknow)**
- **1924: M. A. Jinnah presided over the session (Lahore).**

Objectives

- Promote **political rights** and interests of the Muslim Population in India
- Maintain **loyalty to the British Government** (supported the partition of Bengal)
- Demand **separate electorates for the Muslim community** (1909 Morley-Minto reforms)
- **Not to support any critique of imperialism.**
- The **Ahrar Movement** (1906-12) **founded by few Muslim militant nationalists** like Hasan Imam, Mazhar-ul-Haq, Maulana Zafar Ali Khan, and Maulana Abul Kalam Azad protested against the Muslim League.

Surat Split of the INC (1907)

- **Benares session 1905:** Congress split b/w the two factions.
- **Calcutta session 1906:** Congress declared 'swaraj or self-government' as the goal of the Congress.
- The **Extremists** wanted to hold the **1907 session at Nagpur** (Central Provinces) with **Tilak or Lajpat Rai as the president.**

- While the **Moderates** wanted the session at **Surat with Rash Bihari Bose as the President.**
- **Result: session was held at Surat** under the presidency of **Rash Bihari Bose** as both sides adopted rigid positions, leaving no room for compromise.
- The **Extremists left the Congress**

Morley-Minto Reforms of 1909 / Indian Councils Act of 1909

- **Introduced by:** Viceroy, Lord Minto, and the Secretary of State for India, John Morley.

Provisions

- Introduced system of **elections for the non-official membership** of the councils in India.
- Indians were given a **chance to participate in the election of various legislative councils, though based on class and community.**
- System of **separate electorates for Hindus and Muslims.**
- An Indian member, **Satyendra Sinha was included within Viceroy's Executive Council.**

Revolutionary activities

Anushilan Samiti	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The First Revolutionary Organization of Bengal. ● Founded by Pramathanath Mitra in 1902. ● Associates: Jatindranath Banerjee (Bhagha Jatin), Barindra Kumar Ghosh, Sri Aurobindo, Chittaranjan Das (Deshbandu), Bhupendranath Dutta, and others. ● 1906: A political Weekly Yugantar was started by Barindra Kumar Ghosh and Bhupendranath Dutta. ● 1907: Yugantar group tried to kill a very unpopular British official, Sir Fuller. ● 1907: An attempt was made to derail the train on which the lieutenant-governor of Bengal, Sri Andrew Fraser, was traveling. ● April 1908: Prafulla Chaki and Khudiram Bose tried to kill Kingsford, a judge. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Prafulla Chaki shot himself while Khudiram Bose was tried and hanged. ● 1908: Barrah dacoity by Pulin Das to raise funds for revolutionary activities.
Alipore conspiracy case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 1908: The trial of the members of the Anushilan Samiti and the conspiracy to kill the Magistrate Douglas Kingsford, came to be called the Alipore conspiracy case or the Manicktolla bomb conspiracy, or Muraripukur conspiracy. ● Barindra Ghosh was charged with conspiracy. ● Aurobindo, defended by Chittranjan Das, was acquitted of all charges. ● Aurobindo retired from active politics and set up an ashram at Pondicherry.
Jugantor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Formed Under Jatindranath Mukherjee or Bagha Jatin ● The party with the help of Rashbehari Bose aimed to bring about an all-India insurrection during the First World War. ● It arranged to import German arms and ammunition through Indian sympathizers and revolutionaries settled abroad, which has been called the 'German Plot' or the 'Zimmerman Plan'. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Unfortunately, the plan was leaked by traitors, and Jatin and his associates were held by the police. Jatin Mukherjee was shot and died in September 1915.
Delhi Conspiracy trial	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rashbehari Bose and Sachin Sanyal staged a bomb attack on Viceroy Hardinge in December 1912. ● Basant Kumar Biswas, Amir Chand, and Avadh Behari were convicted and executed. ● Rashbehari Bose disguised himself and evaded arrest.
Ramosi Peasant Force	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Founded by Vasudev Balwant Phadke in 1879. ● It aimed to free country from the British by instigating revolt by disrupting communication lines.
Abhinav	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Founded by V.D.Savarkar in 1904 by merging it with Mitra Mela (a secret society founded by

Bharat	<p>Savarkar and his brother in 1899).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 1909: A.M.T. Jackson, the Collector of Nashik, killed by Anant Lakshman Kanhere, a member of Abhinav Bharat, this act came to be known as Kolhapur Bomb Case. ● Savarkar was sentenced to life imprisonment and all his property were forfeited.
Individual Attempts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tilak during the 1890s promoted the spirit of militant nationalism through Ganapati and Shivaji festivals and his journals Kesari and Mahratta. ● 1897: The Chapekar brothers, Damodar and Balkrishna assassinated the Plague Commissioner of Poona, Rand, and Lt. Ayerst.

Revolutionary activities abroad

- **India House (India Home Rule Society):** By **Shyamji Krishnavarma in London in 1905.** It brought out a journal called, **The Indian Sociologist.**
- **Madanlal Dhingra from India House** assassinated Curzon-Wyllie in London in 1909.
- **Indian Independence Committee:** Founded by Virendranath Chattopadhyay, Bhupendranath Dutta, Lala Hardayal, and others with the help of the German foreign office under **'Zimmerman Plan'** with headquarters in Berlin, Germany.
- **Indian National Party** by **Champak Raman Pillai** with headquarters in Germany.
- **Indian Independence League** by **Taraknath Das** in California, USA, in 1907.
- **Madam Bhikaji Cama**, a Parsi revolutionary, was the **first Indian to unfurl India's flag** (a tricolour of red, green, and yellow depicting the **slogan Vande Mataram**) at the International Socialist Conference in Stuttgart, Germany on 22 August 1907.

Ghadar Party

- A revolutionary party was formed in 1913 with headquarters in **San Francisco, USA.**
- **Founded by: Sohan Singh Bhakna.** Earlier k/a the **"Pacific Coast Hindustan Association".**
- **1914: Komagata Maru incident and outbreak of the First World War,** gave a push to the movement.
- **"The Ghadar" was published** in four languages- Hindi, English, Urdu, and Gurmukhi.

Home Rule League Movement

- **Prominent leaders** like Tilak, Annie Besant, G.S. Khaparde, Sir S. Subramania Iyer, Joseph Baptista, and M. A. Jinnah **decided that it was necessary to have a political organization to lead the national movement and that could work throughout the year.**

Home Rule League under Tilak

- **Founded:** April 1916 by **Tilak at Bombay Provincial Conference (Belgaum).**
- **Headquarters:** Poona

- **Areas of operation:** Maharashtra (excluding Bombay city), Karnataka, Central Provinces, and Berar.
- Tilak gave his famous slogan: **"Swaraj is my birthright and I shall have it".**

Home Rule League under Besant

- **1916:** Annie Besant founded her **All-India Home Rule League at Adyar in Madras.**
- **Arundale (Organizing secretary),** B.W. Wadia and C.P. Ramaswamy Aiyar were associated with the League

Objectives

- Achieve **self-government in India.**
- Promote **political education** and discussion to set up agitation for self-government.
- **Revive political activity in India** while maintaining the principles of the Congress Party.

Lucknow Pact

- **League agreed to present joint constitutional demands** with the Congress to the government
- **Congress accepted the Muslim League's position on separate electorates** which would continue till any one community demanded joint electorates.
- **Lucknow pact:** Signed "with the efforts of Tilak and Jinnah. Congress accepted the principle of separate electorates.

Montagu's Statement of August 1917

- **Edwin Samuel Montagu, made a statement on August 20, 1917,** in the British House of Commons, known as **August Declaration of 1917.**
- **Defined the goal of British policies in India.**
- **'Responsible Government':** rulers must be answerable to the elected representatives
- **Detailed report on Indian Constitutional Reforms** was prepared.
- **Report became the basis of the Government of India Act 1919.**
- **Montagu declaration,** again after a gap of more than half a century of Queen Victoria's proclamation 1858, was called the **"Magna Carta of India "**.

34 CHAPTER

The Mass Movement: Gandhian Era (1917-1925)

- **Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi:** Born on 2nd October 1869, in Porbandar, Gujarat.
- **Study:** Law in London and went to Natal in South Africa to work in a law firm in 1894.
- **South Africa:** His ideologies developed and changed when he faced racial discrimination just like other fellows Indians and Africans at the hands of Europeans or the whites.
- **Pietermaritzburg station incident (June 7, 1893)** - during his visit to Pretoria, despite having a first-class ticket, Gandhi was asked to move to a third-class compartment because of his race. On his refusal to comply, he was thrown out of the train at Pietermaritzburg station.
- The train incident left Gandhiji shocked and angered at the racial treatment accorded Asians and Africans.
- He decided to stay in South Africa to organize the Indian workers to enable them to fight for their rights.
- **Jan. 1915:** He returned to India.
- Upon his return, he had earned the reputation of a leading activist, theorist, and community leader.
- On the advice of his political guru, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, he decided to tour the country to oversee the condition of the masses and not to get politically involved in any matter for at least one year.
- Gandhi was not in favor of Home Rule agitation as Britain was in the middle of a war.
- He advocated for a non-violent satyagraha to meet nationalist aims.
- **1917-1918:** He was involved in three struggles—in Champaran, Ahmedabad, and Kheda.

Champaran Satyagraha (1917)

- Gandhiji Ji's first Civil Disobedience in India.
- The European planters forced the peasants of Champaran (Bihar) to grow indigo on 3/20 part of their land (called tinkathia system) and sell that produce of indigo at a fixed price determined by the planters.
- Rajkumar Shukla, a local man, invited Gandhi to look into the problems of the farmers of Champaran.
- Gandhiji along with Rajendra Prasad, Mazharul-Haq, Mahadeo Desai, Narhari Parekh, and J.B. Kripalani reached Champaran to probe into the matter.
- The government appointed a committee to go into the matter and Gandhiji was a member.

- Gandhi convinced authorities that the tinkathia system should be abolished and the peasants should be compensated for the illegal dues extracted from them (only 25% to be compensated).
- Gandhiji won the first battle of civil disobedience in India.
- **Other leaders:** Brajkishore Prasad, Anugrah Narayan Sinha, Ram Navami Prasad, and Shambhusharan Varma.

Ahmedabad Mill Strike (1918)

- First Hunger Strike of Gandhiji in India.
- **March 1918:** Gandhi took up the cause of workers of the cotton mill of Ahmedabad over the issue of discontinuation of the plague bonus.
 - **Mill owners:** To discontinue the bonus
 - **Workers:** Demanded a rise of 50% in their wages to keep up with the wartime inflation caused by Britain's involvement in the First World War.
- **Result:** The mill owners agreed to a 20% wage hike. The workers went on strike.
- The workers rushed to Anusuya Sarabhai for help. She was a social worker who was also the sister of Ambalal Sarabhai, one of the mill owners and the president of the Ahmedabad Mill Owners Association.
- Anusuya Behn asked Gandhiji to intervene in the matter as he was respected equally by the mill owners and workers
- Gandhiji asked workers to follow the strategy of non-violence while on strike.
- Gandhiji himself undertook a fast unto death (his first) to strengthen the workers' resolve.
- On the fourth day of the strike, the tribunal gave its decision awarding the workers a 35% wage hike.

Kheda Satyagraha (1918)

- First Non-Cooperation of Gandhiji in India.
- Due to drought and subsequent crop failure in 1918, the peasants of the Kheda district in Gujarat were demanding a suspension of revenue tax.
- According to the Revenue Code, if the yield was <one-fourth of the normal production, the farmers were entitled to remission.
- The Government refused the peasant's demand
- Government demanded full collection of tax or else the property of the farmers would be seized.

- **Gandhiji supported the peasants** on this issue and asked the farmers not to pay the taxes.
- The **non-cooperation was led by Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel** along with Narahari Parikh, Mohanlal Pandya, and Ravi Shankar Vyas, who toured the villages, organized the villagers, and **provided them with political leadership.**
- Finally, the government agreed with the farmers and was ready to **recover tax only from those peasants who could afford to pay.**

Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms and Government of India Act, 1919

- Introduced **dyarchy** in the **provinces.**
- **Governor to be the executive head.**
- **Subjects** were divided into **two lists: 'reserved' and 'transferred' subjects.**
 - **Reserved subjects:** Administered by the **governor** through his executive council
 - **Transferred subjects:** Administered by **ministers nominated** from among the **elected members of the legislative council.**
- The **chief executive authority was the governor-general.**
- The **viceroys executive council had eight members (3 Indians).**
- In the **provinces, the reserved subjects** were under the control of the **governor-general.**
- The **governor-general** had the power to **restore cuts in grants,** certify bills rejected by the central legislature, and issue ordinances.
- **Introduced bicameral legislature.**
- **Members:**
 - **Lower house or Central Legislative Assembly:** 145 members
 - **Upper house or Council of State:** 60 members.
- The **Council of State** had a **term of 5 years** and had **only male members.**
- The **Central Legislative Assembly** had a **term of 3 years.**
- **Secretary of State for India to be paid out of the British exchequer.**

Rowlatt Act (1919)

- **Government of India Act, 1919:** Led to widespread protests and rallies across India.
- **1919:** The Rowlatt Act was passed officially called the **Anarchical and Revolutionary Crimes Act.**
- The act was recommended by a committee headed by **Sir Sidney Rowlatt,** to investigate the '**seditions conspiracy**' of the Indian people.
- **The act allowed the arrest of Indians without a warrant** on the mere suspicion of treason.

- **There was no court of appeal above that panel.**
- The law of **habeas corpus** was suspended as per this act.
- **Restrictions on freedom of speech and assembly were re-imposed** in India.
- Gandhi called the Rowlatt Act the "**Black Act**" and gave a call for a mass protest at an all-India level.
- **February 1919: Gandhiji organized a Satyagraha Sabha** and roped in younger members of Home Rule Leagues and the Pan Islamists.
- **Methods of resistance:** A nationwide hartal (strike) along with fasting and prayer, civil disobedience against specific laws, and courting arrest and imprisonment.
- **April 6, 1919, was fixed as the date to launch the Satyagraha.**

Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919)

- **6th April 1919:** Gandhiji was arrested.
- **9th April 1919:** Nationalist leaders, Saifuddin Kitchlew and Dr. Satyapal were arrested by the British officials.
- **This caused resentment among the Indian protestors and tensions soared high.**
- **Brigadier-General Reginald Dyer,** imposed martial law.
- **13 April:** He issued a proclamation **forbidding people from leaving the city without a pass and from organizing demonstrations or processions or assembling in groups of >three.**
- **On April 13 - Baisakhi day,** people, gathered in the Jallianwala Bagh
- **Brigadier-General Dyer** arrived on the scene with his men and ordered his troops to **open fire on the unarmed crowd without any warning.**
- In protest, **Rabindranath Tagore** renounced his knighthood
- **Gandhiji gave up** the title of **Kaiser-i-Hind,** bestowed by the British for his work during the **Boer War.**
- **Gandhiji withdrew the movement on April 18, 1919.**
- **Udham Singh,** who bore the name Ram Mohammad Singh Azad, later assassinated **Michael O'Dwyer** in **London in 1940. Udham Singh was hanged for his deed.**
- **October 14, 1919:** Disorders Inquiry Committee/ Hunters commission was formed.
- **Three Indians were among the members of the committee, namely, Sir Chimanlal Harilal Setalvad, Pandit Jagat Narayan, and Sardar Sahibzada Sultan.**
- **The final report of the Committee unanimously condemned Dyer's actions.**

- The **Indian National Congress** appointed its **non-official committee** under the **leadership of Madan Mohan Malviya**.
 - Its members included **Motilal Nehru, C.R. Das, Abbas Tyabji, M.R. Jayakar, and Gandhiji**. Congress criticized Dyer's act as inhuman.

The Khilafat Movement

- **1919-1922: Khilafat movement and the Non-Cooperation movement** were organized to **oppose British rule in India**.
- The movements **adopted a unified plan of action of non-violence and non-cooperation**.

Khilafat Issue

- The **agitation against Rowlatt Act** brought **different sections of the society together** especially the **Hindus and Muslims**.
- **1919: Launched** to protect the **Ottoman Empire of Turkey**, which had been on the verge of collapse after World War I.
- **After the war, the British dismembered Turkey, and the Khalifa was removed from power**.
- **Muslims all over the world demanded that Khalifa should retain control** over Muslim sacred places, and be left with sufficient territories after territorial arrangements.
- **A Khilafat Committee: under leadership of the Ali brothers** (Shaukat Ali and Muhammad Ali), Maulana Azad, Ajmal Khan, and Hasrat Mohani in early 1919.

Development of the Khilafat-Non-cooperation Programme

- **1919: Call to boycott British Goods** at the **All India Khilafat Conference** held in Delhi.
- **Gandhi ji, as the president of the All India Khilafat Committee**, saw this as an opportunity **to bring together Hindus and Muslims against the British**.
- **M.A.Jinaah opposed the Khilafat movement** as it would mix religion and politics, even though the Muslim League was in favor of the movement.

Non-Cooperation Khilafat Movement

- **February 1920: A joint Hindu-Muslim deputation** was sent to the viceroy on the issue of Khilafat.
- **Gandhiji announced that he would soon lead a movement of non-cooperation** in case of failure of a peace treaty in satisfying the Indian Muslims.
- **May 1920: The Treaty of Sevres** was signed which completely dismembered Turkey.

- **June 1920: Gandhiji was asked to lead a program of the boycott** of schools, colleges, and law courts at an **all-party conference in Allahabad**.
- **August 31, 1920: The non-cooperation movement** was formally launched by the Khilafat committee. (Tilak breathed his last on August 1, 1920.)
- **September 1920: At a special session of the Congress in Calcutta, Gandhiji launched the non-violent, non-cooperation movement**. It was approved by Congress.
- **December 1920: Nagpur session** of the Indian National Congress endorsed the program of non-cooperation
- **Gandhiji along with Ali's brothers undertook a nationwide tour**.
- **Thousands of students left government schools and colleges**.
- **Jamia Millia Islamia was established in 1920 at Aligarh, Kashi Vidyapeeth in 1921 along with Gujarat Vidyapeeth and Bihar Vidyapeeth**.
- **Many lawyers like Motilal Nehru, Jawaharlal Nehru, C.R. Das etc gave up their practices**.
- **The Tilak Swaraj Fund was established** to finance the movement and it was oversubscribed, and one crore rupees were collected.
- **Congress volunteer corps were established**.
- **July 1921: Ali brothers asked Muslims to resign from the Army** calling it irreligious.
- **Gandhiji supported the call and a similar resolution was passed** by the Congress committees. The **Ali brothers were arrested for this**.

Chauri Chaura Incident

- **February 5, 1922: The police beat up the leader of a group of volunteers campaigning** against liquor sales and high food prices and then opened fire on a Congress procession of 3000 peasants at **Chauri Chaura in Gorakhpur, Uttar Pradesh**.
- **To avenge this, the agitated crowd torched the police station with policemen inside** who had taken shelter there, killing 22 policemen.
- **Gandhi, on witnessing the violent trend of the movement, immediately announced the withdrawal of the non-cooperation movement**.
- **C.R. Das, Motilal Nehru, Subhash Bose, Jawaharlal Nehru did not support the suspension** of the movement.
- In March 1922, **Gandhiji was arrested and sentenced to six years in jail**.

35 CHAPTER

The Struggle for Swaraj (1925-1939)

Revolutionary activity during the 1920s

Hindustan Republican Association/Army (Hindustan Socialist Republican Association)-

- Established in 1924 in Kanpur by Ramprasad Bismil, Jogesh Chandra Chatterjee and Sachin Sanyal.
- Aim: To organize an armed revolution against the British.
- 9th August 1925: carried out a robbery k/a the Kakori robbery.

Kakori Conspiracy Case

- The men held up the 8-Down train at Kakori near Lucknow, and looted the treasury.
- Government arrested many leaders of whom 17 were jailed, four were transported for life and four Bismil, Ashfaqullah, Roshan Singh, and Rajendra Lahiri were hanged.
- 1928: The HRA was renamed the Hindustan Socialist Republican Association (HSRA) at Feroz Shah Kotla in Delhi under the leadership of Chandra Shekhar Azad and Bhagat Singh.
- Associated leaders: Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev, Bhagwaticharan Vohra, Bejoy Kumar Sinha, Shiv Verma, Jaidev Kapur.
- Socialism was adopted as the goal of HSRA.

Saunders Assassination

- 17th December 1928: A police officer named Saunders was shot dead by Bhagat Singh, Azad, and Rajguru (Saunders was responsible for lathi-charging Lala Lajpat Rai in Lahore during the anti-Simon protest, which led to Lala's death).

Bomb in the Central Legislative Assembly

- 8th April 1929: Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutt threw a bomb in the Central Legislative Assembly to protest against Public Safety Bill and Trade Disputes Bill to curtail civil liberties.
- No one was harmed since the bombs were aimed at making 'the deaf hear'.
- The objective of the mission was to get arrested and to use the trial court as a forum to make people aware of their movement and ideology.
- 23rd March 1931: Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev, and Rajguru were hanged in the Lahore conspiracy case.

- Jatin Das died on the 64th day of his fast.
- Azad was involved in an incident to blow up Viceroy Irwin's train near Delhi in December 1929. Escaped police arrest and was later shot in an encounter in a park in Allahabad in February 1931.

Chittagong Armoury Raid (April 1930)

- Surya Sen: Associated with the Non-Cooperation Movement and was a teacher in the national school in Chittagong.
- He was behind bars from 1926 to 1928 for his revolutionary activity.
- Surya Sen founded the Indian Republican Army.
- Sen, along with Anant Singh, Ganesh Ghosh, and Lokenath Baul, organized armed rebellion
- Planned to attack two main armories in Chittagong to seize and supply arms to the revolutionaries and to dislocate the railway link of Chittagong with the rest of Bengal.
- April 1930: raid was conducted under the banner of the Indian Republican Army Chittagong Branch.
- Raid was successful; Sen hoisted national flag and declared provisional revolutionary government.
- Sen was arrested in February 1933 and hanged in January 1934.
- Women revolutionaries associated with the IRA: Pritilata Waddedar, who died conducting a raid; and Kalpana Dutt who was arrested and tried along with Surya Sen and given a life sentence.

Simon Commission (1927)

- Government of India Act, 1919: A review committee on its working was to be set up after 10 years
- Simon commission: An all-white, 7-member Indian Statutory Commission, popularly appointed by British government under Stanley Baldwin's prime ministership and Sir John Simon as its chairman.
- The commission was tasked to give recommendations to the British government as to whether India was ready for further constitutional reforms and along what lines.
- February 3, 1928: The commission arrived in India, a nationwide hartal was organized and mass rallies were held.
- Commission was welcomed with black flag demonstrations, hartals, and slogans of 'Simon Go Back'.

- The **police came down brutally on demonstrators**; they were lathi-charged, not sparing even the senior leaders.
- **Jawaharlal Nehru and G.B. Pant was beaten up in Lucknow.**
- **Lala Lajpat Rai suffered severe blows on his chest in October 1928.** Later on November 17, 1928, Rai succumbed to injuries.

Recommendations of the Simon Commission

- **Abolition of dyarchy** and representative government in the provinces with autonomy.
- **Governor to have discretionary power** concerning internal security and administrative powers to protect the different communities.
- The number of members of the provincial legislative council is to be increased.
- It **rejected parliamentary responsibility** at the center.
- The **separate communal electorates are retained**
- **No universal franchise.**
- **No federalism as of now**; it suggested **Consultative Council of Greater India** should be established which should **include representatives of both the British provinces as well as princely states.**
- **North-West Frontier Province** and **Baluchistan to have local legislatures**, and the right to be represented at the center.
- **Sindh to be separated** from Bombay, and Burma to be separated from India.
- The **Indian army** should be **Indianized** and British forces must be retained.

Delhi Proposals of Muslim League (1927)

- **December 1927: Muslim leaders met at Delhi for their session and laid down four demands** to be incorporated into the draft constitution.
- These **proposals were accepted by Congress at its Madras session** (December 1927). It came to be k/a the 'Delhi Proposals'. These were:
 - **Joint electorates** in place of separate electorates.
 - **Reserved seats** for Muslims
 - **One-third representation** of Muslims in Central Legislative Assembly
 - **Punjab and Bengal-** Representation of Muslims in proportion to their population
 - Formation of three new Muslim majority provinces— Sindh, Baluchistan, and North-West Frontier Province.

Nehru Report (1928)

- **Given by: Motilal nehru (Not Jawahar Lal Nehru)**
- **Lord Birkenhead**, the Conservative Secretary of State, **justified the matter of exclusion of Indians** from the Simon Commission.

- As an answer to Lord Birkenhead's challenge, **an All Parties Conference met in February 1928** and **appointed a subcommittee** under the chairmanship of **Motilal Nehru to draft a constitution of India.**
- **The report was finalized by August 1928.**
- All the **recommendations of the Nehru Committee were accepted** by the leaders except for one- while the majority favored the "**dominion status**".

Main Recommendations of the Report

- **Dominion status** on lines of self-governing dominions.
- **Rejection of separate electorates**, instead, demand for **joint electorates** with reservation of seats for Muslims at the Centre and in provinces where they were in a minority
- **Linguistic organization of provinces.**
- Demand for **Fundamental rights** including equal rights for women, the right to form unions, and universal adult suffrage.
- **Responsible government** at the Centre and in provinces.
- **Full protection** is to be given to the cultural and religious interests of Muslims.
- **No interference** of the state in religion.

Jinnah's Fourteen Points

- **Federal Constitution with residual powers to provinces.**
- **Provincial autonomy.**
- **Concurrence of states necessary for any constitutional amendment by the center.**
- All legislatures and elected bodies to have **adequate representation of Muslims** in every province.
- Adequate representation to **Muslims in the services and self-governing bodies.**
- **One-third of Muslim representation in the central legislature.**
- In **any cabinet at the center or in the provinces, one-third was to be Muslims.**
- **Separate electorates.**
- **No bill or resolution is to be passed in any legislature if three-fourths of a minority community is not in favor of that bill/resolution.**
- **Any territorial readjustment to not affect the Muslim majority** in Punjab, Bengal, and NWFP.
- **Separation of Sindh from Bombay.**
- **Constitutional reforms in the NWFP and Balochistan.**
- **Full religious freedom to all communities.**
- **Protection of cultural, religious, educational, and linguistic rights of Muslims.**

Irwin's Declaration (October 31, 1929)

- Made **before the Simon Commission report came out.**
- It was the **combined effort of the Labour government and a Conservative viceroy.**
- It **promised Dominion Status to India, without a time scale.**
- **A Round Table Conference was promised after the Simon Commission submitted its report.**

Delhi Manifesto (November 1929)

- **Delhi Manifesto:** Put forward certain conditions for attending the Round Table Conference
- **The purpose of the Round Table Conference should be not to assess** whether or when dominion status was to be given **but to formulate a constitution for implementation of the dominion status.**
- **Congress to have majority representation at the conference.**
- **Pardoning the sentences of political prisoners.**
- **December 1929:** Gandhiji along with Motilal Nehru and other political leaders met Lord Irwin to discuss these demands.
- **Lord Irwin rejected the demands put forward in the Delhi Manifesto.**

Lahore Session of the Congress (1929)

- **Jawaharlal Nehru** was nominated the president for the **Lahore session of the Congress** in December 1929 mainly due to Gandhiji's backing.

Major decisions taken at the Lahore session

- **Boycott of Round Table Conference.**
- **The goal of Congress was Complete independence.**
- **Launch of civil disobedience** including non-payment of taxes and resignation of all members of legislatures.
- **January 26, 1930, was fixed as the first Independence (Purna Swaraj) Day,** to be celebrated everywhere. **(This is the reason why the nationalist leaders chose 26 January 1950 as the date of enactment of the Constitution even when it was completed on 26 November 1949)**
- **On December 31, 1929,** at midnight on the **banks of River Ravi, the newly adopted tricolor flag of freedom** was hoisted by **Jawaharlal Nehru** amidst slogans of 'Inquilab Zindabad.'
- **On January 26, 1930, an Independence Pledge was drafted by Gandhiji.** It was read out in local languages across the country and the national flag was hoisted.

Civil Disobedience Movement (1930)

Gandhi's Eleven Demands

Issues of General Interest	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● 50% reduction in expenditure on Army and civil services.● Introduce total prohibition.● Bring out reforms in Criminal Investigation Department (CID).● Change in Arms Act.● Release of political prisoners.● Accept Postal Reservation Bill.
Specific Bourgeois Demands	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Reduce rupee-sterling exchange ratio to 1s 4d● Introduce textile protection.● Reserve coastal shipping for Indians.
Specific Peasant Demands	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Reduce land revenue by 50%.● Abolish salt tax and the government's salt monopoly.

Dandi March (March 12-April 6, 1930)

- **02 March 1930:** Gandhiji informed Viceroy Irwin of his plan of action.
- **Gandhiji,** along with **78 members of Sabarmati Ashram,** was to march Sabarmati ashram to **Dandi** through the villages of Gujarat for 240 miles.
- **Started: on March 12,** when Gandhiji along with 78 followers marched from **Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi.**
- **Concluded: on April 6** when Gandhiji **broke salt law by picking up a lump of salt** at Dandi. (240 miles in 24 days).
- **March triggered defiance of salt laws all over the country.**
- **Gandhiji openly asked people to make salt and violate the salt law.**

Spread of Salt Law Disobedience

- **After 6th April, the defiance of the salt laws started all over the country.**
- **Nehru was arrested in April 1930** for defiance of the salt law.
- **The arrest evoked huge demonstrations in Madras, Calcutta, and Karachi.**
- **Gandhiji was arrested on May 4, 1930,** when he had announced that he would lead a raid on Dharasana Salt Works on the west coast.
- **Gandhi's arrest was followed by massive protests** in Bombay, Delhi, Calcutta, and Sholapur, where the response was the fiercest.
- **After Gandhi's arrest, the CWC sanctioned**
 - Non-payment of revenue in ryotwari areas
 - No-chowkidar-tax campaign in zamindari areas
 - Violation of forest laws in the Central Provinces.

Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931)

- **25 Jan 1931:** With the efforts of Tej Bahadur Sapru, Dr. Jayakar, and S.S.Shastri, **Gandhiji and all other members of the Congress Working Committee (CWC) were released unconditionally and the British agreed to negotiate with Gandhiji.**
- A pact was signed b/w **viceroy Irwin and Gandhi**, in Delhi on February 14, 1931.
- This Delhi Pact, aka the **Gandhi-Irwin Pact**, placed Congress on an equal footing with the government.
- **Irwin on behalf of the government agreed on**
 - Immediate release of all political prisoners not convicted of violence
 - Remission of all fines not yet collected
 - Return of all lands not yet sold to third parties
 - Leniency in treatment to those government servants who had resigned
 - Right to make salt in coastal villages for personal consumption (not for sale)
 - Right to peaceful and non-aggressive picketing
 - Withdrawal of emergency ordinances.
- **Gandhiji on behalf of the Congress agreed**
 - To suspend the civil disobedience movement
 - To participate in the next Round Table Conference on the constitutional question.
- **After Gandhi-Irwin Pact, Gandhiji decided to suspend the civil disobedience movement**
- **The youth was disappointed**, as they had participated enthusiastically.
- **Peasants of Gujarat were disappointed** as their lands were not restored immediately.

The Round Table Conferences

- The **Viceroy of India, Lord Irwin, and the Prime Minister of Britain, Ramsay MacDonald, agreed for round table conferences as announced by Lord Irwin on October 31, 1929.**

First Round Table Conference

- The **first conference in which the British and the Indians were treated as equals.**
- **Not attended:** Congress and business leaders.
- **Attended by:** Muslim league, hindu mahasabha, princes, untouchables and sikhs
- **Two women, Begum Jahanara Shahnawaz and Radhabai Subbarayan took part in the conference.**
- **Others that attended:** The Liberals, Indian Christians, Europeans, landlords from Bihar, United Provinces and Orissa, workers, and the Justice Party.
- **The Depressed Classes were represented by B.R. Ambedkar and Rettamalai Srinivasan.**

- The **Government of India** was represented by **Narendra Nath Law, Bhupendra Nath Mitra, C.P. Ramaswami Iyer, and M. Ramachandra Rao.**
- **The conference failed due to the non-attendance of Congress.** Civil disobedience continued in India.

Second Round Table Conference

- **Location:** London b/w September 7, 1931, to December 1, 1931.
- **Congress was represented by Gandhiji at the Conference**
- **A. Rangaswami Iyengar and Madan Mohan Malaviya** also were present at the Conference.
- **Attended by:** The princely states, Muslim League led by Aga Khan III, Hindu Mahasabha, the Liberals, Justice Party, Sikhs, Parsis, Indian Christians, Industry, Labours.
- **The Depressed Classes were represented by B.R. Ambedkar and Rettamalai Srinivasan.**
- **Sarojini Naidu, Begum Jahanara Shahnawaz, and Radhabai Subbarayan represented women at the conference.**
- **Gandhiji put forward the demand for the immediate establishment of a responsible government at the centre as well as in the provinces.**
- **rejected idea of a separate electorate for Muslims and untouchables as they also were Hindus.**
- **Gandhiji returned empty-handed to India** on December 28, 1931.

Third Round Table Conference

- **Duration:** b/w November 17, 1932, and December 24, 1932.
- **Not attended by the Indian National Congress or Gandhiji.**
- **The Princely states took part in the conference.**
- **Muslim League led by Aga Khan III, Depressed Classes led by B.R. Ambedkar, took part in the conference.**
- A **White paper** was published in March 1933 containing the recommendations of the conference.
- **A Joint Select Committee was formed** to study the recommendations and formulate a new Act for India.
- Based on the recommendations of the committee, a **draft Bill was produced** in February 1935 which was enforced as the **Government of India Act of 1935.**

Communal Award and Poona Pact

- **Announced by the British prime minister, Ramsay MacDonald, on August 16, 1932.**
- **The award was based on the findings of the Indian Franchise Committee (Lothian Committee).**

- The **award provided for separate electorates and reserved seats** for minorities, including the depressed classes which were granted seventy-eight reserved seats.
- **The Congress considered this award as another British weapon of divide and rule.**

Main Provisions of the Communal Award

- **Separate electorate for:** Muslims, Europeans, Sikhs, Indian Christians, Anglo-Indians, depressed classes, women, and even the Marathas.
- **Such an arrangement for the depressed classes was to be made for 20 years.**
- **Communal representation of seats** at provincial legislatures.
- **Doubling of existing seats** of the provincial legislatures.
- **3% of seats were to be reserved for women** in all provinces except in the Northwest Frontier Province.
- The **depressed classes are to be declared a minority.**
- The **depressed classes were to get 'double vote'**, one to be used through separate electorates and the other to be used in the general electorates.
- **Allocation of seats was to be made for laborers, landlords, traders, and industrialists.**

Gandhi's Response

- **Rejected the Communal award** as it attacked Indian unity and nationalism.
- Demanded a **joint electorate** in place of a separate electorate through the universal franchise.
- **20 sept. 1932:** Gandhiji undertook a **fast unto death** to oppose the award.
- A **deadlock was created b/w Gandhiji and Ambedkar**, who was in favor of separate electorates for depressed classes.

Poona Pact

- **Signed b/w: Gandhi and Dr. B.R. Ambedkar** (on behalf of the depressed classes)

- It **abandoned the idea of separate electorates for the depressed classes** and instead **seats reserved for them in provincial legislatures were increased from 71 to 147.**
- The **Central Legislature had to reserve 18% of all seats** for members of depressed classes.
- A **joint electorate** b/w Caste Hindus and the Depressed Classes.
- The government accepted the Pact.
- **Even after signing the Poona Pact, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar continued to denounce the Poona Pact till 1947.**

Government of India Act, 1935

- It **called for the formation of an All-India federation** with provinces and princely states as components.
- The **federal list, provincial list, and concurrent list were used to apportion powers between the centre and the units.** The Viceroy was given residuary powers. This union, however, never came to fruition because princely states refused to participate.
- It **ended dyarchy in the provinces and replaced it with "provincial autonomy."**
- The **legislation established responsible government in the provinces**, requiring the governor to act on the advice of ministers who were accountable to the provincial assembly.
- It **called for the establishment of dyarchy at the centre. This clause, however, was never implemented.**
- **Bicameralism was introduced** in six provinces, Bengal, Bombay Madras, Bihar, Assam, and the United Provinces.
- **Separate electorates were also established for the poor, women, and labour.**
- The **1858 statute that constituted the Council of India was repealed.** Instead, the secretary of state was given a staff of advisers.
- The **Federal Public Service Commission, Provincial Public Service Commissions, Joint Public Service Commissions, Federal Court, and Reserve Bank of India were all established under the legislation.**

36 CHAPTER

Towards Independence (1940-1947)

Lahore Resolution of the Muslim League (1940)

- **March 1940:** The Muslim League passed the “Pakistan Resolution” and put forward its demand for a separate autonomous region for Muslims.
- It demanded to group of all those areas where Muslims were in majority.
- Earlier, Sir Muhammad Iqbal had suggested grouping NWFP, Baluchistan, Sindh and Kashmir into an autonomous Muslim state within the federation.
- He was the one who inspired the movement for a separate nation for Muslims.
- The credit for coining the term “Pakistan” goes to Chaudhary Rehmat Ali, a student of Cambridge University.

August Offer (1940)

- **Germany’s success under Hitler** after the Second World War and the consequent fall of Belgium, Holland and France put England in a pacifying mood.
- As the war in Europe was changing, Congress was in a dilemma whether to support or take advantage of the British in the war.
- **Gandhiji and Nehru** were strongly against the idea of taking advantage of Britain’s position.
- The Congress, ready to compromise, asked the Government to let it form an interim government during the war period.
- The Government refused to accept the offer and came up with an alternate solution to get the cooperation of India in the war.
- **Linlithgow** made an offer known as the **August Offer on 8th August 1940** to gain the support of Indians in the war.

Proposals

- India is to be granted **dominion status**.
- **Expansion of the viceroy’s executive council** which would have a majority of Indians (drawn from major political parties)
- **Setting up a constituent assembly** after the war where mainly Indians would frame the constitution.
- **Consent of minorities** must be adopted for the future constitution.
- **Establishment of a war advisory council**

Individual Satyagraha (1941)

- Launched by Gandhiji upon the failure of the Civil Disobedience Movement.
- The British’s claim of India’s support during the war angered the Congress.
- Britishers issued ordinance after ordinance taking away the freedom of speech and that of the press and the right to organise associations.
- Gandhiji gave a call for limited satyagraha.
- The satyagrahi would demand the right to freedom of speech expressing his anger against the war.
- Came to be k/a the ‘Delhi Chalo Movement’.
- **Vinoba Bhave** in 1940 was the first to launch individual Satyagraha at Wardha, Maharashtra and **Nehru** was the second satyagrahi followed by **Brahma Datt**

The Cripps Mission (1942)

- After the failure of the August Offer, a mission headed by **Stafford Cripps** was sent to India in March 1942, to seek Indian support in the war.
- The reverses suffered by Britain in South-East Asia and the **Japanese threat to invade India** made the British conscious.
- There was pressure on Britain to seek Indian cooperation in the war.
- **Stafford Cripps** had actively supported the Indian national movement. He was a left-wing Labourite, the leader of the House of Commons and a member of the British War Cabinet.
- **Main proposals**
 - **Dominion status** for India after the war
 - **India is free to decide its relations with the Commonwealth**, the United Nations and other international bodies.
 - After the **end of the war**, a **constituent assembly** consisting of members of British India, as well as the Princely States, was to be convened to frame a new constitution.
 - Members of the assembly were **partly elected** by the provincial assemblies and **partly nominated** by the princes.
 - **Any province not willing to join the Union could form a separate Union**

- Until the constitution was prepared, **Defence of India** to remain in British hands and **the governor-general's powers would remain intact.**
- The proposals of **Cripps mission differed from the proposals** put forward by the British in the past as now-
- The Constitution-making power was rested solely in **Indian hands** (and not 'mainly' in Indian hands—as contained in the August Offer).
- Provinces were given the **freedom to remain independent** and have **separate constitutions.**
- Option to decide its relations with the Commonwealth.

Quit India Movement (1942)

- **Launched by Gandhi and congress** after the failure of the Cripps mission.
- The **CWC met at Wardha on July 14, 1942**, and accepted the idea of a struggle.
- The failure of the **Cripps Mission exposed the unchanged attitude of the British** on constitutional advance.
- The British evacuation of South-East Asia, leaving the people to their destiny, broke white prestige and exposed the rulers' discriminatory mentality.
- The masses became more dissatisfied as prices rose and supplies of rice, salt, and other essentials became scarce.
- The '**Quit India**' resolution was passed by the **All-India Congress Committee on 8th August 1942, at Gowalia Tank in Bombay.**
- The resolution was **proposed by Jawaharlal Nehru and seconded by Sardar Patel.**
- **Gandhiji gave** the slogan of Quit India in August 1942 and on the night of 8th August, he gave the slogan "**Do or Die**".
- **The resolution aimed at-**
 - **End to British rule** in India
 - **Forming a provisional Government** of India after British withdrawal.
 - **Launch of civil disobedience movement against British rule.**
 - **A commitment of free India to defend itself against all types of Fascism and imperialism.**
- The day after the resolution was passed, the Congress Working Committee, the **All-India Congress Committee and the Provincial Congress Committees were banned under the Criminal Law Amendment Act of 1908.**
- All **prominent leaders like Patel and Nehru were arrested** and taken to unknown destinations.
- **Public meetings were prohibited.**
- The **major leaders behind bars**, a young leader **Aruna Asaf Ali** presided over the Congress committee session on August 9 and hoisted the flag.

- **Masses attacked vital government institutions** such as police stations, post offices, railway stations, telegraph lines, etc. and hoisted national flags on public buildings.
- **Government buildings were burnt and communication lines disturbed.**
- **United Provinces and Bihar witnessed the maximum protests.**
- **Many nationalists** like Rammanohar Lohia, Jayaprakash Narayan, Aruna Asaf Ali, Usha Mehta, Biju Patnaik, Chhotubhai Puranik, Achyut Patwardhan, Sucheta Kripalani, **went underground and took to subversive activities.**
- **An underground radio was started by Usha Mehta in Bombay.**

Parallel governments

- **Ballia** (in August 1942 for a week) under **Chittu Pandey**, Congress leaders released.
- **Tamluk** (Midnapore, from December 1942 to September 1944) under **Jatiya Sarkar**, Cyclone relief work.
- **Satara** (mid-1943 to 1945)—named "**Prati Sarkar**", was organised under leaders like Y.B. Chavan, Nana Patil, etc. and in Talcher (Orissa).
- **10 Feb to 3 March 1943: Gandhiji started a fast** (21 days- longest fast of Gandhiji) **against his unlawful detention by the Government.**

Rajagopalachari Formula (1944)

- **Named the C.R. Formula** after its proponent, Chakravarti Rajagopalachari.
- He prepared a formula for **Congress-League cooperation in 1944.**
- **The formula was a tacit acceptance of the League's demand for Pakistan.**
- **Gandhiji supported the formula.**
- **The main points in the CR Plan**
 - **Appointment of a commission to demarcate the boundaries** of the Muslim majority regions in North-west and Eastern India.
 - **Muslim League to accept Congress demand for independence** and support them in the formation of an interim government.
 - After the war, the entire population of **Muslim majority areas** in the North-West and North-East India to **decide by a plebiscite**, whether or not to form a **separate sovereign state.**
 - In case of acceptance of partition, a **joint safeguard** for defence, commerce, communications, etc.
 - The above **terms are to be operative only in case of full transfer of power to India.**

Desai-Liaquat Pact (1945)

- Resolve the League - Congress deadlock
- **January 1945: Bhulabhai Desai and Liaquat Ali Khan drafted a proposal for the formation of an interim government at the centre:**
 - Congress and League nominates equal members in the central legislature.
 - 20% reserved seats for minorities (including Sikhs and Scheduled Castes)
 - The Government of India Act, 1935 will serve as a guideline for the formation of Government.
- No settlement reached b/w Congress and League.

Wavell Plan (1945)

- The Japanese threat forced the Conservative government in Britain led by Churchill to solve the constitutional deadlock in India.
- The viceroy, Lord Wavell was made to negotiate with Indian leaders who had just been released from jail on 1st June 1945.
- **Shimla Conference: June 1945-** 21 Indians were convened by the viceroy, Lord Wavell to discuss the wavell plan at Shimla.
- **The main proposals**
 - Except the governor-general and the commander-in-chief, all executive council members to be Indian.
 - Hindus and Muslims to have equal representation in the Executive council.
 - Council to function within the framework of the GOI Act 1935.
 - Veto power of the governor general to be exercised on the advice of ministers.
 - Future channels for negotiation kept open for negotiations on a new constitution once the war was finally won.
 - Muslim League was not entitled to nominate all the Muslim representatives.

Subhash Chandra Bose and the Indian National Army (INA)

- S.C Bose passed the Indian Civil Services examination but resigned from the service in 1921 and joined Congress to fight for freedom.
- Chittaranjan Das was his political guru.
- **1938:** Set up National Planning Committee with Jawaharlal Nehru as the President.
- **1939:** He defeated Pittabhi Sittaramaiyya (supported by Gandhiji) and became the president of the Congress for the second time.
- **Ideological differences:** Resigned from the post of Congress Presidentship at the 1939 session of INC held at Tripuri (Madhya Pradesh).

- **1939:** He laid the foundation of Forward Bloc.
- **1940:** Bose convened an Anti-Compromise Conference at Ramgarh to give a call to the people to not help the Imperialist War with any resource—men, money or materials.
- For this, Bose was arrested in July 1940.
- Following a hunger strike, he was released from prison in December 1940, and placed under house arrest.
- **January 1941:** Bose had escaped to Germany via Afghanistan.
- **April 1941:** He met Hitler under the pseudonym, Orlando Mazzotta.
- Bose was called 'Netaji' by German and Indian officials.
- Gave the famous slogan, 'Jai Hind' from the Free India Centre, Germany.
- **1942:** Established the "Azad hind radio" in Germany.
- **Jan. 1943:** He left Germany and reached Singapore in July of the same year and assumed the charge of Supreme Commander of the Indian National Army which was raised by Captain Mohan Singh in 1942.
- **Oct. 1943:** Laid the foundation of the Provisional Government of Azad Hind.
 - Headquarters at Rangoon and Singapore.
- Gave the slogan "You give me blood, and I will give you freedom" in Burma.

Origin of the Indian National Army

- Raised by Captain Mohan Singh from amongst Indian prisoners of war (POWs) in 1942.
- **Sept. 1942:** The first division of INA was formed with 16,300 men.
- **Conference in Bangkok:** Decided to place the INA under an Indian Independence League under the chairmanship of Rashbehari Bose.
- The League was established in 1942 in Tokyo.
- **1943:** Rashbehari Bose transferred the control and leadership of the Indian Independence League and the INA to Subhash Chandra Bose.
- **25th August 1943:** Subhash Bose became Supreme Commander of the INA.
- **Rani jhansi Regiment:** A women's regiment formed within INA.
- **INA headquarters was shifted to Rangoon (in Burma)** in January 1944, and the army recruits were to march from there to Delhi shouting the war cry "Chalo Delhi".
- **November 6, 1943:** Andaman and Nicobar Islands were renamed Shahid Dweep and Swaraj Dweep respectively after the Japanese army gave these islands to the INA.

- **March 1944:** The Azad Hind Fauz crossed the Burma border and stood on Indian soil
- **May 1944:** INA conquered Imphal and Kohima. The battalion was led by **Shah Nawaz** accompanied by the Japanese army.
- **6 July 1944:** Bose addressed Mahatma Gandhiji as the 'Father of Nation', from the Azad Hind Radio.
- **15 August 1945:** Japan surrendered in the Second World War resulting in INA surrender.
- **18 August 1945:** Subhash Bose died mysteriously in an air crash at Taipei (Taiwan).

INA Trials at the Red Fort (November 1945)

- The INA officers court martialed at Red Fort in Delhi.
- Initially **Prem Kumar Sehgal (a Hindu), Shah Nawaz Khan (a Muslim), and Gurbaksh Singh Dhillon (a Sikh)** charged with treason were trialed.
- **Bhulabhai Desai:** The chief defence advocate of the INA prisoners.
- **Other defendants:** Tej Bahadur Sapru, Kailash Nath Katju, Jawaharlal Nehru, Jinnah and Asaf Ali.
- **Found guilty:** Officers were court-martialled but widespread agitation resulted in the suspension of their sentences.
- **Supporters of INA:** Muslim League, Communist Party, Unionists, Akalis, Justice Party, Ahrars in Rawalpindi, Rashtriya Swayamsevak Sangh, Hindu Mahasabha and the Sikh League.

General Elections (1945-46)

- **Lord Wavell** announced the Central legislative assembly and the Council of State election on 19th September 1945, however, held in December 1945.
- **The Congress won 59 out of 102** total seats in the Central Assembly and 91% of non-Muslim votes.
- **In the provincial elections, it got a majority in most provinces except in Bengal, Sindh and Punjab.**
- **Muslim League got 86.6% of the Muslim votes.**
 - It won the 30 reserved seats in the Central Assembly and claimed the majority in Bengal and Sindh.
- Unlike in 1937, now the League established itself as the dominant party among Muslims.
- **The leaders did not campaign just for seeking votes but used elections as an opportunity to lead the final action for India's freedom.**

Three Upsurges—Winter of 1945-46

- **November 21, 1945**—Calcutta over the INA trials.
- **February 11, 1946**—Calcutta against the seven-year sentence to INA officer Rashid Ali.
- **February 18, 1946**—Bombay, a strike by the Royal Indian Navy ratings.

The Cabinet Mission (1946)

- **February 1946:** Labour party under Clement Attlee announced to send a high-powered mission to India for a negotiated and peaceful transfer of power
- **Members:** Pethick Lawrence, Secretary of State for India; Stafford Cripps, and A.V. Alexander.
- **Chairman:** Pethick Lawrence.
- **24 March 1946:** The Cabinet Mission reached Delhi and met Indian leaders of all parties and groups on the issues of an interim government, and the principles and procedures for framing a new constitution.

Objectives

- To obtain an agreement with the Indian leaders as to the framing of a constitution for India.
- To formulate a constitution-making body (the Constituent Assembly of India).
- To establish an Executive Council with the support of the major Indian parties.

Main Points of the plan

- Rejected the demand for a full-fledged Pakistan.
- Three-tier government at provincial, section and union levels.
- A constituent assembly of 389 members (292- from provincial assemblies, 93 from princely states and 4 from chief commissioner's provinces) was to be elected by provincial assemblies by proportional representation.
- A separate constitution for provinces by each group separately, and a common Union Constitution to be framed by all three sections together.
- Common control of defence, communication and external affairs.
- A federal structure for India.
- Provinces vested with residual powers.
- Princely states were no longer to be under the paramountcy of the British government and were free to enter into an arrangement with successor governments or the British government.
- An interim government was to be formed from the constituent assembly.
- **Congress Reaction:** The Cabinet Mission Plan was against the creation of Pakistan since grouping was optional.
- **The Muslim League believed Pakistan to be implied in the compulsory grouping.** (The Mission later clarified that the grouping was compulsory.)
- **The Muslim League on June 6 and the Congress on June 24, 1946, accepted the Cabinet Mission Plan.**
- **July 1946:** Elections were held in provincial assemblies for the Constituent Assembly and on July 29, 1946, the League withdrew its acceptance from the plan and gave a call for "direct action" from August 16 for the creation of Pakistan.

Interim Government

- Formed on September 2, 1946.
- Muslim League joined the Interim Government on October 26, 1946, on the insistence of Wavell. It, however, refused to join the Constituent Assembly.
- Interim government: Entrusted with the task of assisting the British Government in the transfer of power to India.
 - To act as an administrative body for the period b/w 1946-1947.
- The interim government was composed of princely states, presidencies and provinces.

Council of Ministers Under Interim Government	
Office	Name
Viceroy and Governor-General of India	Lord Mountbatten
Commander-in-chief	Sir Claude Auchinleck (Britain)
Vice President of Executive Council	Jawaharlal Nehru
Home Affairs, information and Broadcasting	Vallabhbhai Patel (INC)
Agriculture and Food	Rajendra Prasad (INC)
Commerce	Ibrahim Ismail Chundrigar (Muslim League)
Education and Arts	C. Rajagopalachari
Defence	Baldev Singh
Finance	Liaquat Ali Khan (Muslim League)
Health	Ghazanfar Ali Khan (Muslim League)
Industries and Supplies	Dr John Mathai
Labour	Jagjivan Ram
Law	Jogendra Nath Mandal (Muslim League)
Posts and Air	Abdur Rab Nishtar (Muslim League)
Railways and Communications	Asaf Ali
Work, Mines and Power	C.H. Bhabha

- The Constituent Assembly held its first meeting on 9th December 1946 in which the Muslim League did not participate.
- The League even refused to attend the informal meetings of the cabinet to make decisions.
- They were critical of the appointments made by the Congress members.
- Liaqat Ali Khan as the finance minister restricted the functioning of other ministries.
- When the League joined the Interim Government, Congress demanded that the British get the League to change its attitude in the Interim Government or quit.

- February 1947: Nine Congress members wrote to the viceroy demanding the resignation of League members and threatening the withdrawal of their nominees.
- As a result, the League demanded the dissolution of the Constituent Assembly.

Formation of Constituent Assembly (1946)

- 9 December 1946: First meeting with Dr Sachidanand Sinha as the President.
- 11th December 1946: Dr Rajendra Prasad was elected the President of the Assembly.
- The League did not attend the Constituent Assembly.
- 13 committees were formed to draft the constitution. Dr B.R.Ambedkar was appointed the President of the Drafting Committee.
- 13 December 1946: The 'Objectives Resolution' drafted by Jawaharlal Nehru was placed before the assembly and it was passed on 22nd January 1947.
 - This Objectives Resolution was later incorporated into the Constitution as the "Preamble of India".
- Separate Assembly to frame the constitution of Pakistan.
- The constitution thus framed by the assembly was passed on 26 November 1949 and it came to force on 26 January 1950, establishing India into the Sovereign Republic.

Clement Attlee's Statement

- Clement Attlee (British prime minister) made a statement on February 20, 1947.
- The Main Points of Attlee's Statement
 - June 30, 1948, was fixed as the date for the transfer of power to India even if the Indians were not ready.
 - The British would transfer power either to some form of central government or to the existing provincial governments if the Muslim majority provinces did not join the Constituent Assembly.
 - British paramountcy over the princely states would lapse with the transfer of power, but these would not be transferred to any successor government in British India.
 - Mountbatten would replace Wavell as the viceroy of India.
- The date for transfer of power was fixed by the Government to avoid any constitutional crisis as the British's authority had declined after the war and it did not have sufficient resources to colonize much longer.
- Congress accepted the provision of transfer of power to one centre as it meant that the existing assembly could go ahead and frame a constitution for the areas represented by it.

- The League did not support the statement and launched a civil disobedience movement to overthrow the coalition government in Punjab.

Mountbatten Plan (3rd June 1947)

- **24 March 1947:** Mountbatten was appointed as viceroy of India.
- **3rd June 1947:** Mountbatten arrived in India and undertook the task of the final transfer of power from Britain to India.
- **Objective of his arrival:** To explore the options of unity and division till October 1947 and then advise the British government on the form of transfer of power.
- **The important points of the plan were as follows**
 - Punjab and Bengal Legislative Assemblies to meet in two groups, Hindus and Muslims, to vote for partition.
 - If a simple majority of either group voted for partition, then these provinces would be partitioned, in which case, **two dominions and two constituent assemblies would be created.**
 - Sindh would take its own decision.
 - Establishment of a **boundary commission** in case of partition.
 - **Referendums in NWFP and Sylhet district of Bengal** to choose whether to join India or Pakistan in case of partition.
 - **Independence for princely states was ruled out.** They either had to join India or Pakistan
 - **Independence for Bengal ruled out**
 - **Accession of Hyderabad to Pakistan was ruled out.**
 - **Transfer of power to take place on August 15, 1947, not in June 1948 as mentioned in Attlee's statement.**
- The plan was accepted by the British Parliament and it led to the passing of the Indian Independence Act on 5th July 1947, which received royal assent on 18 July 1947.
- **In favour of Partition:** legislative assemblies of Bengal and Punjab.
- **Remained with india:** East Bengal and West Punjab joined Pakistan; West Bengal and East Punjab.

- Sylhet joined East Bengal and in NWFP, the followers of Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan boycotted the referendum, and the rest of the population decided in favour of Pakistan.
- Balochistan and Sindh decided to go with Pakistan.
- All the princely states signed the instrument of accession with India. However, four princely states namely, Manipur, Junagadh, Hyderabad and Kashmir decided to remain independent.

Indian Independence Act, 1947

- **July 5, 1947:** The British Parliament passed the Indian Independence Act based on the Mountbatten Plan, which received royal assent on July 18, 1947, and it was implemented on August 15, 1947.

Provision of the Act

- The Act provided for the **partition of India** and the creation of two independent dominions of India and Pakistan with effect from August 15, 1947.
- The boundary for the two dominions was fixed as per the recommendations of the **Boundary Commission (headed by Sir Cyril Radcliffe).**
- A common governor-general for both the dominions if so agreed by them. However, after the partition, Muhammad Ali Jinnah was appointed the Governor-General of India while **C. Rajagoplachari was made the Governor-General of Independent India.**
- The governments of the two dominions would function per the Government of India Act, 1935 until the **new constitution was drafted.**
- **British paramountcy and suzerainty over the Indian states as well as all its treaties and agreements would lapse on August 15, 1947.**
- **No bill to be reserved for the British Crown in future.**
- The office of **Secretary of State for India to be abolished.**
- The **constituent assembly of each new dominion would function as the legislature** of that dominion, and the existing Central Legislative Assembly and the Council of States would automatically dissolve.
- **As per the provisions of the Act, Pakistan became independent on August 14 while India achieved its freedom on August 15, 1947**

37 CHAPTER

India on the eve of Independence

Boundary Commission

- **Under:** Cyril Radcliffe.
- **Objective:** To demarcate the boundary b/w India and Pakistan
- **Award was ready by August 12, 1947, Mountbatten decided to make it public only after August 15** so that the British could escape all responsibility for chaos and disturbance.
- **Mass migration** was witnessed from across the border amidst chaos, violence, and anarchy.

Division of Resources

- A **Partition Council** presided over by the Governor-General with two representatives each of both India and Pakistan was set up to look after the division of assets.
- A **joint defense council under Auchinleck** as supreme commander was set up to look into the division of armed forces and their plant, machinery, equipment, and stores.

Integration of Princely States

- **Pre-1947:** Entire India was divided into two parts- **British-administered provinces and the Princely states (roughly 40 % of India).**
- **Attlee's announcement:** British-administered provinces would directly be transferred to the Independent Indian Government after the official power transfer.
- The **Princely States were given three choices:**
- **Remain Independent, join either India or Pakistan.**
- **Patel, assisted by V P Menon,** undertook to integrate Indian states in two phases using a skilful combination of **baits and threats** of mass pressure to unify India.

The Accession Process

Phase I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All states had signed the Instrument of Accession with the Indian government by August 15, 1947. (except Kashmir, Hyderabad, and Junagadh).
Phase II	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Involved the process of integrating states with neighbouring provinces or into new units. Eg: Kathiawar Union, Vindhya and Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan or Himachal Pradesh along with internal constitutional changes in states (Hyderabad, Mysore, Travancore, Cochin).

- Princely states were offered privy purses while some princes were made governors and rajpramukh in free India.

Hyderabad

- **Ruler:** Nizam Mir Usman Ali.
- **Demand:** An independent state and blatantly refused to join the Indian dominion.
- **September 13, 1948:** Indian troops were sent to Hyderabad under 'Operation Polo'.
- The Indian army gained full control of the state and Hyderabad became an integral part of India.

Junagadh

- **Ruler:** Nawab, Muhammad Mahabat Khanji III.
- **September 15, 1947:** Nawab Mahabat Khanji chose to accede to Pakistan ignoring Mountbatten's views, arguing that Junagadh adjoined Pakistan by sea.
- **Mangrol and Babariawad,** two states under Junagadh's sovereign control, proclaimed independence from Junagadh and joined India.
- The government pointed out that the state was 80% Hindu and called for a plebiscite.
- **26 October:** The Nawab and his family fled to Pakistan following clashes with Indian troops.
- **7 November 1947:** Junagadh invited the Government of India to take over the State's administration.
- **Junagadh became a part of the Indian state of Saurashtra until November 1, 1956,** when Saurashtra became part of Bombay state.

Kashmir

- The ruler of Kashmir, Maharaja Hari Singh had offered a proposal of standstill agreement to both India and Pakistan.
- **Pakistan invaded Kashmir from the north** with an army of soldiers and tribesmen carrying weapons.
- **The Maharaja of Jammu and Kashmir appealed to India for help.**
- **26th October 1947:** Maharaja Hari Singh fled from Srinagar and arrived in Jammu where he signed an 'Instrument of Accession' of J&K state.
- **5th March, 1948:** Maharaja Hari Singh announced the formation of an interim popular government with Sheikh Mohammed Abdullah as the Prime Minister.
- **1951:** The state constituent assembly was elected.
- **1952:** The Delhi Agreement was signed b/w Prime Ministers of India and Jammu & Kashmir, giving special position to the state under Indian Constitutional framework.

38 CHAPTER

Basics of Indian Constitution

Evolution of Constitution of India

Company Rule in India (1773-1858)

Regulating Act, 1773	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Laid the foundation of Central Administration in India. Governor of Bengal → Governor-General of Bengal. (Lord Warren Hastings) Executive Council of 4 members to assist the GGB. Governors of Madras & Bombay presidencies subordinate to GGB. Set up the SC of Calcutta with 1 Chief justice and 3 other judges. Court of Directors of the Company to report the British Government regarding Company's revenue, civil and military affairs in India.
Pitt's India Act, 1784	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Established a system of Double Government. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Court of Director to manage Company's commercial affairs Board of Control to manage its political affairs. Board of Control to supervise and direct civil and military operations and revenues of the British possessions in India. (First time acknowledged)
Charter Act, 1813	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abolished the trade monopoly of the Company in India <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exceptions: trade in tea and trade with China. Authorized Local Governments to levy taxes
Charter Act, 1833	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GGB = Governor-General of India (Lord William Bentinck) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vested all civil and military powers Exclusive legislative powers of entire British India. Company → purely administrative body.
Charter Act, 1853	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Separated legislative and executive functions of the GGI's Council. 6 members Indian Legislative Council to function as mini parliament. Open competition system for Indian Civil Services for Indians also. Introduced local representation in the Indian (Central) Legislative Council. (Out of 6 members, 4 to be appointed by the local governments of Madras, Bombay, Bengal and Agra)

Crown Rule in India (1858 to 1947)

Government of India Act, 1858	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> British Government took control over the territory of India Also known as Act of Good Government of India. GGI = Viceroy of India (Lord Canning) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Representative of the British Crown in India. Board of Control and Court of Directors ceased to exist. Secretary of State for India, with complete authority and control over Indian administration. Created a 15-member Council of India to assist the SSI.
Indian Councils Act, 1861	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Viceroy to nominate Indians as the non-official members (Lord Canning nominated 3 Indians: The Raja of Benaras, the Maharaja of Patiala and Sir Dinkar Rao) Decentralized legislative powers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Empowered the Bombay and Madras Presidencies. Established new legislative councils for Bengal, North-Western Provinces and Punjab. Viceroy to make rules and orders for the Council <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Members of the council in-charge of and authorized to issue orders regarding their allocated departments Viceroy to issue ordinances in emergency with a validity of 6 months.

<p>Indian Councils Act, 1909</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Also known as Morley-Minto Reforms. ● Members in the CLC ↑ from 16 to 60 and members in the PLCs also increased but not uniformly. ● Members of LC can ask supplementary questions, move resolutions on the budget, etc. ● Association of Indians with the executive councils of the Viceroy and Governors. (Satyendra Prasad Sinha as the Law member) ● Communal representation for Muslims and separate electorate.
<p>Government of India Act, 1919</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Also known as the Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms. ● Separated Central and Provincial subjects. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Provincial subjects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Transferred subjects: governed by the Governor with the aid of ministers of the LC ■ Reserved subjects: governed by the Governor with his executive council. ● Introduced bicameralism and direct elections in the country. ● 3 out of 6 members of the Viceroy's executive council = Indian. ● Separate electorates for Sikhs, Indian Christians, Anglo-Indians and Europeans also. ● Granted franchise to a people based on property, tax or education. ● Created office of High Commissioner for India in London. ● Set up a Central Service Commission for recruiting civil servants. ● Separated provincial budgets from the Central budget and authorized the provincial legislatures to enact their budgets.
<p>Government of India Act, 1935</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Established All India Federation = provinces + princely states. ● Divided powers into three lists: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Federal list (for Centre, with 59 items), ○ Provincial list (for Provinces, with 54 items) ○ Concurrent list (for both, with 36 items). ● Residuary Powers: vested in the Viceroy ● Abolished dyarchy in the provinces and introduced provincial autonomy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Introduced responsible Governments in provinces ● Adoption of dyarchy at the Centre ● Federal subjects were divided into transferred subjects and reserved subjects. ● Introduced bicameralism in 6 out of 11 provinces (Bengal, Bombay, Madras, Bihar, Assam and the United Provinces). ● Separate electorates for depressed classes, women and labour. ● Abolished the Council of India. ● Established <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reserve Bank of India to control the currency and credit of the country. ○ Federal Public Service Commission, ○ Provincial Public Service Commission ○ Joint Public Service Commission. ○ Federal Court.
<p>Indian Independence Act, 1947</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Gave immediate effect to Mountbatten Plan ● Ended British rule in India <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Declared India independent and sovereign state from August 15, 1947. ● Partitioned of India and Pakistan as two independent dominions with right to secede from the British Commonwealth. ● Empowered the Constituent Assemblies to frame and adopt any constitution of their respective nations ● Abolished the office of SSI and transferred powers to Secretary of State for Commonwealth Affairs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Discontinued the appointment of Civil Servants ● Dropped the title of Emperor of India of the King of England. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Crown ceased to be the Source of Authority. ○ Deprived him of his right to veto bills or ask for a reservation of certain bills for his approval. ● Designated the GGI and provincial governors = constitutional (nominal) heads of the states.

Constituent Assembly

Cabinet Mission Plan provisioned to set up a Constituent Assembly of India:

- **Total strength = 389 partly elected and partly nominated**
 - **296 seats** were allotted to **British India**
 - **292 members** from the **11 governors' provinces**
 - **4** from the **4 chief commissioners' provinces**
 - **93 seats** to the **Princely States**.
- **Allotted seats in proportion to their respective population.**
- **Seats allocated to each British province were to be divided among Muslims, Sikhs and General (others), in proportion to their population.**
- Representatives of each community → **elected by members of that community by proportional representation using a single transferable vote.**
- Representatives of the **princely states** were to be **nominated by the heads of the princely states**
- Members were **indirectly elected** by the members of the provincial assemblies.
- **Election for British Indian Provinces was held in July-August 1946.**
 - **Indian National Congress** won **208 seats**,
 - **Muslim League** won **73 seats**
 - **Independent players** held **15 seats**
- **Seats of princely states were not filled** as they refrained from the Assembly
- **Mahatma Gandhi was not a member** of the Constituent Assembly.
- **On April 28, 1947**, representatives of the **six states became part of the assembly**
- After the **Mountbatten Plan of June 3, 1947**, most **princely states entered the assembly.**
- Later **Muslim League from the Indian dominion also joined** the assembly.

Working of the Constituent Assembly

- **First meeting:** December 9, 1946.
 - **Muslim League boycotted** and **demanding a separate state of Pakistan**
 - Only 21 members attended
 - **Dr. Sachchidananda Sinha** was elected as the **interim President of the Assembly**, (French practice)
 - **Dr Rajendra Prasad** was elected as the **President of the Assembly**
 - **H.C. Mukherjee and V.T. Krishnamachari** → **Vice-President**

Objective Resolution

- Presented on Dec 13, 1946, by **JL Nehru** in the Constituent Assembly, **unanimously adopted** by the assembly **on January 22, 1947.**

- **Important provisions:**
 - **Proclaim India as the Independent Sovereign Republic**
 - **India shall be a Union** of territories of British India that join it
 - **Boundaries determined by the Constituent Assembly**, which shall possess **residuary powers and exercise all powers and functions** of the Government and administration implied in the Union
 - **Power and authority** of Independent India **derived from the people**
 - Shall **guarantee** to all the people of India
 - **Justice**, social, economic and political;
 - **Equality** of status of opportunity and before the law;
 - **Freedom** of thought, expression, belief, faith, worship, association and action
 - **Adequate safeguards** shall be provided for **minorities, backward and tribal areas and depressed and other backward classes**
 - Maintain the **integrity of the territory of the Republic and its sovereign rights** on land, sea and air according to justice and the law of civilised nations
 - **Attains its rightful and honoured place in the world** and makes its total and willing **contribution to the promotion of world peace and the welfare of mankind.**

Changes after the Indian Independence Act, 1947

- **Assembly** → **fully sovereign body** to frame the Constitution
- Became the **legislative body.**
 - **Responsible for framing the Constitution and enact ordinary laws** for the country.
 - **Worked as the Constitutional body** → **chaired by Dr Rajendra Prasad**
 - **As a legislative body** → **G.V. Mavlankar** became chairman (till **Nov 26, 1949**).
- **Muslim League withdrew from the assembly**
 - **Reduced the total strength to 299** from 389.
 - **Strength of Indian provinces reduced to 229** from 296
 - **Princely states to 70** from 93.

Other Functions Performed by the Assembly

- **Ratified India's membership of the Commonwealth** in May 1949
- **Adopted the National Flag** of India on July 22, 1947
- **Adopted the National Anthem** on January 24, 1950
- **Elected Dr Rajendra Prasad as the first President** of India on January 24, 1950
- **On January 24, 1950**, the Constituent Assembly held its **final session** but **continued as the provincial parliament** from **January 26, 1950**, till the first **general elections in 1951-52** were held.

Committees of the Constituent Assembly

	Committee	Headed by
Major Committee	Union Powers Committee	J.L. Nehru
	Union Constitution Committee	J.L. Nehru
	Provincial Constitution Committee	Sardar Patel
	Drafting Committee	Dr B.R. Ambedkar
	Advisory Committee on Fundamental Rights, Minorities and Tribal and Excluded Areas	Sardar Patel
	Fundamental Rights Sub-Committee	J.B. Kriplani
	Minorities Sub-Committee	H.C. Mukherjee
	North-East Frontier Tribal Areas and Assam Excluded & Partially Excluded Areas Sub-Committee	Gopinath Bardoloi
	Excluded and Partially Excluded Areas (Other than those in Assam) Sub-Committee	A.V. Thakkar
	North-West Frontier Tribal Areas Sub-Committee	
	Rules of Procedure Committee	Dr Rajendra Prasad
	States Committee (for Negotiation with states)	J.L. Nehru
	Steering Committee	Dr Rajendra Prasad
	Minor Committee	Finance and Staff Committee
Credentials Committee		A.K. Ayyar
House Committee		B. Pattabhi Sitaramayya
Order of Business Committee		Dr K.M. Munshi
Ad-hoc Committee on National Flag		Dr Rajendra Prasad
Committee on Functions of the Constituent Assembly		G.V. Mavalankar
Ad-hoc Committee on the Supreme Court		S. Varadachari
Committee on Chief Commissioners' Provinces		B. Pattabhi Sitaramayya
Expert Committee on the Financial Provisions of the Union Constitution		Nalini Ranjan Sarkar
Linguistic Provinces Commission		S.K. Dar
Special Committee to Examine the Draft Constitution		J.L. Nehru
Press Gallery Committee		Usha Nath Sen
Ad-hoc Committee on Citizenship		S. Vallabhachari

Drafting Committee

- On **August 29, 1947**, set up to prepare a draft of the new Constitution.
- **Seven-member committee** with
 - Dr B.R. Ambedkar → Chairman
 - N. Gopalaswamy Ayyangar
 - Alladi Krishnaswamy Ayyar
 - Dr K.M. Munshi
 - Syed Mohammad Saadullah
 - N.M. Rau
 - T.T. Krishnamachari
- **First draft published in February 1948**
- **Second draft published in October 1948.**

Enactment of the Constitution

- **Dr B.R. Ambedkar introduced the final draft on Nov 4, 1948**, for the first reading.
- **Second reading held on November 15, 1948**,

- **Third reading on November 14, 1949.**
- **Draft was passed on November 26, 1949 (Constitution Day).**
- **Constitution, as adopted on November 26, 1949**, contained Preamble, 394 Articles and 8 Schedules.
- Provisions of citizenship, elections, provisional parliament, temporary and transitional provisions and short titles contained in Articles 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 60, 324, 366, 367, 379, 380, 388, 391, 392 and 393 **came into force on November 26, 1949**. The remaining provisions came into force **on January 26, 1950**.
- With the adoption of the Constitution, all the provisions under the Indian Independence Act, 1947 and the **Government of India Act, 1935**, were **repealed**.
- **Abolition of the Privy Council Jurisdiction Act (1949)** continued.

- **S.N. Mukherjee** = chief draftsman of the constitution
- **Prem Behari Narain Raizada** = calligrapher
 - handwritten the original text of the constitution in a **flowing italic style**.
- **beautified and decorated** by artists from **Shanti Niketan** including **Nand Lal Bose** and **Beohar Rammanohar Sinha**.
- **calligraphy of the Hindi version** = **Vasant Krishan Vaidya**
 - decorated and illuminated = **Nand Lal Bose**.
- **elephant** = symbol of the Constituent Assembly.
 - **Elephant figurine** carved on the seal of the assembly.
- Originally, the Constitution of India did **not** make any **provision concerning an authoritative text of the Constitution in the Hindi Language**.
 - made by the **58th Constitutional Amendment Act of 1987** which inserted a new **Article 394-A** in the last part of the constitution.

Preamble

“We, THE PEOPLE OF INDIA, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a Sovereign Socialist Secular Democratic Republic and to secure to all its citizens:
Justice, Social, Economic and Political;
Liberty of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship;
Equality of status and opportunity; and to promote among them all;
Fraternity assuring the dignity of the individual and the unity and integrity of the Nation;
In our constituent assembly this twenty-sixth day of November, 1949, do hereby adopt, enact and give to ourselves this constitution.”

- **Provides guidelines** for the Constitution
- **Embodies basic philosophy and fundamental values** as the basis for the Constitution
- **Reflects dreams and aspirations** of the founding fathers of the Constitution.
- **Enacted after the rest of the Constitution** was already enacted.
- **Neither a source of power** to the legislature **nor a prohibition**
- **Non-justiciable** not enforceable in Courts of law.
- **Can be amended** without altering the basic structure.

Key Terms related to Preamble

- **Sovereignty: Absolute Independence** is a government which is **not controlled by any other power**: internal or external. A country cannot have its

own Constitution without being sovereign. India is a sovereign country. It is free from any external control.

- **Socialist: not part of the original Constitution**.
 - Added by **42nd Amendment act**
 - Used in the context of economic planning.
 - Commitment to attain ideals like **removal of inequalities, provision of minimum basic necessities to all, equal pay for equal work**.
- **Secularism**: added by **42nd Constitutional Amendment Act 1976**.
 - **No state religion**- the state **does not support any particular religion**
- **Democratic Republic**: The government is **elected by the people** and is **responsible and accountable to the people**.
 - **Democratic provisions**: Universal adult franchise, elections, Fundamental Rights and responsible Government.
 - **Republic**: the **elected head** of the state (President → indirectly elected) not a hereditary ruler as Britain.
- **Justice**: to give people what they are entitled to in terms of basic rights to food, clothing, housing, participation in decision making and living with dignity as human beings.
 - Taken from the **Russian Revolution (1917)**
 - Three **dimensions of Justice**- **social, economic and political**.
 - **Social justice**: equal treatment of all citizens without any social distinction based on caste, colour, race, religion, sex and so on.
 - **Economic justice**: non-discrimination on economic factors.

Social justice + economic justice = Distributive justice

- **Political justice**: all citizens should have equal political rights, equal access to all political offices and equal voice in the Government.

- **Liberty**: of thought and expression; **absence of restraints** on the activities of individuals, and at the same time, **providing opportunities** for the development of individual personalities.
 - Taken from the **French Revolution (1789–1799)**.
- **Equality**: **absence of special privileges** to any section of society and the provision of adequate opportunities for all individuals without discrimination.
 - Three **dimensions of equality**—**civic, political and economic**.
- **Fraternity**: the sense of brotherhood; promotes the feeling of fraternity by a system of **single citizenship and by article 51A** (Fundamental Duties).

Preamble as a part of the Constitution

Berubari Union v. Unknown Case, 1960	Kesavananda Bharati v. State of Kerala Case, 1973	Union Government Vs LIC of India Case, 1995
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SC stated that 'Preamble is the key to open the mind of the makers' but it cannot be considered as part of the Constitution. Therefore, it is not enforceable in a Court of law. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SC held that "Preamble of the Constitution will now be considered as part of the Constitution. The Preamble is not the supreme power or source of any restriction or prohibition but it plays an important role in the interpretation of statutes and provisions of the Constitution." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SC held that Preamble is the integral part of the Constitution but is not directly enforceable in a Court of justice in India.

Salient Features of the Constitution

- Longest written constitution:** it contains:
 - Originally (1949), it had a **Preamble, 395 Articles** (divided into **22 Parts**) and **8 Schedules**.
 - Presently: a **Preamble, 25 parts, 448 Articles, 12 Schedules**, and **105 Amendments** to date.
 - Borrowed provisions** from several sources and constitutions of the world.

Countries	Borrowed Features of the Indian Constitution
Australia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concurrent list Freedom of trade, commerce and intercourse Joint-sitting of the two Houses of Parliament
Canada	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Federation with a strong Centre Vesting of residuary powers in the Centre Appointment of state Governors by the Centre Advisory jurisdiction of the SC
Ireland	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Directive Principles of State Policy Nomination of members to Rajya Sabha. Method of election of the President
Japan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Procedure Established by law
USSR/Russia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fundamental Duties Ideal of justice (social, economic and political) in the Preamble
UK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parliamentary Government Rule of Law Legislative procedure Single Citizenship Cabinet system Prerogative writs Parliamentary privileges Bicameralism Procedure Established by law

US	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fundamental Rights Independence of judiciary Judicial Review Impeachment of the President Removal of SC and HC Judges Post of vice-President
Germany (Weimar)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Suspension of Fundamental Rights during emergency
South Africa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Procedure for Amendment in the Indian Constitution Election of members of the Rajya Sabha
France	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Republic Ideals of liberty, equality and fraternity in the Preamble

- Unique blend of rigidity and flexibility:**
 - Some parts can be amended by **ordinary law-making procedure** while certain provisions can be amended by a **special majority**
- India as a sovereign, socialist, secular, democratic and republic:** India is **governed by its people through their elected representatives** based on universal adult franchise.
- Parliamentary System of Government:** Parliament controls the functioning of the Council of Ministers
- Single Citizenship:** Single citizenship **provided by the union and recognized by all the states** across India.
- Universal Adult Franchise:** establishes political equality in India through universal adult franchise.
- Independent and Integrated Judicial System:** free from the influence of the **executive and the legislature**.
- Fundamental Rights, Fundamental Duties and DPSPs**
- Federation with a strong centralizing tendency:** India is an **indestructible Union with destructible states** means it acquires a unitary character during the time of emergency.
- Balancing Parliamentary supremacy with Judicial Review:** An **independent judiciary with the power of judicial review**

Parts and Schedules of Indian Constitution

Parts	Subject Matter	Articles Covered
I	The Union and its territory	1 to 4
II	Citizenship	5 to 11
III	Fundamental Rights	12 to 35
IV	Directive Principles of State Policy	36 to 51
IV-A	Fundamental Duties (Added by 42nd Amendment Act 1976)	51-A
V	The Union Government	52 to 151
	Chapter I - The Executive	52 to 78
	Chapter II - Parliament	79 to 122
	Chapter III - Legislative Powers of the President	123
	Chapter IV - The Union Judiciary	124 to 147
Chapter V - Comptroller and Auditor-General of India	148 to 151	
VI	The State Governments	152 to 237
	Chapter I – General	152
	Chapter II - The Executive	153 to 167
	Chapter III - The State Legislature	168 to 212
	Chapter IV - Legislative Powers of the Governor	213
	Chapter V - The High Courts	214 to 232
Chapter VI - Subordinate Courts	233 to 237	
VII	The state in part B of the first schedule (Deleted by 7th Amendment Act 1956)	238
VIII	The Union Territories	239 to 242
IX	The Panchayats	243 to 243-O
IX-A	The Municipalities (74 th Amendment Act 1992)	243-P to 243-ZG
IX-B	The Co-operative Societies (97 th Amendment Act 2011)	243-ZH to 243-ZT
X	The Scheduled and Tribal Areas	244 to 244-A
XI	Relations between the Union and the States	245 to 263
	Chapter I - Legislative Relations	245 to 255
	Chapter II - Administrative Relations	256 to 263
XII	Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits	264 to 300-A
	Chapter I - Finance	264 to 291
	Chapter II - Borrowing	292 to 293
	Chapter III - Property, Contracts, Rights, Liabilities, Obligations and Suits	294 to 300
Chapter IV - Right to Property	300-A	
XIII	Trade, Commerce and Intercourse within the Territory of India	301 to 307
XIV	Services under the Union and the States	308 to 323
	Chapter I - Services	308 to 314
	Chapter II - Public Service Commissions	315 to 323
XIV-A	Tribunals (42 nd Amendment Act 1976)	323-A to 323-B
XV	Elections	324 to 329-A
XVI	Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes	330 to 342
XVII	Official Language	343 to 351
	Chapter I - Language of the Union	343 to 344
	Chapter II - Regional Languages	345 to 347
	Chapter III - Language of the Supreme Court, High Courts, and so on	348 to 349
Chapter IV - Special Directives	350 to 351	
XVIII	Emergency Provisions	352 to 360
XIX	Miscellaneous	361 to 367
XX	Amendment of the Constitution	368
XXI	Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions	369 to 392
XXII	Short title, Commencement, Authoritative Text in Hindi and Repeals	393 to 395

- Schedules are the lists categorising and tabulating bureaucratic activity and policy of the Government.

Schedule	Subject Matter	Articles covered
First Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Names of the States and their territorial jurisdiction. 2. Names of the Union Territories and their extent. 	1 and 4
Second Schedule	Provisions relating to the emoluments, allowances, privileges and so on of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> President of India Governors of States Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly in the states Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council in the states Judges of the Supreme Court Judges of the High Courts Comptroller and Auditor-General of India 	59, 65, 75, 97, 125, 148, 158, 164, 186, 221
Third Schedule	Forms of Oaths or Affirmations for: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Union ministers Candidates for election to the Parliament Members of Parliament Judges of the Supreme Court Comptroller and Auditor-General of India State ministers Candidates for election to the state legislature Members of the state legislature Judges of the High Courts 	75, 84, 99, 124, 146, 173, 188, 219
Fourth Schedule	Allocation of seats in the Rajya Sabha to the states and the union territories.	4 and 80
Fifth Schedule	Provisions relating to the administration and control of scheduled areas and scheduled tribes	244
Sixth Schedule	Provisions relating to the administration of tribal areas in Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram states. (Autonomous district councils)	244 and 275
Seventh Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Division of powers between the Union and the States in terms of List I (Union List), List II (State List) and List III (Concurrent List). Presently, the Union List → 100 subjects (originally 97), state list → 61 subjects (originally 66), and concurrent list → 52 subjects (originally 47). 	246
Eighth Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Languages recognized by the Constitution. Originally, it had 14 languages, but presently, there are 22 languages. Original Languages: Assamese, Bengali, Bodo, Dogri (Dongri), Gujarati, Hindi, Kannada, Kashmiri, Konkani, Maithili, Malayalam, Manipuri, Marathi, Nepali, Oriya, Punjabi, Sanskrit, Santhali, Sindhi, Tamil, Telugu and Urdu. Additions: Sindhi → 21st Amendment Act (1967); Konkani, Manipuri and Nepali → 71st Amendment Act (1992); and Bodo, Dongri, Maithili and Santhali → 92nd Amendment Act (2003). Oriya was renamed as "Odia" by 96th amendment act of 2011 	344 and 351
Ninth Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acts and Regulations (originally 13 but presently 282) of the state legislatures dealing with land reforms and the abolition of the zamindari system. Added by the 1st Amendment (1951) to protect the laws included in it from judicial scrutiny on the grounds of violating Fundamental Rights. However, in 2007, the Supreme Court ruled that the laws included in this schedule after April 24, 1973, are now open to Judicial Review. 	31-B
Tenth Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Provisions relating to disqualifying the members of Parliament and State Legislatures on the ground of defection. Added by the 52nd Amendment Act of 1985 (Anti-defection Law). 	102 and 191
Eleventh Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specifies the powers, authority and responsibilities of Panchayats. It has 29 matters. This schedule was added by the 73rd Amendment Act of 1992. 	243-G
Twelfth Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specifies the powers, authority and responsibilities of Municipalities. It has 18 matters. This schedule was added by the 74th Amendment Act of 1992. 	243-W

39 CHAPTER

Constitutional Amendment

- **Article 368 in Part XX** of the Indian Constitution
- **Source:** Constitution of South Africa
- Can be **initiated only in either House of Parliament** and not in the state legislatures.
- Can be **introduced either by a minister or by a private member**, and prior permission of the president is not required.
- After being passed by both Houses of Parliament and ratified by state legislatures - it is presented to **President for assent**.
- **President must give his assent** to the bill.
- He can **neither withhold his assent nor return the bill for reconsideration** by the Parliament.
- **After President's assent**, the bill **becomes a constitutional amendment act** and Constitution stands amended.

Types of Amendment

1. Amendment by Special Majority

- **Simple Majority:** Majority of the **members present and voting**, i.e., more than 50% of members present and voting.
- These provisions include:
 - **Admission or establishment** of new states.
 - **Formation of new states and alteration of areas**, boundaries or names of existing states.
 - **Abolition or creation of legislative councils**.
 - **Second, Fifth and Sixth Schedules**.
 - **Salaries and allowances of MPs**.
 - **Rules of procedure in Parliament**.

- **Privileges of the Parliament**.
- **Use of the English language** in Parliament.
- **Number of puisne judges** in the SC.
- Conferment of **more jurisdiction on the SC**.
- Use of **official language**.
- **Citizenship**—acquisition and termination.
- **Elections to Parliament and state legislatures**.
- **Delimitation of constituencies**.

2. Amendment by the special Majority

- **Special Majority:** Majority of the **total membership of each House and a majority of two-thirds** of the members of each House **present and voting**.
- These provisions include:
 - **Fundamental Rights;**
 - **Directive Principles of State Policy**

3. Amendment by Special Majority and Ratified by States

- Only **ratification of half of the states** is required.
- These provisions include:
 - **Election of the President** and its manner.
 - **Executive power of the Union and the states**.
 - **SC and HCs**.
 - **Distribution of legislative powers** between the Union and the states.
 - **Goods and Services Tax Council**
 - Any of the lists in the **Seventh Schedule**.
 - **Representation of states** in Parliament.
 - **Power of Parliament to amend the Constitution**.

Landmark Cases of Amendment in the Constitution

Shankari Prasad V Union of India 1951

- **Challenged:** Constitution (1st amendment), 1951
- **Claims:** Since Article 13(2) prohibits the enactment of laws abridging fundamental rights, it also prohibits such abridgment through amendment because an amendment is a law.
- **Courts verdict:** Court rejected the claim, holding that Article 368 comprised the ability to modify the constitution, including the fundamental rights, and that the word law in article 13(2) did not include a constitutional amendment made in the exercise of constituent rather than legislative power.
- **Constitutional Amendment lawful even if it restricts or eliminates any fundamental rights.**

Sajjan Singh V State of Rajasthan 1965

- **Challenged:** Constitution (17th Amendment) Act 1964
- **Context:** SC in Shankari Prasad case held that the words amendment of the Constitution means an amendment of all the provisions of the constitution.
- **Claims:** if the constitution makers intended to exclude the fundamental rights from the scope of the amending power they would have made a clear provision on that behalf.
- **Court's Verdict:** Approved its previous decision and held that Fundamental Rights can also be amended.

Golak Nath V State of Punjab 1967

- **Context:** Court decided that the constitution did not provide for a specific power to take away or abridge the fundamental rights enshrined in Part III of the Constitution even by an amendment under Article 368.
- **SC Suggested:** A constituent assembly could be summoned for this purpose by parliament in the exercise of its residuary power contained in entry 97 or of list 1 of the seventh schedule read with article 248 this decision led to the passing of the Constitution 24th Amendment Act 1971 which made significant changes in Article 368.
- **Court's Verdict:** Part III of the Constitution cannot be amended and Parliament cannot abridge the fundamental rights of the citizens.

Important Amendments in the Indian Constitution

Amendments	Changes introduced
1st Amendment Act, 1951	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The state was empowered to make special provisions for developing socially and economically backward classes. 9th Schedule included protecting land reforms and other laws from judicial review. Articles 31A and 31B added.
7th Amendment Act, 1956	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implementation of the State Reorganization Act. Amended 2nd and 7th Schedules of the constitution.
10th Amendment Act, 1961	Nagaland was given the status of a state , and special provisions were made for it.
24th Amendment Act, 1971	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Amendment of Articles 13 and 368 related to the power of Parliament to amend the Constitution and procedure thereof. The parliament was given the power to amend Fundamental Rights.
25th Amendment Act, 1971	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Article 31C was added to the Constitution related to the relationship between Directive Principles of State Policy and Fundamental Rights. Article 31C conferred primacy of Articles 39(b) and 39(c) over Articles 14, 19 and 31.
26th Amendment Act, 1971	Privy purses and privileges given to Princely rulers were abolished .
34th Amendment Act, 1974	Land ceiling and land tenure reforms were added to the 9th Schedule of the Constitution.
38th Amendment Act, 1975	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency and Promulgation of Ordinances by the President → non-justiciable. The President was empowered to declare different proclamations of national emergency on different grounds simultaneously.
42nd Amendment Act, 1976 (Mini Constitution)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Preamble- 'Sovereign Socialist Secular Democratic Republic' was added. Parliament and State Legislatures: The term of the Lok Sabha and State Legislative Assemblies extended to 6 years. Executive: President shall act following the advice of the Council of Ministers in discharging his functions under Article 74. Judiciary: Article 32A- denied the Supreme Court the power to consider the Constitutional validity of the State law. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Article 131A- granted the Supreme Court exclusive jurisdiction to determine the Constitutional validity of a central law. Article 144A- the minimum number of judges of the Supreme Court required to decide the Constitutional validity of a Central or State law was fixed to at least seven and required a two-thirds majority of the judges to declare the law unconstitutional. Several restrictions were imposed on the High Court's power to issue writs 'for any other purpose'. Federalism: Article 257A- enabled the Centre to deploy any armed force of the Union to tackle any grave situation of law and order in any State. Fundamental Rights and Directive Principles: Primacy was given to all Directive Principles over the Fundamental Rights contained in Articles 14, 19 or 31. Fundamental Duties: Article 51-A under Part IV-A prescribed Fundamental Duties to the citizens. Emergency: President was authorised to proclaim an emergency.
44th Amendment Act, 1978	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Term of Lok Sabha and State Legislative assemblies was restored to 5 years. Deletion of the 39th Amendment that deprived the Supreme Court of its jurisdiction to decide disputes concerning the election of the President and the Vice-President Article 74(1)- the council of ministers shall be required to reconsider advice to the President, and he acts following the advice after such reconsideration. Article 257A was removed. Right to Property was removed as a Fundamental Right and became a legal right.
51st Amendment Act, 1984	Provision of reservation of seats in the Lok Sabha for Scheduled Tribes in Meghalaya, Arunachal Pradesh and Mizoram, Nagaland and Meghalaya .

52 Amendment Act, 1985	Prevent defection of Members of Parliament and State Legislatures from one political party to another.
61st Amendment Act, 1989	Reduced voting age from 21 years to 18 years for the Lok Sabha and Assembly elections.
65th Amendment Act, 1990	Amended Article 338 of the Constitution to include a National Commission for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes .
69th Amendment Act, 1991	Made Delhi as ' National Capital Territory of Delhi ' along with the provision of a 70-member assembly and a 7-member Council of Ministers for Delhi.
73rd Amendment Act, 1992	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Panchayati Raj Institutions were included under the Eleventh Schedule that enumerated the powers and functions of Panchayati Raj Institutions. • Provisions for a three-tier model of Panchayati Raj, reservation of seats for SCs and STs in proportion to their population and one-third reservation of seats for women were granted.
74th Amendment Act, 1992	The constitutional status given to Urban Local Bodies under the Twelfth Schedule enumerates the powers and functions of urban local bodies.
77th Amendment Act, 1995	Empowered the State to make any provisions for reservation in promotions in Government jobs in favour of SCs and STs.
86th Amendment Act, 2002	Article 21A included the Right to free and compulsory education as a fundamental right for children belonging to groups of 6 to 14 years .
93rd Amendment Act, 2005	Reservation for the socially and educationally backward classes in private unaided educational institutions .
97th Amendment Act, 2012	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Part III- "Cooperative Societies" was added. • Under part IV, the creation of Cooperative societies was encouraged.
99th Amendment Act, 2014	The Union government of India established the National Judicial Appointments Commission (NJAC) .
100th Amendment) Act, 2015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ratification of the land boundary agreement between India and Bangladesh. • Per the 1974 bilateral Land Boundary Agreement, amended the first schedule of the constitution to exchange the disputed territories occupied by both nations.
101 Amendment Act, 2017	Introduction to Goods and Service Tax .
102 Amendment Act, 2018	Provided constitutional status to the National Commission for Backward Classes .
103 Amendment Act, 2019	Under Article 15 , a maximum of 10% Reservation for Economically Weaker Sections (EWSs) of citizens of classes other than the classes.
104 Amendment Act, 2020	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extension of deadline for the cessation of seats for SCs and STs in the Lok Sabha and states assemblies to 80 years. • Removal of the reserved seats for the Anglo-Indian community in the Lok Sabha and state assemblies.
105 Amendment Act, 2021	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amended Article 342A and introduced a new clause three and will also amend Articles 366 (26c) and 338B (9). • To restore the power of State governments to identify OBCs after a Supreme Court order in May 2021 empowered only the Centre to do so. • The "state list" will be completely taken out of the ambit of the President and will be notified by the state assembly. • As per the Indian Constitution, Articles 15 (4), 15 (5), and 16 (4) confer power on the State Government to declare and identify the list of socially and educationally backward classes. • As a practice, separate OBC lists are drawn up by the Central Government and each State concerned. • The amendment was thought necessary because the SC, in its order on Maratha reservation, upheld the 102nd Constitutional Amendment Act.

40 CHAPTER

Fundamental Rights

- **Articles 12 - 35** in **Part III** of the Indian Constitution
- **Source:** Constitution of USA (some provisions from French Constitution too)

Articles	Provisions
Article 12	Definition
Article 13	Laws inconsistent with or in derogation of the fundamental rights.
Article 14-18	Right To Equality
Articles 19-22	Right To Freedom
Articles 23-24	Right Against Exploitation
Articles 25-28	Freedom of Religion
Articles 29-30	Cultural and Educational Rights
Article 31	Right to Property (Omitted)
Articles 32-35	Right to Constitutional Remedies

- **1st Demand:** Constitution of India Bill, in 1895, also known as the Swaraj Bill
- **Inspiration:** England's Bill of Rights (1689), the United States Bill of Rights and France's Declaration of Rights of Man.
- **1st Proposal:** Nehru Commission 1928
- **Adoption:** INC passed **resolutions in 1931** pledging to defend fundamental civil and socio-economic rights.
- **Inclusion in Constitution:** By Drafting Committee

Features of Fundamental Rights

- **Integral Part of Constitution:** Cannot be taken away by an ordinary law
- **Comprehensive and Detailed:** Are very elaborate, each article described with its scope and limitation
- **Lack of Social and Economic Rights:** Guarantees only **civil rights**, Rights like Right to work, right to health are missing.
- **Rights are qualified:** **Not absolute except the right against untouchability**, they are qualified and with limitations and reasonable restrictions.
- **Enforceability of rights:** **Justiciable** rights i.e. means if any of these rights are violated, **an individual has the right to move to the SC.**
- **Fundamental rights are amendable:** **Not sacrosanct or permanent**, they can be amended by the parliament.
- **Provision for the suspension of Rights:** Suspended during an emergency.
- **Constitutional Superiority of Fundamental rights:** Superior **than the ordinary laws and DPSP.**
- **Special Rights for the minorities:** Guarantee some special rights to minorities of various kinds.

- **No natural rights:** constitution does not recognize **natural rights** or unenumerated rights.
- **Right to Property not a fundamental right:** Due to hindrances posed by the right to property in the way of implementing socio- economic reforms it was deleted from fundamental rights.

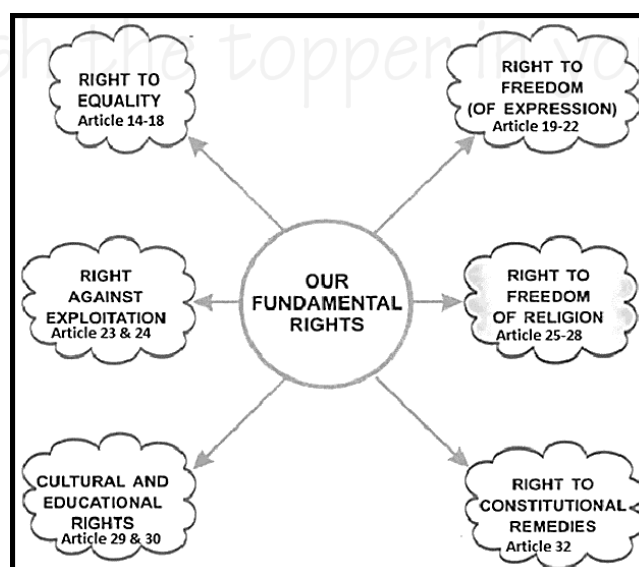
Article 12: Definition of State

- **Article 12 - "The State" includes**
 - The **Government and Parliament of India**
 - The Government and the Legislature of each of the **States**
 - All **local or other authorities within the territory of India or under the control of the Government of India**

Article 13: Laws inconsistent with or in derogation of the fundamental rights

- Article 13 specifies that a **constitutional amendment is not a law and cannot be overturned.**
 - **Kesavananda Bharati case (1973)** - SC concluded that a **constitutional amendment can be challenged on the grounds**
 - If it **violates a fundamental right that is part of the Constitution's 'basic structure,'** it can be declared unconstitutional.

Six Fundamental Rights



1. Right to Equality (Articles 14-18)

- **Article 14:** Equality Before law and Equal protection of laws

Exceptions to the rule of equality

- Immunities to the President and Governors
- Foreign sovereigns and ambassadors.
- **Article 15:** Prohibition on discrimination on certain grounds.
 - **Article 15 (1):** State shall not discriminate against any citizen on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth
 - **Article 15 (2):** No citizen shall, on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of them, be subject to any disability, liability, restriction or condition with regard to
 - Access to shops, public restaurants, hotels and places of public entertainment; or
 - use of wells, tanks, bathing ghats, roads and places of public resort maintained wholly or partly out of State funds.

Exceptions to rule of Non-Discrimination

- Special provision for women and children
- Provisions for the progress of socially and educationally deprived persons

- Special provision for the advancement of any EWSs of citizens

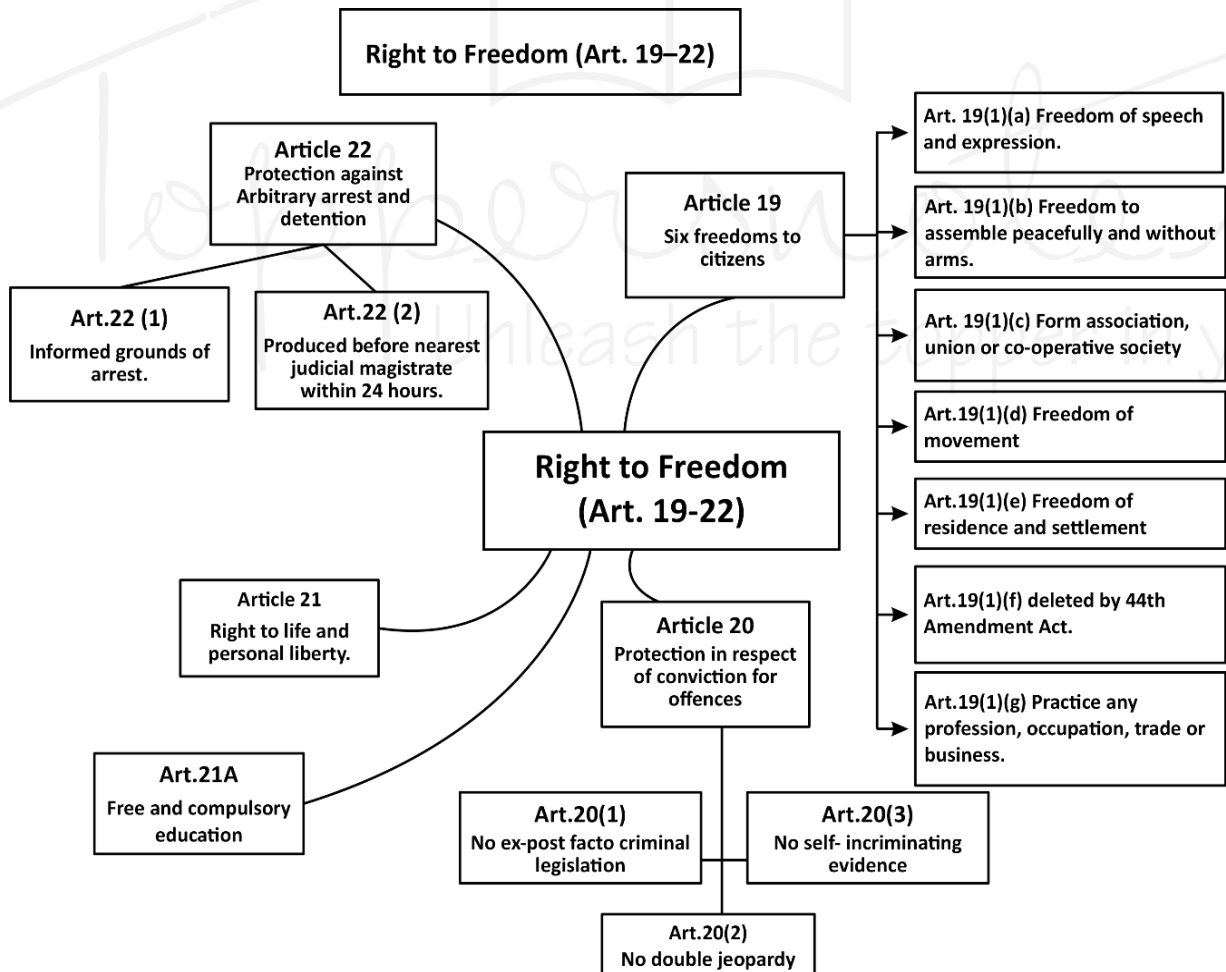
- **Article 16-** Equality of opportunity in public employment

Exceptions to the rule of equality of opportunity in public employment:

- **Parliament can make residency a condition** for specific jobs or appointments in a state, union territory, municipal government, or other body.
- **State may reserve appointments and posts for Backward classes not sufficiently represented** in the state.
- **Holder of a religious or denominational institution's position or a member of its governing body must be of that faith or denomination.**
- State allowed creating a provision of **reservation for up to 10% (in addition to the current reservation)** of appointments or posts to be reserved for **economically disadvantaged persons.**

- **Article 17-** Abolition of Untouchability
- **Article 18:** Abolition of titles

2. Right to Freedom (Article 19-22)



- **Article 19-** Protection of certain rights regarding freedom of speech, etc. **Six Rights guaranteed by Article 19**

I. Freedom of Speech and Expression includes:

- Right to **propagate one's views**
- **Freedom of the press.**
- Freedom of **commercial advertisements.**
- Right **against tapping of telephonic conversation.**
- **Right to telecast**
- **Right against bandh** called by a political party or organisation.
- Right to **know about government activities.**
- **Freedom of silence.**
- Right against **the imposition of pre-censorship on a newspaper.**
- Right to **demonstration** or picketing but not right to strike.

Reasonable restrictions:

- India's sovereignty and integrity
- State Security
- Friendly relations with foreign states
- Public order
- Decency or morality
- Contempt of court
- Defamation,
- Incitement to an offence

II. To assemble peaceably and without arms

Reasonable restrictions:

- **Sovereignty and integrity of India**
- **Public order** including the maintenance of traffic in the area concerned.
- **Under Section 144 of CPC (1973), a magistrate can restrain** if there is a risk of obstruction, danger to human life, health, safety, riot or any affray.
- **Under Section 141 of IPC, assembly of ≥ 5 persons becomes unlawful**

III. To form associations or unions or cooperative societies

Reasonable restrictions:

- Sovereignty and integrity of India
- Public order
- Morality.

IV. To move freely throughout the territory of India

Reasonable restrictions:

- Interests of the general public.
- Protection of interests of any scheduled tribe.

V. To reside and settle in any part of the territory of India

Reasonable restrictions:

- Interest of the general public
- Protection of interests of any scheduled tribes.

VI. To practise any profession, or to carry on any occupation, trade or business.

Reasonable Restrictions:

- Interest of the general public.

- **Article 20:** Protection in respect of conviction

Exceptions:

- Applicable **only for** offences and their punishments under **criminal law and not for any civil liability**
- **Prohibits conviction under ex-post facto law only in respect of substantive law but not in respect of procedural law**, as no one has a vested right in the procedure.

- **Article 21:** Protection of life and personal liberty

SC declared the following right as part of Article 21

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| ▪ Right to live with human dignity. | ▪ Right to travel abroad. |
| ▪ Right to a decent environment. | ▪ Right against bonded labour. |
| ▪ Right livelihood. | ▪ Right against custodial harassment. |
| ▪ Right to privacy. | ▪ Right to emergency medical aid. |
| ▪ Right to Shelter. | ▪ Right to timely medical treatment |
| ▪ Right to health. | ▪ Right to free legal aid. |
| ▪ Right to free education up to 14 yr of age. | ▪ Right against solitary confinement. |
| ▪ Right to free legal aid. | ▪ Right to a speedy trial. |
| ▪ Right against solitary confinement. | ▪ Right against handcuffing. |
| ▪ Right to a speedy trial. | ▪ Right against inhuman treatment. |
| ▪ Right against handcuffing. | ▪ Right against delayed execution. |
| ▪ Right against inhuman treatment. | |
| ▪ Right against delayed execution. | |
| | ▪ Right to hearing. |
| | ▪ Right to information. |
| | ▪ Right to reputation. |

Right to Education (Article 21A)

- **Article 45 of Part IV** of the Constitution - **free and compulsory education for children**, but as a directive principle, it was **not enforceable by the courts.**
- The **government passed the 86th Amendment Act in 2002**, allowing judicial involvement.
- **Right to Free and Compulsory Education Act, 2009**
- **Article 22:** Protection against arrest and detention.

3. Rights against Exploitation (Article 23-24)

- **Article 23:** Prohibition of Traffic in Human Beings and Forced Labour
- **Article 24:** Prohibition of Employment of Children in Factories, etc.

4. Right to Freedom of Religion (Article 25-28)

- **Article 25:** Freedom of Conscience & Free Profession, Practice & Propagation of Religion.
- **Article 26:** Freedom to manage religious affairs
- **Article 27:** Freedom from Taxation for the Promotion of a Religion.
- **Article 28:** Freedom from Attending Religious Instruction

5. Cultural and Educational Rights (Article 29-30)

- **Article 29:** Protection of Interests of Minorities
- **Article 30:** Right of Minorities of Establish & Administer Educational Institutions

Article 31: Right to Property

- **No person shall be deprived of his/her property, except by authority of law.**

44th amendment Act 1978

- **Deleted the right to property from fundamental rights by repealing Articles 19(1)(f) and 31 of the constitution.**

- **Added Article 300-A in Part XII of the Constitution that states that 'no one shall be deprived of his property, except by authority of law'.**

Present Position of the right to property

- **4th amendment act - right to property is a legal or constitutional right.**
- **Not a component of the Constitution's Basic Structure.**

6. Right to Constitutional Remedies (Article 32)

- A citizen's right to seek redress for violations of his or her fundamental rights.
- **B.R Ambedkar:** Article 32, is the most significant article of the Constitution, "**without which this constitution would be a nullity.**" It is the Constitution's **very soul and very heart.**'

Writs and Their Types

- **Can be issued by the SC** (under Article 32) and the **HCs** (under Article 226).
- **Parliament can authorise any other court** to issue similar writs.
- **No provision has yet been enacted**, only SC and HCs, and **not any other court, can issue writs.**
- 5 types of writs given in the Indian constitution

Writ	Meaning	Issued	Not Issued
Habeas Corpus	to have the body of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • by the court to a person who has detained another person, to produce the body of the latter before it. • Court then examines the cause and legality of detention → sets the detained person free, if it is found to be illegal. • A bulwark of individual liberty against arbitrary detention. • Against: Both public authorities & private individuals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Detention is lawful, • for contempt of a legislature or a court, • Detention is by a competent court, and • Detention is outside the jurisdiction of the court
Mandamus	command	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • By SC and HC • Court order directing a public official to perform his or her official duties, which he or she has failed or refused to do. • Against: any public body, a corporation, an inferior court, a tribunal or government for the same purpose. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • private individual or body • To enforce departmental instruction that does not possess statutory force; • When the duty is discretionary and not mandatory; • To enforce a contractual obligation; • Against the President of India or the state governors; • Against the Chief Justice of a HC acting in judicial capacity
Prohibition	To forbid	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • By a higher court to a lower court or tribunal to prevent the latter from exceeding its jurisdiction or usurping a jurisdiction that it does not possess. • Against: Only against judicial and quasi-judicial authorities. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • administrative authorities, legislative bodies, and private individuals or bodies

Certiorari	To be informed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> By a higher court to a lower court or tribunal either to transfer a case pending with the latter to itself or to squash the order of the latter in a case. Issuing grounds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On excess or lack of jurisdiction or error of law. Both preventive as well as curative. Issued against judicial, quasi-judicial & administrative authorities. Not available against: legislative bodies and private individuals or bodies. 	
Quo - Warranto	By what authority	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> By the court to enquire into the legality of claim of a person to a public office. Hence, it prevents illegal usurpation of public office by a person. Issuing Grounds: In case of a substantive public office of a permanent character created by a statute or by the Constitution. Can be obtained by anybody who is interested, not only the aggrieved party. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cases of ministerial office or private office

Martial Law and Fundamental Rights

- Article 34:** Restriction on Rights conferred by this part while martial law is in force in any area.
- Article 35:** Legislation to give effect to the provisions of this part Notwithstanding anything in this constitution
 - Only Parliament has the ability to create laws** and give effect to certain fundamental rights, according to Article 35.

Rights Outside Part III of the Constitution

- Also known as **constitutional rights or legal rights or non-fundamental rights.**
- They are:**
 - No tax** shall be levied or collected **except by authority of law (Art. 265 Part XII).**
 - No person** shall be **deprived of his property** save by **authority of law (Art 300-A Part XII).**
 - Free Trade, commerce and intercourse** throughout the territory of India (**Article 301 in Part XIII).**
 - Elections to the Lok Sabha** and the **State Legislative Assembly** shall be on the basis of **adult suffrage (Article 326 in Part XV).**

Exception to Fundamental Rights

- Article 31 A:** Saving of Laws Providing for Acquisition of Estates, etc.
 - Protects 5 types of laws from being challenged and declared illegal as they violate fundamental rights under Article 14 and Article 19.
 - Related to agricultural land reforms, industry and commerce.
- Article 31 B:** Validation of Certain Acts and Regulations
 - Broader reach than Article 31A as it protects actions and regulations in the 9th Schedule from being challenged and declared unlawful on the basis of a violation of any of the fundamental rights.
 - Exempts any law included in the Ninth Schedule from all fundamental rights, regardless of whether it fits into one of the five categories listed in Article 31A.
- Article 31 C:** Saving of Laws Giving Effect to Certain Directive Principles

41

CHAPTER

Directive Principles of State Policy

- **Articles 36 - 51 in Part: IV** of the Indian constitution.
- **Sources:** Ireland (who derived them from the Spanish constitution)
- **Dr. B.R. Ambedkar:** 'novel features' of the Indian Constitution.

- **DPSP and FRs** contain the **philosophy** of the Constitution and are the **soul of the Constitution**.
- **Granville Austin:** DPSP and FRs are '**Conscience of the Constitution**'.

List of DPSPs:

Article	What it says	Type of Principle
Article 36	Defines State as same as Article 12 unless to context otherwise defines.	
Article 37	Application of the Principles contained in this part.	
Article 38	It authorises the state to secure a social order for the promotion of the welfare of people.	Socialist
Article 39	Certain principles of policies are to be followed by the state.	Socialist
Article 39A	Equal justice and free legal aid.	Socialist
Article 40	The organisation of village panchayats.	Gandhian
Article 41	Right to work, to education and public assistance in some instances.	Socialist
Article 42	Provision for just and humane conditions of work and maternity leaves.	Socialist
Article 43	Living wage etc., for workers.	Socialist
Article 43-A	Participation of workers in the management of industries.	Socialist
Article 43-B	Promotion of cooperative societies.	Gandhian
Article 44	Uniform civil code for the citizens.	Liberal
Article 45	Provision for early childhood care and education to children below the age of six years.	Socialist / Liberal
Article 46	Promotion of education and economic interests of SC, ST and other weaker sections	Gandhian
Article 47	The duty of the state is to raise the level of nutrition and the standard of living and to improve public health.	Socialist / Gandhian / Liberal
Article 48	The organisation of agriculture and animal husbandry.	Gandhian
Article 48-A	Protection and improvement of environment and safeguarding of forests and wildlife.	Liberal
Article 49	Protection of monuments and places, and objects of national importance.	Liberal
Article 50	Separation of judiciary from the executive.	Liberal
Article 51	Promotion of international peace and security.	Liberal

Feature of Directive Principles

- **Instructions to the State** for achieving **socio-economic development**.
- **Not enforceable** in the courts and no one can go to the court for its proper implementation
- **Positive in nature** and increase power and functions of the State
- **Constitute** a very comprehensive **economic, social and political** programme for a Welfare State.
- **Aim** at realising the high ideals of **justice, liberty, equality and fraternity** outlined in the Preamble.

- **Indispensable for socio-economic development** of our country as they formally bestow the responsibility of it on the state which has maximum power and resources at its disposal
- **Great moral value** - constitutes the **conscience of our Constitution**. No responsible government can dare to go against these principles
- Constitute the **mirror of public opinion** reflecting the will of the people.
- **Fundamental in the governance** of the country. The State should follow these principles for progress of the country

- **Non-justiciable** - helps the courts in examining and determining the constitutional validity of a law.
 - of international disputes by arbitration

New Directive Principles Subsequently Added

42nd Amendment Act 1976

- To secure opportunities for the healthy development of children. **(Article 39)**
- Equal opportunity for justice and free legal aid. **(Article 39A)**
- Right of workers to participate in management of industries. **(Article 43A)**
- To protect the environment, forests and wild animals. **(Article 48A)**

44th Amendment Act, 1978

- The State to minimise inequalities in income, status, facilities and opportunities. **(Article 38)**

86 Amendment Act, 2002

- changed the subject-matter of **Article 45** and made elementary education a fundamental right under Article 21 A.
- The amended directive requires the State to provide early childhood care and education for all children until they complete the age of six years

The 97th Amendment Act of 2011

- The state to promote voluntary formation, autonomous functioning, democratic control and professional management of co-operative societies **(Article 43B)**.

Directive Principles Outside Part IV of the constitution

- **Claims of SCs and STs to Services:** shall be taken into consideration, consistently with the maintenance of efficiency of administration, in the making of appointments to services and posts in connection with the affairs of the Union or a State **(Article 335 in Part XVI)**.
- **Instruction in mother tongue:** Every state and local government within the state shall make every effort to offer suitable facilities for instruction in the mother tongue at the elementary level of education for children from linguistic minority groups **(Article 350-A in Part XVII)**.
- **Development of the Hindi Language:** It shall be the duty of the Union to promote the spread of the Hindi language and to develop it so that it may serve as a medium of expression for all the elements of the composite culture of India **(Article 351 in Part XVII)**.

Order of Precedence

1. FR except 14 and 19.
2. DPSP 39(b) and 39(c).
3. FR 14 and 19.
4. DPSP except 39(b) and 39(c).

42 CHAPTER

Fundamental Duties

- Article 51A in Part IV-A (42nd Constitutional amendment act 1976)
- Source: USSR (Now Russia)
- Total 11 in no.

Article	Provision
Article 51A	Fundamental duties

- Recommended by: Swaran Singh committee.

Swaran Singh Committee Recommendations

- Emphasized need to include a chapter on fundamental duties in the constitution.
- Proposed that the parliament may impose any penalty or punishment for any failure to comply with or unwillingness to observe any of the duties.
- Recommendations were approved except for those linked to punishment.

Article 51A- Part-IV A of the Constitution

- A distinct part was added to Chapter IV as Part IV-A due to the 42nd Amendment Act, 1976.
- 2002- another duty (providing education to children) was added through 86th Amendment Act.

Fundamental Duties

It shall be the duty of every citizen of India:

- To abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag and the National Anthem;
- To cherish and follow the noble ideals that inspired the national struggle for freedom;
- To uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India;
- To defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so;
- To promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic and regional or sectional diversities and to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women;

- To value and preserve the rich heritage of the country's composite culture;
- To protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers and wildlife and to have compassion for living creatures;
- To develop scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform;
- To safeguard public property and to abjure violence;
- To strive towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavour and achievement; and
- To provide opportunities for education to his child or ward between the age of six and fourteen years. (added by the 86th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2002)

Features of Fundamental Duties

- Some are moral duties while others are civic duties.
 - Moral duties: cherishing noble ideals of freedom struggle
 - Civic duty: respecting the Constitution, National Flag and National Anthem
- Ideals that have been a part of Indian culture, mythology, faiths, and customs.
- Confined to citizens only and does not extend to foreigners.
- Non-justiciable.
 - Direct enforcement by the courts is not provided in the Constitution.
 - No legal punishment for their infringement.
 - Parliament is free to enact appropriate laws to enforce them.

43 CHAPTER

President

- Articles 52-62 and 71-72 in Part V of the Indian constitution
- Important Articles Related to President

Articles	Provisions
Article 52	The President of India
Article 53	Executive Power of the union
Article 54	Election of the president
Article 55	Manner of Election of President
Article 56	Term of office of the President
Article 57	Eligibility for Re-Election
Article 58	Qualifications for Election as President
Article 59	Conditions for President's Office
Article 60	Oath or Affirmation by the president
Article 61	Procedure for impeachment of the president
Article 62	Time of holding election to fill the vacancy in the office of President and the term of office of person elected to fill casual vacancy.
Article 71	Matters relating to, or connected with, the election of a President or Vice-President.

Article 72	Power of the President to grant pardons, etc., and to suspend, remit or commute sentences in some instances.
------------	--

- Head of the Indian State and First citizen of India.
- A symbol of unity, integrity and solidarity of the nation.

Election of the President

- Elected by a secret ballot / Indirect Election.
- Absolute Majority required.
- Electoral College consists of:
 - Elected members of both Houses of Parliament;
 - Elected members of State Legislative Assemblies (Article 54).(*States: also include National Capital Territory of Delhi and the Union Territory of Puducherry as 70th amendment Act)
- Electoral College Does not Consist of:
 - Nominated members of both Houses of Parliament and State Legislative assemblies and councils

Votes in Election

- Number of votes of each elected Legislative Assembly determined on basis of population.
 - Formula: Value of vote of an MLA = $\frac{\text{Population of the state}}{\text{Total no. of elected MLAs of that state}} \times \frac{1}{1000}$
 - On the basis of the above formula, the value of the vote of an MLA from UP has the highest value and that of Sikkim the lowest.
 - No. of votes of each Member of Parliament.
 - Formula: Value of vote of an MLA (Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha) = $\frac{\text{Sum total of the votes of elected MLAs of all states including Delhi and Puducherry}}{\text{Total no. of elected MPs of both the houses of Parliament}}$
 - Quota for a candidate to be declared elected as President.
 - Formula: Electoral quota = $\frac{\text{Total number of valid votes polled}}{1+1} + 1$
- Article 58: Qualifications for election as President
 - Citizen of India.
 - Completed 35 years of age.
 - Qualified for election as a member of Lok Sabha.
 - Should not hold any office of profit
 - Oath of President: administered by Chief Justice of India and in his absence, the senior most judge of the SC available.
 - President is not be a member of either House of Parliament or States legislature.
 - Personally immune from legal accountability for his official acts.
 - Exempt from criminal prosecution during his tenure for his personal activities.
 - Cannot be arrested or imprisoned.
 - Term: 5 years

- **Resignation:** To the Vice-President.
- **Removal:** Impeachment.
- **Reappointment:** Also eligible for re-election to that office.

Impeachment of President

- **Grounds:** 'violation of the Constitution'.
- **Initiation:** Either House of Parliament.
- **Process of Impeachment:**
 - **Initial charges** should be signed by **1/4th members of House** (that framed the charges).
 - A **14 days' prior notice** given to the President.
 - **Signed** by a majority of **2/3rd of total membership** in **one house** and is **sent to the other House**, which should investigate the charges.
 - If other house **also signs by majority of 2/3rd of total membership** → **President stands removed.**
- **No President has so far been impeached!**

Powers of President

Executive Powers

- All **executive actions** of the Government of India are formally **taken in his name.**
- **Appoints the PM and the other ministers.**
- **Appoints the Attorney General of India**
- **Appoints Comptroller and Auditor General of India, Chief Election Commissioner and other Election Commissioners, chairman and members of the Union Public Service Commission, Governors of states, chairman and finance commission**
- **Can appoint a commission** to investigate into the conditions of **SCs, STs and other backward classes.**
- **Can appoint an Inter-State Council** to promote Centre–state and inter-state cooperation.
- **Directly administers union territories**
- **Can declare any area as a scheduled area** and has powers concerning its administration.

Legislative powers

- **Summons or prorogues Parliament and dissolves the Lok Sabha.**
- Can also **summon a joint sitting of both the Houses of Parliament.**
- **Can appoint any member of the Lok Sabha to preside over its proceedings** when the offices of both the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker fall vacant.
- **Nominates 12 members of the Rajya Sabha** from amongst persons having special knowledge or practical experience in literature, science, art and social service.
- **Can promulgate ordinances when the Parliament is not in session.**

- **Lays reports of the Comptroller and Auditor General, Union Public Service Commission, Finance Commission, and others, before the Parliament.**

Financial powers

- **Money bills** can be introduced in the **Parliament only with his prior recommendation.**
- **Can make advances** out of the **Contingency Fund of India** to meet any unforeseen expenditure.

Judicial powers

- **Appoints the Chief Justice and the Judges of SC and HCs.**
- **Can grant pardon, reprieve, respite and remission of punishment, or suspend, remit or commute the sentence** of any person convicted of any offence.

Diplomatic powers

- **International treaties and agreements** are negotiated **on behalf of the President** → **subject to the approval of the Parliament.**

Military powers

- **Supreme Commander of the Defence Forces** of India.
- **Appoints the chiefs of the Army, the Navy and the Air Force.**
- **Can declare war or conclude peace**, subject to the approval of the Parliament.

Emergency powers

- National Emergency (Article 352);
- President's Rule (Article 356 & 365);
- Financial Emergency (Article 360)

Veto Power of the President

Absolute veto	President's ability to refuse to sign a bill enacted by parliament. The bill then ends and does not become law.
Suspensive veto	When President returns a bill to the Parliament for reconsideration, if the bill is passed by Parliament again, with or without amendments, and delivered to the President, the President must grant his approval to the bill.
Pocket veto	President does not ratify, reject, or return the bill; instead, he merely leaves it pending indefinitely. Refers to President's ability to refuse to take any action (positive or negative) on a bill.
Qualified veto	Can be overridden by the legislature with a higher majority. Not Available to the Indian President.

Pardoning Power of the President

- **Article 72** - gives President the authority to issue pardons

Pardon	Nullifies the sentence, conviction, and the convict is free of all penalties, punishments, and disqualifications.
Commutation	Exchange of one type of punishment for a less severe one. E.g. a death sentence ⇒ harsh imprisonment ⇒ simple imprisonment.
Remission	Shortening a sentence's length without altering its meaning. Eg, a 2-year sentence of harsh imprisonment reduced to one year of rigorous imprisonment.

Respite	Imposing a lighter sentence in place of one that was initially imposed due to a unique circumstance. Eg. convict's physical impairment or a woman offender's pregnancy.
Reprieve	Temporary halt to execution of a sentence (particularly a death sentence). To provide the criminal enough time to petition the President for a pardon or commutation of his or her sentence.
Pardoning power of the President independent of Judiciary - executive power.	

Presidents of India till Date

Name	Tenure	Description
Rajendra Prasad	13 May 1952 – 13 May 1957 13 May 1957 – 13 May 1962	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was elected twice as the President ● He was also the President of the constituent assembly before being elected for this post.
Sarvepalli Radhakrishnan	13 May 1962 – 13 May 1967	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was a prominent philosopher and writer. ● He also held the position of vice-chancellor of the Andhra University and Banaras Hindu University.
Zakir Hussain	13 May 1967 – 3 May 1969	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was the recipient of Padma Vibhushan and Bharat Ratna. ● He was shortest-serving President and passed away in office.
Varahagiri Venkata Giri	3 May 1969 – 20 July 1969 24 August 1969 – 24 August 1974	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was elected Vice President of India in 1967. ● He served as the President for a short term due to the sudden death of Zakir Hussain in office.
Fakhruddin Ali Ahmed	24 August 1974 – 11 February 1977	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was the President during Emergency. ● He was the second President who died in office.
Neelam Sanjiva Reddy	25 July 1977 – 25 July 1982	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was the first Chief Minister of Andhra Pradesh. ● He became the youngest President who occupied Rashtrapati Bhavan and contested twice for the post of President.
Zail Singh	25 July 1982 – 25 July 1987	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was the Chief Minister of Punjab and Union Home Minister
Ramaswamy Venkataraman	25 July 1987 – 25 July 1992	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He is a receiver of "Tamra Patra" for his contributions to India's freedom struggle.
Shankar Dayal Sharma	25 July 1992 – 25 July 1997	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was born in Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh. ● He was the Chief Minister of Madhya Pradesh and the Indian Minister for Communications.
Kocheril Raman Narayanan	25 July 1997 – 25 July 2002	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He served as India's ambassador to Thailand, Turkey, China and the United States of America.
APJ Abdul Kalam	25 July 2002 – 25 July 2007	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He played a leading role in developing India's ballistic missile and nuclear weapons programs. ● He was also a Bharat Ratna recipient.
Pratibha Patil	25 July 2007 – 25 July 2012	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● She was the first woman President of India.
Pranab Mukherjee	25 July – 25 July 2017	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was awarded the best Parliamentary Award in 1997. ● He also received Padma Vibhushan in 2008
Ram Nath Kovind	25 July 2017 – 25 July 2022	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He served as the Governor of Bihar.
Draupadi Murmu	25 July 2022 – Till Date	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● First Tribal President of India ● First Indian President to be born after independence of India ● Second woman President of India ● First woman Governor of Jharkhand

44 CHAPTER

Vice-President

- **Articles 63 - 71** in **Part V** of the Constitution of India
- **Articles related to Vice President**

Articles	Provisions
63	Vice-President of India.
64	Vice-President to be ex officio Chairman of the Council of States.
65	Vice-President to act as President or to discharge his functions during casual vacancies in the office, or during the absence, of the President.
66	Election of Vice-President.
67	Term of office of Vice-President.
68	Time of holding election to fill a vacancy in the office of Vice-President and the term of office of person elected to fill casual vacancy.
69	Oath or affirmation by the Vice-President.
70	Discharge of President's functions in other contingencies.
71	Matters relating to election of a President or Vice-President.

- **Elected in the same way as the President**
- **Chosen by an electoral college: all of Parliament's members** (elected + nominated)
- **Not elected by state legislatures.**
- **Oath Administered by President** or someone he appoints in his place.
- **Should not be a member of either House** of Parliament or States.
- **Term of office: 5 years.**
- **Eligible for re-election**
- **Removed from position by a resolution originated the Rajya sabha only** with an effective majority of more than 50% and **agreed to by the Lok sabha with a simple majority** of more than 50% of total voting members.
- **Ex-officio Chairman of Council of States:** Duties and responsibilities similar to Speaker of the Lok Sabha.
- Act as **President** when his post becomes **vacant** owing to his resignation, impeachment, death, or other reasons.

- Can only **serve as President for a maximum of six months.**

- If **President** unable to perform his duties due to **absence, illness, or any other reason, the Vice-President takes over** until the President is able to resume his duties.

Vice Presidents of India to Date

Vice – President of India	Term of office
Sarvepalli Radhakrishnan (First Vice-President of India)	13 May 1952 – 12 May 1957 13 May 1957 – 12 May 1962
Zakir Hussain	13 May 1962 – 12 May 1967
V. V. Giri	13 May 1967 – 3 May 1969
Gopal Swarup Pathak	31 August 1969 – 30 August 1974
B. D. Jatti	31 August 1974 – 30 August 1979
Mohammad Hidayatullah	31 August 1979 – 30 August 1984
R. Venkataraman	31 August 1984 – 24 July 1987
Shankar Dayal Sharma	3 September 1987 – 24 July 1992
K. R. Narayanan	21 August 1992 – 24 July 1997
Krishan Kant	21 August 1997 – 27 July 2002
Bhairon Singh Shekhawat	19 August 2002 – 21 July 2007
Mohammad Hamid Ansari	11 August 2007 – 11 August 2012 11 August 2012 – 11 August 2017
Venkaiah Naidu	11 August 2017 – 11 August 2022
Jagdeep Dhankhar	11 August 2022 – Till Date

45 CHAPTER

Prime Minister

Articles	Provisions
Article 74	CoM to aid and advise the President.
Article 75	Other provisions as to Ministers.
Article 77	Conduct of business of the Government
Article 78	Duties of PM to furnish information to the President, etc.
Article 88	Rights of Ministers as respects the Houses.

- **Real head of the Government** in the parliamentary system.
- **Nominal Head**- President
- **Article 75(1): PM shall be appointed by the President.**
- **Oath Administered by President**
- **Qualification**
 - Citizen of India.
 - Member of Lok Sabha or the Rajya Sabha.
 - Above 25 years of age (if he or she is a member of Lok Sabha) or above 30 years of age if he or she is a member of the Rajya Sabha).
- **Term of Office: Not fixed**
- **If the Lok Sabha loses confidence in him, he must resign or be dismissed by the President.**

Powers of Prime Minister

- **Formation of CoM: Recommends persons who can be appointed as ministers** by the president.
- **Allocation of Portfolios: Allocates and reshuffles various portfolios among the ministers.**

- **Presides over Meetings of Councils of Ministers**
- **Agenda prepared by cabinet secretariat** in consultation with PMO
- **Head of the Government**
- Acts as a communication channel between the President and the CoM.
- **Advices the president on significant appointments** such as the Attorney General of India, the CAG, the Chairman and Members of the UPSC, election commissioners, the Chairman and Members of the Finance Commission, and so on.
- **Advices the President** on the summoning and proroguing of **Parliamentary sessions.**
- Can **recommend to the President the dissolution of the Lok Sabha** at any moment.
- On the House floor, **he announces government initiatives.**
- **Guide** to frame the **timetable** of each session and **new bills** drafted in Parliament
- **Chairman:**
 - NITI Ayog,
 - National Integration Council,
 - Interstate Council,
 - National Water Resources Council and some other bodies.
- The **chief spokesman of the Union government.**
- The **crisis manager-in-chief** at the political level during emergencies.

Prime Ministers of India till Date

S.No	Prime Minister	Period
1.	Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru	15th Aug 1947- 27th May 1964
2.	Gulzarilal Nanda (interim)	27th May 1964- 9th Jun 1964
3.	Lal Bahadur Shastri	9th June 1964 -11th January 1966
4.	Gulzarilal Nanda	11th January 1966- 24th January 1966
5.	Indira Gandhi	24th January 1966- 24th March 1977
6.	Morarji Desai	24th March 1977- 28th July 1979
7.	Charan Singh	28th July 1979- 14th January 1980
8.	Indira Gandhi	14th January 1980- 31st October 1984
9.	Rajiv Gandhi	31st October 1984- 2nd December 1989
10.	Vishwa Pratap Singh	2nd December 1989- 10th November 1990
11.	Chandra Shekhar	10th November 1990-21st June 1991
12.	P. V Narasimha Rao	21st June 1991- 16th May 1996
13.	Atal Bihari Vajpayee	16th May 1996-1st June 1996
14.	H. D Deve Gowda	1st June 1996- 21st April 1997
15.	Inder Kumar Gujral	21st April 1997- 18th March 1998
16.	Atal Bihari Vajpayee	18th March 1998- 22nd May 2004
17.	Dr Manmohan Singh	22nd May 2004 -17th May 2014
18.	Narendra Modi	26th May 2014 -23rd May 2019
19.	Narendra Modi	30th May 2019 -Incumbent

46 CHAPTER

Central Council of Ministers

- **Articles:** 74-78 of the Indian Constitution
- **Part:** V of the Indian Constitution
- Important Articles Related to the Council of ministers

Articles	Provisions
Article 74	CoM to aid and advise the President.
Article 75	Other provisions as to Ministers.
Article 77	Conduct of business of the Government of India.
Article 78	Duties of the PM to provide information to the President, etc.
Article 88	Rights of Ministers to the Houses

- President **appoints PM and other ministers are appointed by the president but on the PM's suggestion.**
- **Usually appointed among members of Parliament,** either the Lok Sabha or the Rajya Sabha.
- **Article 74 - Establishment of a CoM, led by PM,** to assist and advise the President in performing his duties.
- **President is bound by the advice under the 42nd and 44th Amendment Acts.**
- **Article 75 states that ministers serve at the discretion of the President ⇒ President can dismiss a minister even if the COM has the confidence of the Lok Sabha.**
- **Article 75:** COM jointly responsible to the Lok Sabha.

Cabinet Committee

List of Cabinet Committees

8 Functional Cabinet committees:

1. Cabinet Committee on **Political Affairs**
 2. Cabinet Committee on **Economic Affairs**
 3. **Appointments Committee** of the Cabinet
 4. Cabinet Committee on **Security**
 5. Cabinet Committee on **Parliamentary Affairs**
 6. Cabinet Committee on **Accommodation**
 7. Cabinet Committee on **Investment and Growth**
 8. Cabinet Committee on **Employment and Skill Development**
- Constituted by PM

- Members: 3-8
- Headed by PM.
- Work: Sort out problems & also make decisions.

Functions of Cabinet Committees

1. **The Political Affairs Committee:** Handles all domestic and foreign policy issues. **Members:**
 - The PM (Chairman)
 - The Home Minister
 - The Defence Minister
 - The External Affairs Minister
2. **The Economic Affairs Committee:** In the economic sphere, directs and coordinates government activity. **Members:**
 - The Prime Minister (Chairman)
 - The Finance Minister
 - Rural Development Minister
 - Industry Minister
3. **Appointments Committee:** All appointments to higher levels in the Central Secretariat, Public Enterprises, Banks, and Financial Institutions are made by this committee. **Members:**
 - The Prime Minister (Chairman)
 - The Home Minister, and
 - The minister Concerned
4. **Parliamentary Affairs Committee:** In the Parliament, he is in charge of tracking the progress of government work. **Members:**
 - The Home Minister (Chairman)
 - Information and Broadcasting Minister
 - Minister for Labour and Parliamentary Affairs
 - Law minister

Committees Chaired by Prime Minister

- The Political Affairs Committee (**Super Cabinet**)
- The Economic Affairs Committee
- Appointments Committee

Committees Chaired by Home Minister

- Parliamentary Affairs Committee

47 CHAPTER

Parliament

- **Articles:** 79 to 122 of the constitution of India.
- **Part:** V of the Constitution of India

Articles	Provision
Articles 79-88	General
Articles 89-98	Officers of Parliament
Articles 99-100	Conduct of Business
Articles 101-104	Disqualifications of Members
Articles 105-106	Powers, Privileges and Immunities of Parliament and its Members
Articles 107-111	Legislative Procedure
Articles 112-117	Procedure in Financial Matters
Articles 118-122	Procedure Generally

Composition of Parliament

- **President**
- Council of States/ Upper House (**Rajya Sabha**)
- House of the People/ Lower House (**Lok Sabha**)
 - The **Hindi Names** Were adopted in 1954

Composition of the Two Houses

Rajya Sabha

- **IV Schedule - allocation of seats in the Rajya Sabha** to the states and union territories

Composition	Current Composition
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Total strength: 250 • Representatives of States and UTs: 238 • Representatives Nominated by the President: 12 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Total Strength: 245 • Representatives of States: 229 • Representatives of Union Territories: 4 • Representatives Nominated by President: 12

- **Term: 6 years** (Representation of Peoples Act 1951)
 - **Every 2 years, 1/3rd of its members leave.**
 - **President** to make provisions to govern the order of retirement of Rajya Sabha members
- **Election: Beginning of every third year**, new elections and presidential nominations fill their seats.
- Retiring members can run for **re-election and renomination as many times.**

Lok Sabha

- **People directly elect the representatives.**

- Elections based on the **universal adult franchise principle.**

Composition	Current Composition
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Total strength: 550 • Representatives of States: 530 • Representatives of Union Territories: 20 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Total Strength: 543 • Representatives of States: 530 • Representatives of UTs: 13

- **Not a permanent** body.
- **5-year term** starting from the date of its first meeting following the general elections, after which it dissolves automatically.
 - **President: Authority to dissolve the Lok Sabha at any time**, even before the five-year period has expired, and this power cannot be challenged in court.
 - **Exception:** During a **national emergency**, the **Lok Sabha's tenure can be extended** by a law of Parliament for **one year at a time** for any amount of time.
- **Person cannot be a member of both the houses.**

Presiding officers of the Parliament

Speaker of Lok Sabha

- **Lok Sabha elects** the Speaker from **among its members.**
- **Speaker serves for the whole term** of the Lok Sabha.
- When **Lok Sabha is dissolved**, the **Speaker remains in office until the newly-elected Lok Sabha convenes.**

Role Power and Functions

- Keeps the House in order and **maintains decorum**
- Can **authorise a secret sitting** of the House.
- **Determines** whether a bill is a **Money Bill** or not, and his judgement is final.
- Decides disqualification under **Tenth Schedule.**
- **Presides over a joint sitting** of the two Houses of Parliament.

Deputy Speaker of Lok Sabha

- **Elected by the Lok Sabha** itself from amongst its members.
- **Remains in office** usually during life of Lok Sabha.
- If the **Speaker is unavailable**, he **presides over a joint sitting of both Houses of Parliament.**
- **Reports directly to the House** and is **not a subordinate of the Speaker.**

Powers and Duties

- When the **Speaker's office is vacant**, the Deputy Speaker assumes those responsibilities.
- **Can speak and participate in House procedures** at that time, as well as **cannot vote in the first instance**, though in the case of an equal number of votes he can.

Speaker Pro tem

- Speaker of previous Lok Sabha vacates his position shortly before the first sitting of the newly-elected Lok Sabha. So, the **President designates a Lok Sabha member as Speaker Pro Tem**.
 - **Senior most member** is chosen for this.

Chairman of Rajya Sabha

- **Presiding officer of the Rajya Sabha.**
- **Vice-President of India** serves as the **Rajya Sabha's ex-officio Chairman**.
- **Chairman's responsibilities identical to Speaker** in the Lok Sabha.
- **Can be present and speak** in the House, as well as **participate in its procedures without voting**.

Deputy Chairman of Rajya Sabha

- **Election:** By the **Rajya Sabha itself from amongst its members**.
- When the **Chairman's office falls vacant**, **Vice-chairman** assumes those responsibilities.
- When the **Chairman is unable to attend a meeting** of the Parliament, **he fills in for him**.
- **Can be present and speak in the House**, as well as **participate in its procedures without voting**.
- **While presiding over the House, unable to vote in the first instance**; he may only cast a tie-breaking vote.

Leaders in Parliament

Leader of the House	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PM if he is a member, or a Lok Sabha minister nominated by PM. • Rajya Sabha- a minister of the Rajya Sabha appointed by PM. • A key functionary having direct control over how business is conducted.
----------------------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Also has the power to choose a House deputy leader.
Leader of Opposition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leader of the largest Opposition party having at least one-tenth of the total number of seats in the House. • Constructive critique of the government's policies and to establish an alternative government. • An official leader of the opposition was first recognized in 1969. • 1977- leaders of the opposition received statutory status. • Also entitled to the same pay, allowances, and other benefits as a cabinet minister.
Whip	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not specified in Indian Constitution, House Rules, or any Parliamentary Law. • Based on the parliamentary government's conventions. • Each political party, whether ruling or opposition, has its own whip. • Appointed by political party, to act as an assistant floor leader. • In charge of ensuring that a big number of his party's members attend meetings and winning their support for or against a certain subject. • Supervises and governs their behaviour in the House of Commons. • Members are expected to follow the whip's instructions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Disciplinary action may be imposed if this does not occur.

Sessions of Parliament

- Parliament has **three sessions**
 - **Budget session** (February to May) Voting in House
 - **Monsoon session** (July to September)
 - **Winter session** (November to December)

Summon	Adjournment	Prorogation	Dissolution
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • By President to assemble on a regular basis. • Time between the 2 sessions <6 months • Recess: time b/w prorogation & reassembly of a House in a new session. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • work in a session is put on hold • "Adjournment sine die": suspension of session for an indeterminate length of time. • Authority: Presiding officer 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brings session to end • President issues after the presiding officer proclaims the House adjourned sine die 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rajya Sabha is not vulnerable to dissolution; only Lok Sabha is dissolved. • Dissolution puts an end to the current House's existence, and a new House is formed following the general elections.

- Lok Sabha dissolved in one of two ways:
 - Automatically: When its five-year term expires;
 - Act of the President: if He decides to dissolve the House, which he has the authority to do.
 - Lok Sabha is irreversibly dissolved if it is disbanded before the end of its usual term.
- Position with respect to lapsing of bills on the dissolution:
 1. A Bill Lapses
 - Pending in the Lok sabha (whether originating in the Lok sabha or transmitted to it by the Rajya sabha).
 - Passed by the Lok Sabha but pending in the Rajya sabha.
 2. A Bill Doesn't Lapse
 - Pending in the Rajya sabha but not passed by the Lok sabha .

- Passed by both the houses but pending assent of the President.
- Passed by both the Houses but returned by the president for reconsideration of House (s).
- Bill not passed by the two Houses owing to disagreement and the president has notified the holding of a joint sitting before the dissolution of Lok Sabha.

Devices of Parliamentary proceedings

Question hour

- 1st Hour of every Parliamentary Sitting.
- During this the members ask questions and the ministers usually give answers.

Types of Questions

<u>Starred Question</u>	<u>Unstarred Question</u>	<u>Short notice Question</u>
Answer: Oral Form Supplementary Q. Can be Asked Colour: Green	Answer: Written Form Supplementary Ques.: Cannot be Asked Colour: White	After notice <10 days Answer: Oral Form Colour: Light Pink

Zero hour

- Begins immediately after the question hour and continues until the day's agenda (i.e., the House's normal business) is completed.
- No mention in Rules of Procedure.
- An informal mechanism accessible to members of Parliament to raise issues without previous warning.

Motions

- Device to raise a discussion in the House on general public interest.
- The House makes decisions or expresses opinions on various matters by adopting or rejecting motions proposed by ministries or private members.

Closure Motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Introduced by a member to cut short the debate on a topic before the House. ● If approved, discussion is immediately halted and the topic is submitted to a vote.
Privilege Motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Against minister's breach of parliamentary privileges. ● Raised by a member if he believes that a minister has violated the House's or one or more of its members' privilege by withholding facts from a case or by supplying incorrect facts. ● To censure the minister in question.
Calling attention motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● By a Member in the Parliament. ● To bring the attention of a minister related to matters of urgent public importance, and to seek an authoritative statement from him on that matter. ● Indian innovation in the Indian Parliament (since 1954). ● Mentioned in rules of Procedure unlike zero hour.
Adjournment Motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To draw attention of the House to a definite matter of urgent public importance. ● Requires support of 50 members to be admitted. ● Interrupts the normal business of the house ● Rajya sabha is not allowed to vote on this motion ● Discussion on the adjournment motion should be not less than 2 hour and 30 min.
No confidence Motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ministry remains in office as long as the majority of Lok Sabha members have faith in it. ● Lok Sabha can remove ministry from office by passing a No Confidence Motion. ● Requires the support of 50 members to be admitted.
Confidence Motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● President can ask governments to prove their majority on House floor. ● Government of the day may try to show its majority on its own by introducing a motion of confidence and obtaining the House's confidence. ● If defeated, government forced to resign.
Motion of Thanks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● First session following each general election and the first session of each fiscal year addressed by President. ● President summarises the government's plans and programmes for the previous year and the next year in this address.

Resolutions

- **Introduced by members to bring topics of wide public concern to the attention of the House or the government.**
- The debate of a resolution must be firmly related to and contained within the resolution's scope.
- **Member who has proposed** a resolution or an amendment to a resolution **can only withdraw it with the House's permission.**

Legislative Procedure in Parliament

Ordinary Bill

A. Originating House

- Can originate **in any house of the Parliament.**
- Can be **introduced both by a minister or by a member**
- Sent to the other house after passage and then to the President for his assent.

Money bill

- **Article 110:** A bill is deemed to be a money bill if it contains provisions 'only' dealing with all or any of the following matters:
 - **Imposition, cancellation, remission, modification, or control of any tax;**
 - The **regulation of the Union government's borrowing of money;**
 - The **custody of the Consolidated Fund of India** or the contingency fund of India, the payment of money into or the withdrawal of money from any such fund;
 - The **appropriation of money from the Consolidated Fund of India;**
 - The **declaration of any expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of India** or the increase in the amount of any such expenditure;
 - **Money received on account of the Consolidated Fund of India** or the public account of India, or the custody or issuance of such money, or the audit of the Union or a state's accounts;
 - **Any matter incidental to any of the matters specified above.**

- **Money bill** can originate **only in Lok Sabha** on prior recommendation of President.
- May **only be submitted by a minister.**

Money Bill in the Rajya Sabha

- **Limited power** to Rajya sabha in case of Money bills.
- **Cannot reject or amend** a money bill.
- **Can only provide suggestions** and **has 14 days to return the bill** to the Lok sabha.
- **Lok Sabha can approve or reject** all or some of the Rajya sabha recommendations.

Money Bill to President:

- Gives **consent,**
- **Withholds** his assent,
- **Cannot return** it to the Lok Sabha for reconsideration.

Financial Bills

- Bills **dealing with fiscal matters**, such as revenue or spending.
 - **Types:**
1. **Financial Bills(I)**
 - **Includes items listed** in Article 110 & also **additional pieces of general law.**
 - **Similar to Money Bill:**
 - Both can be **introduced only in the Lok Sabha**, not in the Rajya Sabha;
 - Both can only be **introduced on the president's recommendation.**
 2. **Financial Bills(II)**
 - **Has provisions concerning expenditures from the Consolidated Fund of India**, but none of the subjects listed in Article 110 are included.
 - **Treated as an ordinary bill**, and it is subject to the same parliamentary procedure as an ordinary bill in every way.

Budget in Parliament

- Under **Article 112** as **The Annual Financial Statement.**
- Term "**Budget**" **not mentioned** in the Indian Constitution.
- **A Money bill** and can be **introduced in Lok Sabha only.**
- **Article 77(3):** President has assigned the **Union Finance Minister** with preparing the budget and directing it through parliament.
- **Article 112:** President **causes to be laid** before both the Houses of Parliament referred to as the "**annual financial statement**".
- **Stages of Enactment:**
 1. Presentation of Budget
 2. General Discussion
 3. Scrutiny by departmental committees
 4. Voting on Demands of Grants
 5. Passing of Appropriation Bill
 6. Passing of Financial Bill

Funds for Central Government

1. Consolidated fund of India

- A fund to which all revenues and payments are **credited and debited.**
- Used to **make all legally authorized payments on behalf of the Indian government.**
- **No money** from this fund **can be allocated** (issued or drawn) **unless a parliamentary law authorizes it.**

2. **Public Account of India**

- **All other public funds received** by or on behalf of the Indian government.
- **Managed by executive action**, which means that payments from it can be made without the need for a parliamentary appropriation.
- **Majority of these payments come in the form of banking transactions.**

3. **Contingency Fund of India**

- **Formed by India Contingency Fund Act 1950.**
- **Money is placed at the president's disposal**, and he can use it to make loans to cover unexpected expenses while the Parliament approves it.
- **Finance secretary manages the money on behalf of the president.** It is controlled by executive order, same as India's public account.

Powers and function of Parliament

Legislative Powers and Functions

- To create law for the country's governance.
- **Union list and Residuary Subjects:** Parliament has sole authority to enact legislation.
- **Concurrent List:** Has overriding powers.
- Constitution authorises Parliament to pass laws on the subjects included in the **State List:**
 - When **Rajya Sabha votes a resolution**
 - **National Emergency is in effect.**
 - When **two or more states Submit a combined request to the Parliament.**
 - When the state is under the **President's Rule**

Executive Powers and Functions

- **Parliament exerts authority on the Executive through:**
 - Question-hour,
 - zero-hour,
 - half-an-hour debates,
 - short-duration debates,
 - calling attention motions,
 - adjournment motions,
 - no-confidence motions,
 - censure motions.
- Also **supervises the Executive's operations through committees** such as the committee on government assurance, the committee on subordinate legislation, and the committee on petitions, among others.
- **Individual responsibility is a component of collective responsibility**, which means that each minister is personally accountable for the efficient operation of the ministry under his control.

Financial Powers and Functions

- **Executive cannot levy or collect taxes, nor can it undertake expenditures, without the power and permission of Parliament.**
- **Parliament also examines government expenditures and financial performance with the support of its financial committees:**
 - **Public accounts committee,**
 - **Estimates committee**
 - **Committee on public undertakings.**
- In financial concerns, **legislative control over the executive is divided into two stages:**
 - **Budgetary control** - control before grant appropriation via the enactment of the budget;
 - **Post-budgetary control** - control after grant appropriation through the three financial committees.

Constituent Powers and Functions

Parliament can amend the Constitution in three ways:

- Simple majority
- Special Majority
- Special Majority with the consent of half of all the state legislatures.

Judicial Powers and Functions

- **Power to impeach the President.**
- **Power to remove the Vice-President.**
- Authority to **propose to the president the removal of SC and HC judges** (including CJI), CEC, CAG.
- **Power to penalise its members or outsiders for violating its privileges or contempt.**

Parliamentary Committees

- **Appointed or elected by the House or nominated by the Speaker / Chairman.**

Ad-hoc committees

- **Inquiry Committees**
 - **Constituted either by the two Houses by a resolution or by the Speaker / Chairman**
 - **Function:** to investigate and report on specified matters
- **Advisory Committees**
 - **Include select or combined committees** constituted to **review and report** on specific measures.

Must follow the method outlined in the Rules of Procedure and the Speaker's/Chairman's Directions.

Standing Committees

Financial Committees

Features	Public Accounts Committee	Estimates Committee	Committee on Public Undertaking
Origin	1921 under the Government of India Act of 1919	1921, post-independence-1950 on the recommendation of FM John Mathai	1964 on the recommendation of Krishna Menon Committee
Members	22 (15 LS + 7 RS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elected by the Parliament proportional representation by means of single transferable vote. Ministers cannot be elected 	30 (only LS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elected by the Parliament proportional representation by means of single transferable vote. Ministers cannot be elected 	22 (15 LS + 7 RS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elected by the Parliament proportional representation by means of single transferable vote. Ministers cannot be elected
Term	1 year	1 year	1 year
Chairman	Appointed by the Speaker	Appointed by the Speaker	Appointed by the Speaker
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Evaluate Union government's appropriation and finance accounts Examine the accounts of state corporations, manufacturing projects, and CAG's audit report. To investigate the accounts of autonomous and semi-autonomous organisations to assess the CAG's report on the audit of any receipt. To look into any money spent on a service during a fiscal year that exceeds the amount allocated by the Lok Sabha for that purpose. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To report what economies, improvements in organization, efficiency, or administrative reform, consistent with policy underlying estimates, may be affected. To propose alternative strategies in order to improve administrative efficiency and economy. Determine if the funds are properly allocated within the policy parameters outlined in the estimates. Make recommendations on how the estimates should be presented to Parliament. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Examining reports and accounts of public undertakings Examining CAG's reports on public undertakings Determining whether the affairs of public companies are handled in line with solid business principles and sensible commercial practises Any additional tasks vested in the public accounts and estimates committees in regard to public undertakings that the Speaker may assign to it from time to time.
Limitations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not concerned with policy issues post-mortem review of the accounts. No intervention in day-to-day administrative concerns. Advisory nature; not executive No authority to disallow spendings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Evaluates budget estimates only after Parliament has voted, not before. Advisory body. Cannot access the CAG's expertise Job resembles that of a postmortem. Evaluates a limited ministries and departments each year. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cannot examine > 10-12 public undertakings per year. Job resembles that of a post-mortem. Does not investigate technological issues because none of its members are technical professionals. Advisory Body.

Departmental Standing Committees

- **First time in 1993** on the **recommendation of Rules Committee of the Lok Sabha.**
- **Aims to ensure that the Executive** (i.e., the CoM) is **more accountable to Parliament**, particularly in terms of financial accountability
 - Also **aid** Parliament in more **efficiently debating the budget.**
- **Members: 31** (LS 21 + RS 10)
- **Election**
 - **Lok sabha members** by the **speaker** every year.
 - **Rajya sabha members** by the **chairman** every year.
 - **proportional representation** by means of the **single transferable vote.**
 - **Ministers cannot be elected**
- **Term: 1 year.**

- **Total committees: 24** (LS: 16, RS: 8)
- **Functions**
 - To **consider the demands for grants** of the concerned ministries / departments before they are **discussed and voted in the Lok Sabha.**
 - But its report **should not suggest** anything of the nature of **cut motions.**
 - To **review bills relevant to the ministries / departments** in question.
 - To **take into account yearly reports** from ministries and agencies.
 - To **evaluate the national long-term policy papers** that have been given to the Houses.
- **Limitations**
 - **Does not consider day-to-day operations** of the relevant ministries / departments.
 - **Does not take up issues already being discussed** by other Parliamentary committees.



Toppersnotes
Unleash the topper in you

48 CHAPTER

Governor

- **Articles:** 153 to 161 of the constitution of India
- **Part:** VI of the constitution of India
- **Important Articles related to Governor**

Article	Provisions
153	Governors of State
154	Executive Power of State
155	Appointment of Governor
156	Term of office of Governor
157	Qualifications for appointment as Governor
158	Conditions of Governor's Office
159	Oath and affirmation by the Governor
160	Discharge of the functions of the Governor in certain contingencies.
161	Power of Governor to grant pardons, etc., and to suspend, remit or commute sentences in certain cases

- State Government's **constitutional head**
- A **link between the central and state governments.**
- Executive leader of a state and operates on the **recommendation of the CoM of the State.**
- **Represents the Centre in the State** as a nominee of the President
- **Serves as a communication channel** and interaction between the State and the Centre.
- **Appointed by:** The President by warrant under his hand and seal.
- **Term: 5 years** at the **pleasure of the President.**
- **Cannot be a member of Parliament** or a State Legislature, and if he or she is, then has to vacate his seat before joining as Governor.
- **Prohibited from holding any other office of Profit**
- **Must take an oath** or affirmation **administered by the Chief Justice of the respective state HC**, or in his absence, the most senior judge of that court available.
- **Article 361: not liable to any court for the exercise and performance of his powers and duties**
- During his tenure
 - **no criminal proceedings can be initiated** or continued in any court.
 - **no process for his arrest** can be issued.

Powers and Functions of the Governor

Executive Powers

- **In charge of the state's executive power**

- **Extends to all subjects** over which the State Legislature has legislative authority.
- **Subject to the President's executive authority** on subjects stated in the **Concurrent List.**
- **Appointment and patronage rights:**
 - **Advocate General of the State**
 - **Chairman and members of State Public Service Commission** (can be removed by the President only)
 - **State Election Commission and the State Finance Commission (Article 243K) (243I).**
- **Submits a report to the President**, along with suggestions, on the **breakdown of constitutional machinery** and the **imposition of the President's Rule** in a State

Legislative Powers

- Can call a **special session of the State Legislature**, prorogue one or both Houses, or dissolve the Legislative Assembly.
- **Addresses the House or Houses of the State Legislature** singly or jointly
- Can **communicate with any House** of the State Legislature.
- Before becoming law, **every bill enacted by the State Legislature must gain the Governor's consent.**
- In the state legislature **presents reports of:**
 - State Public Service Commission (Article 323)
 - State Finance Commission (Article 243(1))
 - Comptroller and Auditor General (Article 151)
- May resolve a subject pertaining to the **disqualification of a member of the Legislature** on the recommendation of the **Election Commission** if that person's **election is contested through a petition** by some voter or voters in his State (**Article 192**).

Financial Powers

- **No Money Bill or Financial Bill can be introduced** in the state legislature **without the Governor's recommendations.**
- Only on his suggestion may a **request for a grant be made in the Legislative Assembly.**
- **Responsible for preparing and presenting the annual budget to the State Legislature**, which includes the expected revenue and expenditures for the year as well as **supplementary budgets** for the State.

- In the event of an unplanned expenditure, the Governor can make advances from the State's Contingency Fund, pending approval by the Legislature.
- Every five years, he appoints a Finance Commission to assess the financial situation of the Panchayats and municipalities.

Judicial Powers

- **Pardoning Power (Art.161):** can award pardons, reprieves, respites, and remissions of penalty, as well as suspend, remit, and commute the sentences of anybody guilty of laws about the state.
- **Judicial Appointments:** The President consults the Governor to appoint the justices of the State HC.

Ordinance Making Power of Governor

- **Article 213:** can issue an Ordinance when one or both Houses of the State Legislature are not in session. It has the force of a law.

Emergency Powers

- **Report to the President** whenever he believes that a situation has arisen in which the State's government cannot be carried out by the Constitution's provisions (Article 356), thereby inviting the President to assume all or part of the State's government functions (President's Rule)

Discretionary Powers of the Governor

- lynchpin of constitutional democracy in the States.
- If there is any doubt as to whether a topic is one for which the Governor has discretionary authority, the Governor's judgement is definitive.
- Reserve a bill for consideration of the President
- Recommend President's Rule
- serves as the administrator of a bordering Union Territory.

- Under Schedule VI, determines the royalty paid to the Tribal District Council accruing from licenses for mineral exploration by Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram
- Seeking information from the CM with regard to the administrative and legislative matters of the state.
- Appointment of CM when no party has a clear-cut majority in the state legislative assembly or when he dies suddenly and there is no obvious successor.
- Dismissal of the CoM when it cannot prove the confidence of the state legislative assembly.
- Dissolution of the state legislative assembly if the CoM has lost its majority.
- Maharashtra: Establish separate development boards for Vidarbha and Marathwada and Rest of Maharashtra. (Art. 371)
- Gujarat: Establish separate development boards for Saurashtra and Kutch. (Art. 371) Chief Minister
- Nagaland: to maintain law and order in the wake of internal disturbance in the Naga Hills-Tuensang Area. (Art. 371A)
- Assam: administration of the tribal areas (Art.371B)
- Manipur: administration of the Hill areas in the state. (Art. 371C)
- Andhra Pradesh: regional development of Andhra Pradesh (Art.371D)
- Sikkim: For peace and for ensuring social and economic advancement of the different sections of the population. (Art. 371F)
- Arunachal Pradesh: maintaining the law and order in the state. (Art. 371H).
- Karnataka: development of Hyderabad-Karnataka region. (Art.371J; added by 98th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2012)

49 CHAPTER

Chief Minister

- Elected head of the State
- Important articles related to Chief Minister:

Article	Provision
163	Aid and advise Governor as head of State CoM
164	Governor to appoint CM
167(a)	Communicate to the governor all decisions of the com related to the management of the state's affairs and legislative measures
167(b)	Provide the governor with any facts or ideas for legislation relevant to the management of the state's affairs
167(c)	Present to the com for consideration any item on which a minister has made a decision

- **Art. 164:** governor must appoint the CM from the majority party in the state legislative assembly.
- **Governor administers the oaths** of office and secrecy to the CM
- **Term: not fixed**

Powers of Chief minister

As **chairman of the state council of ministers**

- Proposes governor to whom to select as **minister**
- **distributes and reshuffles ministerial portfolios.**
- In case of a disagreement, **can ask the minister to quit or urge the governor to fire him.**
- He **presides over the CoM' meetings** and has a say in its decisions.
- He **directs, oversees, and organises all of the ministers' operations.**

Concerning Governor

- **Communicate** to the Governor of the state all **decisions of the CoM** relating to the administration of the state's affairs and proposals for legislation;
- **Advises the governor on nominating significant authorities** such as the advocate general, chairman, and state public service members.

Concerning State Legislature

As the **head of the house:**

- **advises the governor on the summoning and proroguing** of the state legislature's sessions.

- **recommend** to the governor the **dissolution of the legislative assembly** at any moment.
- On the floor of the House, **he announces the government's policies.**

Functions

- **State Planning Board's chairman.**
- By rotation, **serves as vice-chairman of the concerned zonal council**, holding office for one year at a time.
- member of the PM's **Inter-State Council and the Governing Council of NITI Aayog.**
- state government's **main spokesman.**
- In times of crisis, **serves as the principal crisis manager** at the political level.
- **interacts with diverse groups of people** and gets memoranda from them on their issues, among other things.
- **services' political leader.**

Relationship with Governor

- **Article 163:** a CoM, with the CM as its chairman, to assist and advise the governor in the discharge of his duties, save when he is compelled to exercise all or part of his duties in his discretion.
- **Article 164: (a) Governor shall appoint the CM**, and other ministers appointed by the Governor on the CM's advice;
(b) ministers shall serve at the governor's pleasure;
(c) CoM shall be collectively responsible to the state's legislative assembly.
- **Article 167:** It is the **CM's responsibility** to:
 - convey** to the governor of the state **all decisions of the CoM** related to the management of the state's affairs and legislative measures;
 - provide** the governor **with any facts or ideas for legislation** relevant to the management of the state's affairs;
 - if the governor so directs, to **present to the CoM** any item on which a minister has made a decision but which has not been considered by the council.

50 CHAPTER

State Council of Ministers

- **Articles:** 163,164, 166, 167 and 177 of the Constitution of India
- **Part:** VI of the constitution of India

Article	Provisions
163	CoM to aid and advise the Governor.
164	Other provisions as to Ministers
167	Duties of the CM as respects the furnishing of information to the Governor, etc.
177	Rights of Ministers and Advocate-General as respects the Houses.

- **Art. 164:** Appointed by Governor
- **Ceases to be a minister** if he or she is not a member of the state legislature for **six months** in a row.
- **Ministers are usually appointed among members of the Legislature**, either the Legislative Assembly or the Legislative Council.
- A **minister** who is a **member of one House** of Legislature has the **right to speak and participate in the proceedings of the other House as well**, but he can only vote in that House.

Responsibility of Ministers

Collective Responsibility

- **Article 164:** **collectively responsible** to the Legislative assembly of the state i.e. **all ministers share accountability** for all their actions of omission and commission in front of the state Assembly.
- When the Assembly approves a **no-confidence resolution against the CoM**, all ministers, including those from the Legislative council, must resign.

Individual Responsibility

- **Article 164:** **ministers serve at the discretion of the Governor**, which means that the **Governor can dismiss a minister even if the state COM has the confidence of the Assembly**.
- solely on the CM's suggestion.

Legal Responsibility

- **no provision** for legal accountability.
- **Order of the Governor** for a public act does **not need to be countersigned by a minister**.
- **courts are prohibited from investigating** the nature of the ministers' recommendations to the Governor.

Aid and Advice to Governor

Article 163: CoM to aid and advise the Governor.

- in the **performance of his powers**, except when he is obliged to exercise his functions in his discretion.
- Advice so given is **not subject to scrutiny in any court**.

Cabinet Committees

- The **cabinet is organised into a number of committees known as cabinet committees**.
- Two Types:
 - **Standing:** Permanent in character
 - **Ad hoc:** Temporary in character
- They are **established by the CM** in response to the needs of the period and the situation. As a result, **their number, nomenclature, and composition change with time**.
- They not only resolve difficulties and provide ideas for the cabinet's consideration, but they also make decisions. The cabinet, on the other hand, has the ability to revisit its judgments.

51 CHAPTER

State Legislature

- **Articles:** 168 to 212 of the constitution of India
- **Part:** VI of the constitution of India
- **Important Articles related to state Legislature**

Articles	Provisions
168-177	General Provisions
178-187	Officers of the State Legislature
188-189	Conduct of Business
190-193	Disqualifications of Members
194-195	Powers, privileges and immunities of State Legislatures and their Members
196-201	Legislative Procedure
202-207	Procedure in Financial Matters
208-212	Procedure Generally

Unicameral Legislature

- Only one chamber, responsible for enacting and enforcing laws for the state
- The twenty-two states have a unicameral system.
- **Composition:** The governor and the legislative assembly

Bicameral Legislatures

Composition: The governor, The legislative council and The legislative assembly.

- **The legislative council:** Vidhan Parishad is the upper house (second chamber or house of elders),
- **The legislative assembly:** Vidhan Sabha is the lower house (first chamber or popular house).

States (6): Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Maharashtra and Karnataka.

Legislative Assembly

Strength

- **Representatives directly chosen by the people** based on Universal Adult Franchise
- **maximum strength:** 500
- **minimum strength:** 60 depending on the state's Population.
 - **Arunachal Pradesh, Sikkim, and Goa:** 30,
 - **Mizoram:** 40
 - **Nagaland:** 46
- **Sikkim and Nagaland,** certain members are elected indirectly.
- **Term:** 5 year; from the date of its first meeting following general elections.

- **Dissolution:**
 - **Automatic:** Expiry of 5 years
 - **Governor:** can dissolve the assembly at any time and conduct fresh elections
- **Emergency:** Terms can be **extended during the period of national emergency** by a law of Parliament **for 1 year at a time** (for any length of time).
 - **Term of Extension:** **cannot continue beyond a period of six months** after the emergency has ceased to operate.
 - **the assembly should be re-elected within six months** after the revocation of emergency.

Legislative Council

- **Maximum strength:** one-third of the assembly's overall strength
- **Minimum strength:** 40.
- **1/3 are elected by the members of local bodies** in the state like municipalities, district boards, etc.,
- **1/12 are elected by graduates of three years** standing and residing within the state,
- **1/12 are elected by teachers of three years** standing in the state, not lower in standard than secondary school,
- **1/3 are elected by the members of the legislative assembly** of the state from amongst persons who are not members of the assembly,
- **Continuous chamber** and cannot be dissolved.
- **Every second year, one-third of the organization's members leave.** As a result, a member remains a member for **six years**.
- **At the beginning of every third year,** new elections and nominations (by the governor) are held to fill the vacant seats.

Membership of State Legislature

As Per the Constitution of India

- He must be an **Indian citizen**.
- He must **take an oath or affirmation** before a person designated by the Election Commission for this purpose.
- In the case of the **legislative council**, he must be at least **30 years** old,
- In the case of the **legislative assembly**, he must be at least **25 years** old.

Presiding Officers of the State Legislatures

Speaker of Assembly

- **Election:** The Speaker is chosen from among the assembly members.
- **Term:** Typically, the Speaker serves during the assembly.

Powers of Speaker

- He **keeps the assembly in order and maintains decorum**
- He is the **final arbiter of**
 - The Indian Constitution's provisions.
 - The rules of procedure and conduct of the business of Assembly,
 - The legislative precedents within the assembly.
- In the **absence of a quorum, he adjourns or suspends the assembly.**
- he can **authorise a secret sitting of the House.**
- He is the one who **determines whether a bill is a Money Bill or not**, and his judgement is definitive.
- He **decides whether a member of the assembly should be disqualified for defection under the provisions of the Tenth Schedule.**
- He **picks the chairman of all of the assembly's committees and oversees their operations.**
- The Business Advisory Committee, the Rules Committee, and the General Purpose Committee are all chaired by him.

Deputy Speaker of Assembly

- **Election:** Elected by the assembly itself from amongst its members.
- **Term:** Like the Speaker, the Deputy Speaker remains in office usually during the life of the assembly.

Powers and Duties

- When the **Speaker's office is vacant**, the Deputy Speaker assumes those responsibilities.
- When the **Speaker is unable to attend a meeting of the Assembly, he fills in for him.**
- He **possesses all of the Speaker's authority in both situations.**

Chairman of Council

- **Election:** By the council itself from amongst its members.
- The Chairman in the council has **comparable duties and functions to the Speaker in the assembly as a presiding authority.**
- The Speaker, on the other hand, has **one specific power that the Chairman does not.**
 - The **Speaker determines whether or not a bill is a Money Bill**, and his judgement is definitive.

Vice Chairman of the Council Election

- By the council itself from amongst its members.

Powers and Duties

- When the **Chairman's office is vacant**, the Vice Chairman assumes those responsibilities.
- When the **Chairman is unable to attend a meeting of the Assembly, he fills in for him.**
- He **possesses all of the Chairman's authority in both situations.**
- A **panel of vice chairman is Nominated by the Chairman from among the members.**
 - In the absence of the chairman or the Vice chairman, any of them might preside over the assembly.
 - When presiding, he has the same powers as the speaker.
 - He will remain in office until a new Vice chairman panel is appointed.

52 CHAPTER

Panchayati Raj

- **Introduced by:** 73rd Amendment Act 1992
- **Panchayati Raj:** A system of rural local self-government.
- **Established by state legislatures** in all of India's states to help strengthen democracy at the grassroots level.
- **Articles: 243-243(O) in Part IX** of the Constitution of India.
- **Related Articles:**

Articles	Provisions
Article 243	Definitions.
Article 243 A	Gram Sabha
Article 243 B	Constitution of Panchayats
Article 243 C	Composition of Panchayats
Article 243 E	Duration of Panchayats, etc.
Article 243 G	Powers, authority and responsibilities of Panchayats.
Article 243 K	Elections to the Panchayats.
Article 243 O	Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters

Balwant Rai Mehta Committee

- **Appointment:** January 1957,
- Aimed at examining the working of the Community Development Programme (1952) and the National Extension Service (1953) and to suggest measures for their better functioning.
- **Chairman:** Balwant Rai Mehta.
- **Report submitted:** November 1957
- **Recommendations:**
 - establishment of 'democratic decentralisation', i.e., **Panchayati Raj**.
 - **3-tier Panchayati raj system:**
 - **Village-level:** Gram panchayats - **directly elected**
 - **Block-level:** Panchayat samiti- **indirectly elected**
 - **District-level:** Zila parishads - **indirectly elected**
 - **Panchayat samiti- the executive body**
 - **Zila parishad - advisory, coordinating, and supervisory body**
 - **Chairman - District collector.**
 - Should **receive a meaningful transfer of power and duty.**
 - **Appropriate resources should be allocated to these entities** for them to fulfil their powers and obligations.

- A **mechanism** should be **developed to have the desired impact.**

- **Recommendation accepted** by the National Development Council in January 1958.

Rajasthan was the **1st State to establish Panchayati Raj.**

- Inaugurated by the then PM on October 2, 1959, in **Nagaur district (Rajasthan).**

Followed by Andhra Pradesh, which also adopted the system in 1959.

Ashok Mehta Committee

- **Appointment:** In December 1977,
- **Chairman:** Ashok Mehta.
- **Report submitted:** in August 1978
- Aimed at **reviving and strengthening the declining Panchayati raj system** in the country.
- **Recommendations**
 - 3-tier system of Panchayati raj to be replaced by a **2-tier structure.**
 - **Zila parishad** at district level
 - **Mandal panchayat** for a group of villages having 15,000 to 20,000 people.
 - Below the state level, a **district** should be the **focus of decentralisation** under public oversight.
 - **Zila Parishad - executive body for district planning.**
 - **Political parties** should be **allowed to participate in panchayat elections** at all levels.
 - **To mobilise their own financial resources**, Panchayati raj organisations should have obligatory **taxing powers.**
 - A district-level agency and a legislative committee should conduct a **regular social audit to determine if money designated for disadvantaged social and economic groups is spent on them.**
 - The state government should not supersede Panchayati raj institutions.
 - **If an important supersession occurs, elections** must be held **within six months** after the supersession date.
 - **Nyaya panchayats** and **development panchayats** should be kept **independent.**
 - **Elections** shall be **organised and conducted by the state's chief electoral officer** in consultation with the chief election commissioner.

- **Development tasks** should be assigned to the **zila parishad**, and all development workers should be supervised and controlled by it.
- **Volunteer organisations** should be crucial in **mobilising public support** for Panchayati raj.
- A **Panchayati raj minister should be nominated** to the state CoM to oversee the institutions of Panchayati raj.
- **Seats for SCs and STs** shall be allocated **according to population**.
- The Panchayati Raj institutions **should be given constitutional status**.
 - Confer them necessary status (sanctity and stature) and the **security of continued operation**.

L M Singhvi Committee

- **Appointed:** In 1986,
- **Objective:** To prepare a concept paper on 'Revitalisation of Panchayati Raj Institutions for Democracy and Development
- **Chairman:** L.M. Singhvi
- **Recommendations**
 - The Panchayati Raj institutions should be **recognised, maintained, and protected by the Constitution**.
 - **A new chapter in Constitution:** To properly and substantially protect their identity and integrity - also proposed constitutional provisions to guarantee that **elections to Panchayati Raj bodies are held on a regular, free, and fair basis**.
 - **Nyaya Panchayats:** To be constituted for a group of villages.
 - **Reorganize the villages to make Gram Panchayats more viable.**
 - **Gram Sabha-** "living embodiment of direct democracy."
 - **Financial resources for Village Panchayats** should be increased.
 - **Judicial tribunals:** To be created to **resolve disputes over election to Panchayati Raj institutions**, dissolution, and other issues about their operation.

Gadgil Committee

- **Appointed:** 1988
- **Chairman:** V.N. Gadgil.
- **Objective:** To consider the question of "**how best Panchayati Raj institutions could be made effective**"
- **Recommendations**
 - **Constitutional Status** should be bestowed to **Panchayati Raj institutions**
 - Establishment of **State Election commission**

- Establishment of **state Finance Commission**
- **Term** of the Panchayati Raj institution should be fixed at **5 years**
- **Members at all three levels** should be **elected directly**
- **Reservations** of seats for **SC/STs**.

73rd Constitutional Amendment Act 1992

- **Added:**
 - A new **Part-IX** to the Constitution of India.
 - **Entitled as 'The Panchayats'** and consists of provisions from **Articles 243 to 243(O)**.
- **XI Schedule** to the Constitution.
 - Contains **29 functional items** of the panchayats (**Article 243-G**).
- **Gave essence to Article 40**
- **Confers Constitutional status to Panchayati raj institutions.**

Features of the 73rd Amendment Act

Gram Sabha

- Establishes a **Gram Sabha - foundation of Panchayati Raj**.
- A **body made up of people enrolled in the electoral rolls of a village** inside the Panchayat region.
 - **Gram Sabha** composed of **all the registered voters in a panchayat's region**.
- May have the **same powers and perform the same tasks** at the village level as the state legislature.

Three Tier System

- Establishes a **3-tier structure** of Panchayati raj, with **panchayats at the village, intermediate, and district levels**.
- **Gives uniformity to the Panchayati raj framework** across the country.
- A state with a **population of < 20 lakh people, may not establish intermediate panchayats**.

Finances of Panchayats

- **Sources of Funds**
 - **Article 280:** Grants from the Union Government based on recommendations of the Central Finance Commission.
 - **Article 243(I):** Devolution from the State Government based on recommendations of the State Finance Commission.
 - **Loans / grants from the State Government.**
 - **Programme-specific allocation** under Centrally Sponsored Schemes and Additional Central Assistance.
 - **Internal Resource Generation** (tax and non-tax).

53 CHAPTER

Municipalities

- Introduced by 74th Amendment Act 1992
- **Urban Local Government:** The people's government of an urban region through their elected representatives.
- **Jurisdiction:** Certain urban regions delineated for this purpose by the state government.
- **Articles:** 243(P)-243(ZG) in Part IXA of the constitution of India
- Some of the important Articles Related to Urban Local Government

Articles	Provisions
243 (P)	Definitions.
243 (Q)	Constitution of Municipalities.
243 (R)	Composition of Municipalities.
243 (U)	Duration of Municipalities, etc.
243 (Y)	Finance Commission.
243 (ZA)	Elections to the Municipalities.
243 (ZG)	Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters.

- **1st municipal corporation- Madras in 1688.**
- Also established in **Bombay and Calcutta in 1726.**
- **Visualised in Lord Mayo's Resolution** on financial decentralisation from **1870.**
- **1882 Resolution of Lord Ripon** has been dubbed the "Magna Carta" of municipal self-government.
 - Ripon k/a "Father of Local Self-Government" In India.
- **1907 - Royal Commission on Decentralization was established,** and its report was delivered in 1909. Its chairman was **Hobhouse.**
- **A transferred topic under dyarchical arrangement** implemented in Provinces by the **Government of India Act of 1919.**
- **Recognised as a provincial subject** under the **Government of India Act of 1935's** provincial autonomy scheme.

74th Amendment Act 1992

- **Added a new Part IX-A** to the Constitution of India Entitled as 'The Municipalities'.
 - **Articles 243 (P) to 243 (ZG) in 12th Schedule** to the Constitution,
 - Contains **18 functional items** of municipalities.
- **Constitutional Status** to Municipalities.
- **Aim: To revitalise and strengthen urban governments** so that they can function successfully as local government institutions.

Salient Features

Types of Municipalities

- A **municipal corporation** for a **larger urban area**
- A **municipal council** for a **smaller urban area.**
- A **nagar panchayat** (by whatever name called) for a **transitional area**

Governor has to categorize the areas keeping in view the following factors:

- **Population** of the area.
- **Density of the population** therein.
- **Revenue generated** for local administration.
- **Percentage of employment** in non-agricultural activities.
- **Economic importance.**
- Such other factors as he may deem fit.

Composition

- **Ward:** Division of Each Municipal Region into territorial Constituencies for the sake of Election.
- **Election:** All members of a municipality must be **directly elected** by the residents of the municipality.
- **Election of Chairman of Municipality:** Determined by the state legislature.

Individuals represented in a municipality.

- Persons with **unique expertise or experience in municipal administration without the right to vote** at municipal meetings.
- **Members** of the Lok Sabha and state legislators **who represent constituencies** that are **entirely or partially within the municipal area.**
- **Members** of the Rajya Sabha and the state legislative council **enrolled as voters within the municipal area.**
- The **committee chairpersons** (other than wards committees).

Reservations

- **Seats reserved in every municipality for scheduled castes and scheduled tribes** in ratio of their population of the municipality.
- **At least 1/3rd** of the total number of **seats** be designated for **women** (including the number of seats allotted for women from the SCs and STs).
- State legislature may **establish a method for reserving offices of chairpersons** in municipalities for SCs, STs, and women.

- May also create any provision for the reservation of seats or office of chairpersons in municipalities for members of the backward classes.
- After the term mentioned in Article 334 expires, the reservation of seats as well as the reservation of offices of chairperson in municipalities for scheduled castes and scheduled tribes will cease to have effect.

Duration of municipalities

- **Term: 5 years** of office for every municipality.
 - Can be dissolved before the completion of its term.

Finances

The state legislature may take action.

- To provide a municipality the authority to charge, collect, and appropriate taxes, duties, tolls, and fees;
- Assign to a municipality taxes, duties, tolls and fees levied and collected by state government;
- To make grants-in-aid to municipalities from the state's consolidated fund
- Provision for the creation of funds to credit all municipal funds.

Accounts Auditing

- The state legislature may set measures for the keeping of municipal accounts and the auditing of such accounts.

Areas Exempted

- Does not apply to the state's scheduled regions and tribal areas.
- No bearing on the West Bengal Darjeeling Gorkha Hill Council's functions and powers.
- Parliament may extend the requirements of this part to scheduled areas and tribal territories, with such exclusions and adjustments as it sees fit.

Municipal Revenues

Tax Revenue

- Property tax, entertainment tax, advertisement tax, professional tax, water tax, animal tax, lighting tax, pilgrim tax, market tax, toll on new bridges, octroi, and other local taxes generate money.
- Different cesses are imposed by municipal organisations, such as library cesses, education cesses, beggary cesses, and so on.
- In most states, octroi (taxes on the entry of commodities into a local region for consumption, use, or sale) has been abolished.
- Most important revenue source - property tax.

Non Tax Revenue

- Eg. Rent on municipal properties, fees and fines, royalties, earnings and dividends, interest, user charges, and miscellaneous income.
- User charges on Water, sanitation, and sewerage costs (i.e., payments for public goods).

Grants

- Subsidies from the federal and state governments to local governments for a variety of development programmes, infrastructure plans, and urban reform efforts.

Devolution

- Transfer of finances from the state government to urban local Bodies.
- State finance commission's suggestions are used to make this devolution.

Loans

- To fund their capital expenditures, urban local governments get loans from the state government as well as financial organisations.
- Can only borrow from financial institutions or other entities with the state government's permission.

54 CHAPTER

Supreme Court

- Highest judicial & Constitutional court in India
- Final court of appeal under the Constitution of India
- Guarantor of the fundamental rights of the citizens and guardian of the Constitution

Articles	Provisions
124	Establishment and constitution of the SC.
124 A	National Judicial Appointments Commission
125	Salaries, etc., of Judges.
129	SC is to be a court of record.
131-135	Jurisdictions of SC
139	Conferment on the SC of powers to issue certain writs.
140	Ancillary powers of the SC.
143	Power of the President to consult the SC.
144	Civil and judicial authorities act in aid of the SC.
145	Rules of Court
146	Officers and servants and the expenses of the SC.

Composition

- Originally: 1 Chief Justice + 7 other Judges
- SC (Number of Judges) Amendment Act 2019: 34, including the Chief Justice of India.

Appointment

- By The President
- CJI- appointed by the President after consultation with such judges of the SC and HC as he considers necessary.
- Other Judges: By the President, after consulting with CJI and as many additional SC and HC justices as he considers necessary.
- Second Judges Case (1993) - SC ruled that the senior-most judge of the SC should be appointed to the office of the CJI

Qualification

- A citizen of India
- Been a judge of a HC (or HCs in succession) for five years or
- Been an advocate of a HC (or HCs in succession) for ten years, or
- A distinguished jurist in the opinion of the president.
- No minimum age has been prescribed by the Constitution for the appointment of judges

Tenure of Judges

- No fixed tenure of a judge of the SC
- Holds office until he attains the age of 65 years

Removal of Judges

- Resignation to the President
- Can be removed by Parliament on the grounds of proved misbehaviour or incapacity (Such order can be presented only in the same session of the Parliament.

Jurisdiction and Powers of SC

1. Original Jurisdiction
 - Exclusive.
 - To decide upon disputes between the
 - Centre and one or more states, or
 - The Centre and any state or states on one side and one or more states on the other; or
 - Between two or more states.
2. Writ Jurisdiction
 - Under Article 32, the SC is empowered with original jurisdiction to issue writs.
 - Not exclusive: The HCs has under Article 226
3. Appellate Jurisdiction
 - Final court of appeal and it hears appeals against the judgements of the lower courts
4. Advisory Jurisdiction
 - President can seek SC's advice under Article 143 on
 - Any question of law or fact of public importance which has arisen or will arise, or
 - Any dispute arising out of any pre-constitution treaty, agreement, covenant, engagement
 - Opinion of SC is only advisory and not binding on the president.

Powers of Court

1. Court of record
 - Article 129- All the judgements, proceedings and acts of the SC are recognized as legal precedents and legal references and cannot be questioned when produced before any court
2. Power of Judicial Review
3. Other powers
 - Original and exclusive power to decide upon disputes regarding the election of the President and the Vice-President
 - Enquire into the conduct and behaviour of the chairman and members of the UPSC
 - Power to review its own judgement or order
 - Power to withdraw the cases pending before the HCs and dispose them by itself
 - Its decree or order is enforceable throughout the country
 - Power of judicial superintendence and control over all the courts and tribunals functioning in the entire territory

55 CHAPTER

High Court

Articles	Provision
214	HCs for States.
215	HCs to be courts of record
216	Constitution of HCs
217	Appointment and conditions of the office of a Judge of a HC.
221	Salaries, etc., of Judges
225	Jurisdiction of existing HCs.
226	Power of HCs to issue certain writs

- **Highest judicial court in a state**
- **Second-highest judicial court in the country** after the SC.
- **7th Amendment Act, 1956:** Authorised the Parliament to establish a common HC for two or more States or for two or more states and a UT.
- **Parliament** has the power to extend the jurisdiction of an HC to any UT or exclude the jurisdiction of an HC from any UT

Common HCs for two or more states

- **Bombay HC:** Maharashtra, Goa, Dadra and Nagar Haveli, Daman and Diu
 - **Guwahati HC:** Assam, Nagaland, Mizoram and Arunachal Pradesh
 - **Punjab and Haryana HC:** Punjab, Haryana, Chandigarh
 - **Calcutta HC:** West Bengal, Andaman and Nicobar Islands
 - **Tamil Nadu HC:** Tamil Nadu, Puducherry
 - **Kerala HC:** Kerala, Lakshadweep
- **Article 216:** Chief Justice + other judges determined by the President.
 - **Strength - discretion of the President**
 - **Chief justice of HC:** Appointed by the President after consultation with the CJI and the Governor of the state concerned.
 - **Other judges of HC:** Appointed by the President in consultation with CJI, Governor of the concerned state and Chief Justice of the concerned HC.

Qualification of judges

- **A citizen of India**
- **Held a judicial office** in the territory of India for ten years
- Should have been an **advocate of a HC for ten years**
- **No minimum age** has been prescribed by the Constitution for appointment as a judge of an HC

Transfer of judges

- **Article 222 (1):** A HC judge can be transferred to another HC only by the President after consultations with the CJI

Tenure of judges

- **No fixed tenure** has been provided by the Constitution.
- Until the age of **62 years**
- **Resignation** to the President.

Removal of judges

- **By the President** on the recommendation of the Parliament and in the same manner and on the same grounds as a judge of the SC.

Jurisdiction of HC

1. **Original Jurisdiction**
 - Hear disputes in the first instance
2. **Writ Jurisdiction**
 - **Article 226:** HC has the power to issue writs for the enforcement of the FR and "for any other purpose"
 - **Not exclusive but concurrent** with the writ jurisdiction of the SC (Art.32).
3. **Appellate jurisdiction**
 - **Hears appeals in both civil and criminal matters** against the judgements of subordinate courts functioning within its territorial jurisdiction
4. **Supervisory Jurisdiction**
 - **Superintendence over all courts and tribunals** functioning in its territorial jurisdiction (except military courts or tribunals).

Powers

1. **Court of Record (Article 215)**
 - All the judgments, proceedings and acts of HC are recorded for perpetual memory.
2. **Judicial Review**
 - Power to examine the constitutionality of legislative and executive actions of both the Central and state governments
 - **Can be declared as illegal**, unconstitutional and invalid (null and void) by the HC.
 - If found to be violative of the Constitution (ultra-vires)

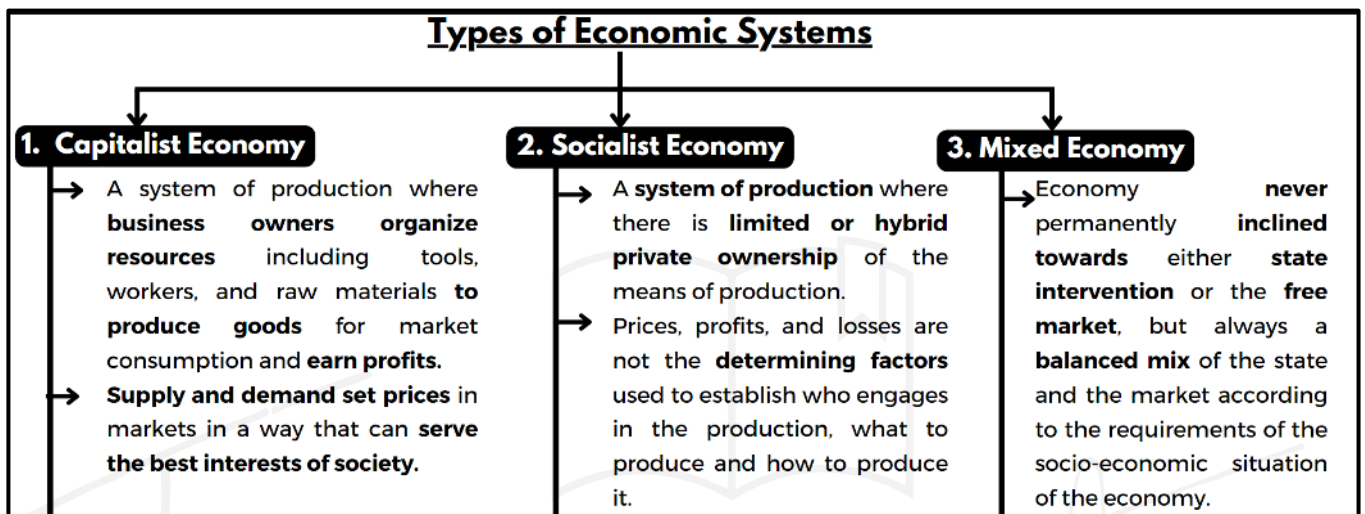
56 CHAPTER

Economic System and National Income

Economic Systems

- Set of **institutional arrangements** and coordinating mechanism **to allocate resources and distributes goods** and services across the whole nation
- Economic systems **regulate** the **factors of production**, including land, capital, labour, and physical resources.

- An economic system **encompasses** many institutions, agencies, entities, decision-making processes, and patterns of consumption that comprise the economic structure of a given community.

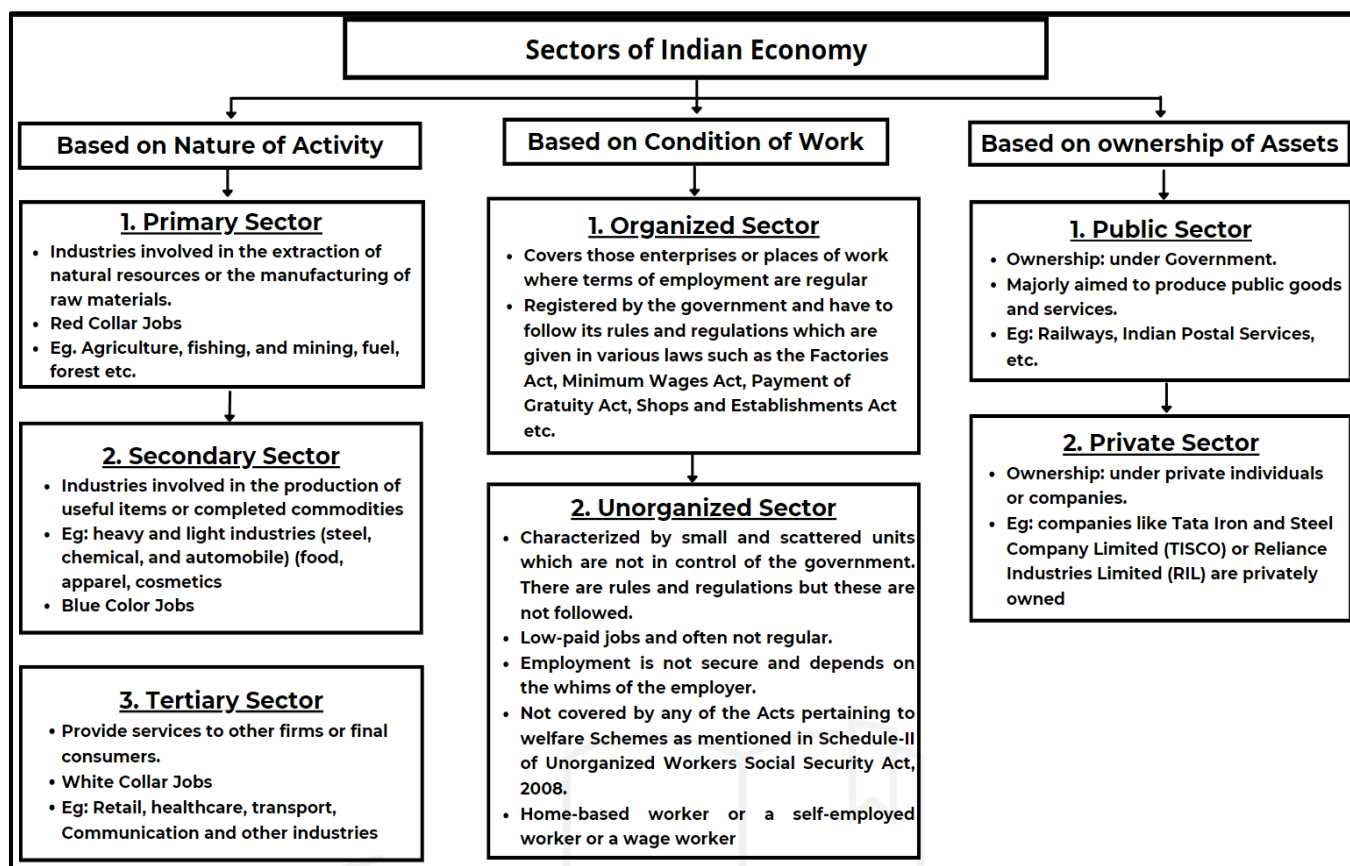


Difference b/w Capitalist, Socialist and Mixed Economies

Parameters	Capitalist economy	Socialist economy	Mixed economy
Ownership	Private	Public & limited private	Both public and private
Price Determination	The market forces	By the central planning authority.	By central planning authority, and market forces.
Motive Of Production	Profit making	Social welfare	Profit making in the private sector and welfare in the public sector
Role Of Government	Limited role	Under complete control	Full role in public and limited in private sector
Competition	Exists	Less competition	Only in the private sector
Income Distribution	Unequal	Quite equal	Considerable inequalities exist
Cons	Monopoly and Exploitation	Abuse by bureaucrats Corruption Decay of System	Unnecessary Control Inefficient Publics sector (Lethargic)

Note: Communism Differ from socialism as in communism even if a person doesn't work basic pay is given and no private ownership is allowed in reality, hardly any communist economy exists in the world.

Sectors of Economy



- **Quaternary Sector:** High-skilled Tertiary Sector. E.g Banking, IT, Education etc. Pure White Collar.
- **Quinary Sector:** Very High skilled Gold Collar Sector, e.g. India is Tertiary Sector Economy.
- According to **Rostow**, An economy grows in a **linear pattern** i.e. Primary---> secondary----> tertiary
- **INDIA & ASEAN** countries were **exceptions**, as they **jumped directly** from the primary to **tertiary/service sector**.
- A **country's economy is defined by sector** when any **sector contributes >50%** in the economy. e.g., India is a tertiary sector economy.

National Income

- **National income:** The total value of final goods and services produced by the normal residents during an accounting year, after adjusting depreciation.

- It is Net National Product (NNP) at Factor Cost (FC)
 - It does **not include taxes, depreciation**, and non-factor inputs (raw materials)
 - It Includes: **Wages, interest, rent, and profit received** by components of products such as **Labour, capital, land, and entrepreneurship**
 - **Domestic Income:** Total value of final goods and services produced within a domestic territory during an accounting year, after adjusting depreciation.
 - It is Net Domestic Product at Factor Cost.
 - **Both NNP and NDP can be measured at constant prices** (real income) or **market prices** (nominal income)
- National income: Domestic Income + NFIA**

NET NATIONAL INCOME (NNI)

- Defined as gross national income minus the depreciation of fixed capital assets (dwellings, buildings, machinery, transport equipment and physical infrastructure) through wear and tear and obsolescence.

Terms Related to income Calculation

Transfer Payments

- A monetary payment for which no goods or services are exchanged.
- Efforts by local, state, and federal governments to redistribute money to individuals in need are usually referred to as transfer payments.

Market Price

- Price at which a thing is sold in the market.
- Covers wages, rent, interest, input prices, profit, & other costs of production.
- Also covers government-imposed taxes & government-provided producer subsidies.

Factor Cost

- Total cost of all the factors of production consumed or used in producing a good or service.

Depreciation

- The wear and tear of capital assets
- Capital consumption allowance - another term for depreciation.

Constant price

- Constant prices refer to the prices prevailing in the base year. A base year is a carefully chosen year which is a normal year free from price fluctuations.

Basic Price

- Amount a producer receives from a purchaser for a unit of a good or service provided as output, minus any tax due and any subsidy due on that unit as a result of its production or sale.

Aspects of National Income

1. Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

- Total value of **final goods and services produced in a country**.
- Estimated **at regular periods** (such as quarterly or yearly).
 - For India it is from **1st April to 31st March**.
- **Production area for calculation of GDP** includes
 - A country's geographical borders, including its **Exclusive Economic Zones (EEZ)** (up to 200 nautical miles or 360 km)
 - A **country's embassy** in different nations
 - **Production of moving vehicles** like ships, aircraft, etc.

- **Goods included:** all final goods and services produced by the usual residents and non-residents in the domestic territory of the country
 - Does **not include Net Factor Income from Abroad (NFIA)**
- **Calculated by Central Statistics Organization, Ministry of Statistics and Program.**
- **'Quantitative concept'** and indicates internal strength of the economy.
- **Used by the IMF & World Bank** in comparative analyses of member economies.

$$\text{GDP} = \text{Consumption} + \text{investment} + \text{government spending} + \text{exports} - \text{imports}$$

Types of GDP

Nominal GDP

- Total financial business value **produced inside the country**.
- **Without Inflation** adjusted.
- At **Current year prices**.
- **High Worth**
- Compares quarters of a year.
- Does **not truly indicate the real performance** of the economy

$$\text{Nominal GDP} = \text{Current Year Production} \times \text{Current Year Price}$$

GDP Purchasing Power Parity (PPP)

- While purchasing power parity (PPP) is **not a direct measure** of GDP, economists use it to see how one country's **GDP compares** to other countries' GDP in "international dollars" **using a method** that **adjusts for differences in local prices** and costs of living to make **cross-country comparisons** of real output, real income, and living standards.

Real GDP

- GDP metric adjusted: With changes in the general price level.
- **Inflation-adjusted**
- At **regular prices**
- **Low Worth**
- Compares two or more FYs
- Only **change in real production** of goods and services is **captured**.

$$\text{Real GDP} = \text{Current Year Production} \times \text{Base Year Price}$$

GDP Per Capita

- The GDP per capita is a **measure of the GDP per person** in a country's population.
- It means that the **quantity of output** or revenue per person **in a given economy** may be used to **estimate average productivity** or living standards.

Various Aspects of GDP Calculations

GDP Deflator

- Ratio of Nominal GDP to Real GDP
- Gives an idea of how the prices have moved from the base year to the current year.

GDP Growth Rate

- Measures how fast the economy is growing.
- Measures the change in GDP in two consecutive years or quarters.

GDP at Market Price (GDPMP)

- Market price includes net indirect taxes along with the factor cost. (Net indirect tax is the difference b/w total indirect tax and subsidies)

GDP at Factor Cost (GDPFC)

- Factor cost is the cost of producing a commodity. It includes the cost of land, labour, capital and the profits of the producer.

Gross Value Added (GVA)

- **Economic productivity metric** that measures the contribution of a corporate subsidiary, company, or municipality to an economy, producer, sector, or region.
- **Used to adjust GDP** and measure how much money a product or service has contributed toward meeting a company's fixed costs.

$$\text{GVA} = \text{GDP} + \text{Subsidies} - \text{Taxes}$$

or

$$\text{GDP} = \text{GVA} + (\text{Tax} - \text{Subsidies})$$

2. Net Domestic Product (NDP)

- **Net worth** of all goods and services **generated inside a country's geographic borders**.
- **Value of depreciation** of national capital assets such as **machinery, houses, and cars** are **subtracted** from the GDP to calculate NDP
- **Other considerations:** such as **asset obsolescence and destruction**, are also considered by the NDP.

Net Domestic Product (NDP) = Gross Domestic Product (GDP) – Depreciation.

- **NDP Will always be lower than GDP.**
- **NDP is not used across the world** due to different rates of depreciation

3. Gross National Product (GNP)

- **Total value of all goods and services** produced by citizens and enterprises in a country, regardless of **where they are produced**
- It is the **GDP of a country added to its income from abroad**.
- **'Income from Abroad' includes:**
 - **Trade Balance:** net outcome at year-end of the total exports and imports of a country
 - **Interest on External Loans:** balance of **interest on the money lent by the country and the interest on the money it has borrowed** from other countries.

GNP (Y) = Consumption expenditure (c) + Investment (I) + Government expenditure (G) + Net exports (X) + Net income from Abroad (Z).

$$\bullet \quad Y = C + I + G + X + Z$$

$$\text{GNP} = \text{GDP} \pm \text{NFIA}$$

- **India** has always been a **'net borrower'** from the world economies.

- **Private Remittances:** an account of the **'private transfers' by Indians working abroad** (to India) and **foreign nationals working in India** (to their home countries).
- **Factors to GNP:** **Manufacturing** of items such as **equipment, machinery, agricultural products, and cars** & some services such as **consulting education, and health care**.
- **The cost of delivering services is not calculated.**
- **When a citizen holds dual citizenship:** **GNP per capita** is utilized to calculate GNP on a **country-by-country basis**.
- In that situation, their **earnings are counted twice**, as each country's GNP.

4. Net National Product (NNP) (National income)

- **Value generated by removing depreciation** from the gross national product.
- **Determines how much a country can consume** in a specific period.
- When a country's net national product (**NNP**) **dips or falls**,
 - **Businesses contemplate shifting to industries** that are **considered recession-proof**.
- It is the **Purest Income of an Economy**

Per Capita Income = NNP/Population

- India Calculates National Income at Market Cost Since 2015. (NNP_{ML} or NI_{MC})

$$NNP = GNP - \text{Depreciation}$$

or

$$NNP = GDP + \text{Income from Abroad} - \text{Depreciation}$$

- Market Cost = Factory Cost + Indirect tax (Centre + State)
- In India rate of Depreciation is decided by the Ministry of Commerce and industry.

Types of Income	Description
Personal Income	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Amount of money earned collectively by the citizens of a country. Ex.: Money obtained from employment, dividends and distributions paid by investments, rents derived from property ownership, and profit sharing from enterprises. Taxation is imposed on personal income in most cases. $PI = \text{National Income} - \text{Undistributed Profits} - \text{Net interest paid by households} - \text{Corporate tax} + \text{Transfer payments to the households from the government and firms}$
Personal Disposable Income	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Income available to the households that they can spend as they wish Income available after payment of taxes and other non-tax payments $PDI = PI - \text{Personal tax payments} - \text{non-tax payments}$
National Disposable Income	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sum of the gross (or net) disposable incomes of the institutional sectors. $\text{Gross (or net) NDI} = \text{gross (or net) national income (at market prices)} - \text{current transfers payable to non-resident units.}$



Toppernotes
 Unleash the topper in you

57 CHAPTER

Five Year Plans in India

1st Plan (1951-56)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Model: The Harrod-Domar Model. ● 1952: Community Development Program launched. ● Target area: Agriculture, price stability, power and transport ● Result: A successful plan primarily due to good harvests in the last two years of the plan
2nd Plan (1956 - 61) Target Growth: 4.5% Actual Growth:4.27%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Model: Mahalanobis Plan. ● Target: Rapid industrialization <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Advocated huge imports through foreign loans. ○ Shifted basic emphasis from agriculture to industry far too soon. ● Result: Prices increased by 30%, against a decline of 13% during the First Plan.
3rd Plan (1961 - 66) Target Growth:5.6% Actual Growth:2.84%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Background : Indian economy projected to have entered a take-off stage. ● Aim: To make India a 'self-reliant' and 'self-generating' economy. ● Focus: Agriculture was given top priority to support exports and industry from the experiences of the first two plans. ● Result: Failed completely to meet the targets due to unforeseen events: Chinese aggression (1962), Indo-Pak war (1965), severe drought 1965-66.
3 Annual Plans (1966-69)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Background: Prevailing agricultural crisis and a severe food deficit prompted a focus on agriculture during the Annual Plans. ● Adopted New agricultural strategy: Entailed widespread distribution of high-yielding seed types, intensive fertilizer usage, irrigation potential exploitation, and soil conservation. ● Result: The economy was able to absorb the shocks caused by the Third Plan during the Annual Plans. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ It prepared the way for the anticipated expansion.
4th Plan (1969 - 74) Target Growth: 5.7% Actual Growth:3.30%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Focus: Growth rate of agriculture to enable other sectors to move forward. ● Result <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 1st two years: Saw record production. ○ last three years: Not measured due to poor monsoon. ● Influx of Bangladeshi refugees before and after 1971 Indo-Pak war was an important issue.
5th Plan (1974-79) Target Growth: 4.4% Actual Growth: 3.8%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● D.D. Dhar: Prepared and launched the plan. ● Objectives: 'Removal of Poverty' (Garibi Hatao) and 'attainment of self reliance'. ● Focus Area: Promotion of a high rate of growth, better distribution of income and significant growth in the domestic rate of savings. ● Result: The plan was terminated in 1978 (instead of 1979) when Janta Party Govt. rose to power.
Rolling plan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● There were two Sixth Plans. ● 1st plan: By Janata government for 1978-1983. ● Plan was cancelled: since The government barely lasted two years. ● 1980: The Congress regained power and implemented a new plan.
6th Plan (1980 - 85) Target Growth: 5.2% Actual Growth:5.66%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Launched with the slogan of 'Garibi Hatao' (alleviate poverty). ● Focus: Increase in national income, modernization of technology, ensuring continuous decrease in poverty and unemployment, population control through family planning, etc. ● Priority areas: Socio-economic infrastructure in the rural areas; eliminating rural poverty and regional disparities (through the IRDP); commencing 'target group' approach. ● Target group approach: launching a number of national level programmes and schemes aimed at specific concerns and areas of development.
7th Plan (1985 - 90) Target Growth: 5.0% Actual Growth:6.01%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Focus: Increased growth in food-grains production, increased employment opportunities and productivity within the framework of basic features of planning. ● Result: The plan was very successful, the economy recorded 6% growth rate against the targeted 5%.

<p>8th Plan (1992–97) Target Growth: 5.6%. Actual Growth:6.8%</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Postponed plan: For two years due to political uncertainty at the Centre. ● Background: Worsening Balance of Payment position and inflation during 1990-91. ● Measure taken: To combat the bad economic situation and to undertake an annual average growth of 5.6% ● Result: Rapid economic growth, high growth of agriculture and allied sector, manufacturing sector, growth in exports and imports, improvement in trade and current account deficit.
<p>9th Plan (1997- 2002) Target Growth: 6.5% Actual Growth:5.35%</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Background: A ‘slowdown’ in the economy led by the South East Asian Financial Crisis (1996–97). ● Focus: Ambitious high growth rate (7%) and time-bound ‘social’ objectives and basic minimum services (Water, Health, education etc.). ● Important dimensions: Quality of life, Productive employment generation, regional balance and self-reliance.
<p>10th Plan (2002 - 2007) Target Growth:8.0% Actual Growth:7.6%</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Priority Areas: Greater participation of the Nationally Determined Contributions (NDC) ● Objective: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Achieve 8% GDP growth rate. ○ Over the tenth plan term, providing gainful, high-quality employment to the increase to the labour force. ○ Reduce poverty ratio by 5% points by 2007. ○ Universal access to primary education by 2007. ○ Reduce gender gaps in literacy and wage rates by at least 50% by 2007. ○ Reduce the decadal rate of population growth to 16.2% b/w 2001 and 2011 . ○ Increase literacy rate to 72% within the plan period and to 80% by 2012. ○ Reduce IMR to 45 per 1000 live births by 2007 and to 28 by 2012. ○ Increase forest and tree cover to 25% by 2007 and 33% by 2012. ○ Sustained access to potable drinking water by 2012 to all the villages. ○ Cleaning of all major polluted rivers by 2007 and other notified stretches by 2012.
<p>11th Plan (2007-12) Target Growth: 9% Actual Growth: 8%</p>	<p>Objectives</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Increase the enrolment in higher education of 18–23 years of age group by 2011–12. ○ Focus on distant education ○ Rapid and inclusive growth (poverty reduction). ○ Emphasis on the social sector and delivery of service therein. ○ Empowerment via education and skill development. ○ Reduction of gender inequality. ○ Environmental sustainability. ○ To increase the growth rate in agriculture, industry and services to 4%, 10% and 9% respectively. ○ Reduce total fertility rate to 2.1. ○ Provide clean drinking water for all by 2009. ○ Increase agriculture growth to 4%.
<p>12th Plan (2012-17) Target Growth: 8%</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Focus: Growth which is Faster, Inclusive and Sustainable ● The ‘Draft Approach Paper’ of the Twelfth Plan (2012–17) was prepared by the Planning Commission after widest consultation ● Objectives: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Growth rate of 9% was targeted for the Plan ○ faster, sustainable and more inclusive growth ○ Raising agriculture output to 4% ○ Manufacturing sector growth to 10 % ○ The target of adding over 88,000 MW of power generation capacity. ○ fiscal correction and focus on areas like health, education and infrastructure ○ emphasized the need for focusing more on efficient use of available resources in view of the resource constraints.

58 CHAPTER

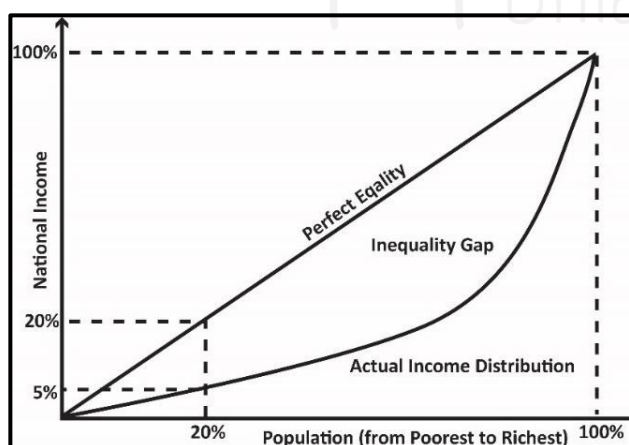
Poverty

- Poverty: a profound lack of well-being that has various dimensions.

Types of Poverty

Absolute Poverty	Relative Poverty
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The overall number of people who live in poverty. • The concept is applicable to developing countries, but not applicable to developed countries. • The poverty line is used to assess absolute poverty in India. • In India, 29.8% of the population lives in absolute poverty. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poverty of people relative to other people, regions or nations. • When we say India is relatively poor, then it's in comparison with other countries(comparison of per capita income of different countries). • In India : relative poverty is calculated with the help of Lorenz Curve and Gini Coefficient. • India: one of the poorest countries as per capita income is less than 2 dollar per day.

Lorenz Curve and Gini Coefficient



- Depicts the **distribution of income** in an economy.
- **Gini Coefficient**: measures the degree of income inequality.
- The equitable (fair) income distribution is one of a government's five major and common macroeconomic aims.

Poverty Estimation in India

Poverty Line

- **Niti Aayog** : Estimates poverty using NSSO data.
- Every 5 years - NSSO conducts surveys to collect household consumption expenditure.
- **Monthly per capita consumption** expenditure is used.
- Poverty line estimates vary **depending on the methodologies** developed by various expert panels.
- **The Ministry of Rural Development** conducts **BPL census**.

Different committees for estimation of poverty

VM Dandekar and N Rath	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In 1971: 1st systematic estimate of poverty in India, • Data used: The National Sample Survey (NSS) from 1960 to 1961. • In both rural and urban settings - Poverty line to be determined by spending enough to provide 2250 calories per day. • This sparked a discussion about minimal calorie consumption norms for determining poverty & differences in these norms (based on age and gender).
Lakdawala Committee (1993)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The poverty line estimation using per capita consumption spending to determine who was poor. • Consumption expenditure to be computed using the same calorie intake as before. • The CPI-IW in urban areas and the CPI-AL in rural areas are used to create and update state-specific poverty lines, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Poverty estimates based on National Accounts Statistics to be discontinued.
Tendulkar Committee (2009)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2004-05: Poverty limits at Rs 33 per day in Purchasing Power Parity (PPP) terms. • Shift from Calorie-Based Poverty Estimation

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Uniform poverty line basket to calculate new poverty lines for rural and urban areas of each state, ● Observation: all-India poverty line(2004-05) in ● Rural areas - Rs. 446.68 per capita every month. ● Urban areas - the monthly cost per capita is Rs. 578.80. ● Private expenditure on health and education is considered while calculating Poverty. ● Price Adjustment Procedure: A new method for updating poverty lines that accounts for changes in prices and consumption patterns (to address spatial and temporal issues with price adjustment) and uses the consumption basket of people living near the poverty line. ● Advised utilising estimates : based on the Mixed Reference Period(rather than the Uniform Reference Period), used in previous techniques for assessing poverty.
--	---

Rangarajan Committee

Established: In the backdrop of public resentment over the Planning Commission's proposed poverty limit for rural areas of Rs. 22 per day.

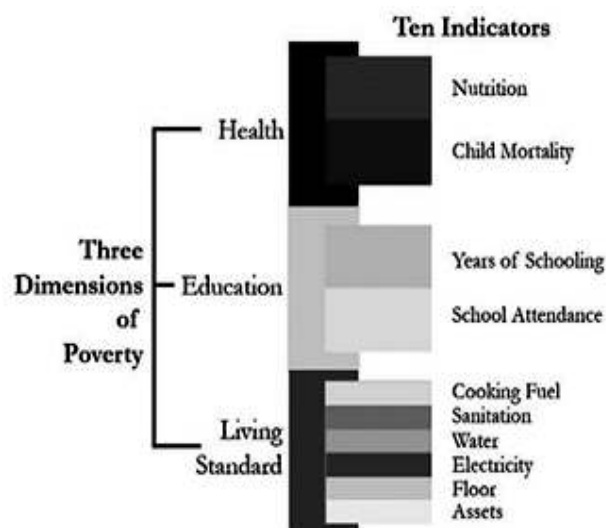
Nutritional Requirement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Calories: 2090 kcal in urban and 2155 kcal in the rural areas. ● Protein: 48 gm in rural areas, 50 gm in urban areas. ● Fat: 28 gm in urban areas, 26 gm in rural ones..
Poverty Threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● People: spends less than Rs. 47 a day in cities and Rs.32 in villages are considered poor. ● Number of poor - 19% greater in rural regions and 41% higher in urban areas than the Tendulkar committee calculation predicted.

Poverty Alleviation Program in India

Integrated Rural Development Programme (IRDP)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Introduced: 1978-79 and became universal in October,1980. ● Objective: To provide help to rural poor as a subsidy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bank credit for productive work possibilities.
Rural Housing - Indira Awaas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Objective: To provide free housing to below-poverty-line

Yojana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● (BPL) families in rural areas, ● Primary targets: SC/ST households
Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (MGNREGA) 2005	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Every rural household receives 100 days of guaranteed employment each year. ● Women : eligible for one-third of the proposed jobs. ● National Employment Guarantee Funds established by the Central government. ● State governments established State Employment Guarantee Funds to carry out the scheme. ● If an applicant is not hired within 15 days, he or she will be eligible for a daily unemployment stipend under the programme.
National Rural Livelihood Mission : Aajeevika (2011)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ministry of Rural Development ● 2015: Name changed to Deen Dayal Antyodaya Yojana – National Livelihoods Mission (DAY-NRLM) ● Objective: create effective and efficient institutional platforms to enable the rural poor to increase their household income through sustainable livelihood enhancements and better access to financial services. ● To assist the poor, self-help groups are organised at the village level.
Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Aim: To distribute subsidy, pension, and insurance benefits directly to beneficiaries. ● Met its goal of opening 1.5 million bank accounts. ● Aimed mostly at the unbanked poor.

Multidimensional Poverty Index



-
- **Identifies : deprivations in health, education, and standard of living** at the household and individual level.
 - **Microdata from household surveys** is used.
 - Nodal Agency : **NITI Aayog**.
 - **Oxford Poverty and Human Development Initiative (OPHI) and the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)** : established the Global MPI in 2010, covers 107 developing nations (UNDP).

- According to the NFHS 4 (2011) data : India ranks **66th out of 109 nations**,
 - **MPI score of 0.123.**
 - **27.91% headcount ratio.**
 - b/w 2005-06 and 2015-16, India brought 270 million people out of multidimensional poverty.
- Sri Lanka is ranked 25th, Bhutan is 68th, Nepal is 65th, Bangladesh is 58th, **China is 30th**, Myanmar is 69th, and **Pakistan is 69th.**



Toppernotes
Unleash the topper in you

59 CHAPTER

Awards and Honours



The history of conferring titles and awards dates back to ancient and medieval times when the kings and monarchs conferred awards to recognise contribution in the fields of Art, Science and Literature. For Example 'Navaratna' in Vikramaditya's court - Varahamihira and Kalidasa, 'Navratna' in Akbar's Court - Tansen, Birbal etc. The Nobel Prize, Academy awards (Oscars) etc. are the other awards at the global level awarded in present times.

After independence, Article 18 of the Indian Constitution abolished 'Titles', thereby prohibiting the State to confer any titles with the exceptions of - 'military or academic'. Even before the Constitution was formally drafted, Awards and Honours had been adopted. Under the Chairmanship of B.N. Rau, the Prime Minister's Committee on Honors and Awards was set up on February 13th, 1948. The objective of the committee was to recommend the number and nature of civil and military awards; the machinery for making proposals for giving these honors; the recurrence of giving these honors. In January 1954, the National Awards were formally instituted by two President Notifications.

Bharat Ratna

- **Highest civilian award** given by the Republic of India.
- It was **instituted in 1954**.
- **Eligibility:** Any person irrespective of race, occupation. Foreign citizens are also eligible.

- This award is given in recognition of Public Service of the highest order.



- **Change in eligibility:** Originally this award was given for exceptional service towards advancement of Art, Literature, Science and Public Service, but in 2011, the area was expanded to include any field of human endeavour.
- The **recommendations** for Bharat Ratna are **made by the Prime Minister himself to the President**. No formal recommendations for this are necessary.
- **Maximum three persons can be awarded the Bharat Ratna in a particular year.**
- On conferment of the award, the recipient is given a Sanad (certificate) signed by the President and a medallion.
- No monetary grant is given along with this award.
- The award cannot be used as a prefix or suffix to the recipient's name as per Article 18(1) of the Indian Constitution.

Prominent awardees

Year	Name of Awardee	Details
1954 (First Awardees)	Dr. C.V Raman	Physicist
	C. Rajagopalachari	Freedom fighter and last Governor General of India
	Dr. S. Radhakrishnan	Philosopher as well as first Vice-President and second President of India
1955	Jawaharlal Nehru	Freedom fighter, writer and first Prime Minister of India
	Bhagwan Das	Freedom fighter, philosopher and educationist
	M. Visvesvaraya	Civil Engineer, Statesman, Diwan of Mysore
1957	Govind Ballabh Pant	Freedom fighter, Chief Minister of Uttar Pradesh and Home Minister of India
1958	Dhondo Keshav Karve	Social reformer and educator
1961	Bidhan Chandra Roy	Physician, politician and social worker
	Purushottam Das Tandon	Titled as "Rajarshi", independence activist and politician
1962	Rajendra Prasad	Jurist, freedom fighter and first President of India

1966	Lal Bahadur Shastri (First Posthumous awardee)	Freedom fighter and second Prime Minister of India
1971	Indira Gandhi	Third Prime Minister of India
1980	Mother Teresa	Social worker, founder of Missionaries of Charity and a Catholic nun
1987	Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan	Known as Frontier Gandhi
1990	B.R Ambedkar	Crusader against untouchability, Chief Architect of Indian Constitution
	Nelson Mandela	Gandhi of South Africa
1997	Dr. A.P.J Abdul Kalam	Scientist and 11th President of India
1999	Prof. Amartya Sen	Economist
2014	Sachin Tendulkar	Cricketer
	C.N.R Rao	Chemist and Scientist
2015	Madan Mohan Malviya	Scholar and Educational Reformer
	Atal Bihari Vajpayee	Prime Minister of India for three terms.
2019	Pranab Mukherjee	13th President of India
	Bhupen Hazarika	Singer, lyricist, musician, etc. from Assam
	Nanaji Deshmukh	Social activist

Padma Awards

- It is one of the highest civilian awards conferred to citizens annually on the eve of **Republic Day** for their exceptional services in their chosen fields like Sports, Art, Social work, Civil Service, Literature and Education, Public Affairs, Science and Technology, Trade and Industry, etc.
- The award tries to perceive accomplishments in all fields of activities or disciplines where a component of public help is included.

History

- In 1954, the Government of India constituted two awards- Bharat Ratna and Padma Vibhushan. There were three classes of Padma Vibhushan: *Pahela Varg*, *Dusra Varg* and *Tisra Varg*. Later they were renamed as Padma Vibhushan, Padma Bhushan and Padma Shri vide Presidential Notification issued on January 8, 1955.
- Since its establishment, it has been awarded on every republic day except for brief interruption(s) during the years 1978 and 1979 and 1993 to 1997.

Categories of the awards

Padma Vibhushan	For exceptional and distinguished service
Padma Bhushan	For distinguished service of a high order
Padma Shri	For distinguished service.

- Eligibility - All persons irrespective of race, occupation, position or sex with the **exception of Government servants** including those working with PSUs (except doctors and scientists) are not eligible for these Awards

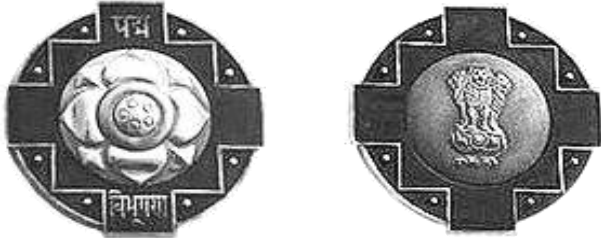
- Generally, these awards are **not conferred posthumously** except in highly desirable cases where the Government can reconsider giving it.
- If a person has been awarded with a category of Padma Award, he cannot be conferred with a higher category of Padma award unless a period of at least **five years** has elapsed.
- Who gives the Award?
 - The **President of India** presents the awardees with a Sanad (certificate) signed by him and a medallion.
 - The awardees also get a small replica of the medallion, which they can wear during any ceremonial/State functions etc., if the awardees so desire.
 - The names of the awardees are published in the Gazette of India on the day of the presentation ceremony.
- Total awards given in a year (excluding posthumous awards and to NRI/foreigners/OCIs) - Should **not be more than 120**.
- The total number of awards to be given in a year should not be more than 120.
- The award cannot be used as a suffix or prefix to the awardees' name as it does not amount to a title.

Who decides the nominees/awardees?

- The Prime Minister constitutes a Padma awards committee every year.
- All the nominations are placed before this committee.
- Their recommendations are submitted to the Prime Minister and President for approval.
- This committee is headed by the Cabinet Secretary and includes Home Secretary, Secretary to the President and four to six eminent persons as members.

Padma Vibhushan

- Second highest civilian Award given in India
- The award carries a citation certificate and a medal which has lotus flower in the middle and 'Desh Seva' embossed on the obverse.



Padma Bhushan

- Third highest civilian award of India.
- Conferred by the President of India in an elaborate ceremony held at Rashtrapati Bhawan.



Padma Shri

- Fourth highest civilian award of India
- The award carries a certificate and a medallion with a three-leaved flower on one side and on the obverse Padma (lotus) and Shri (Mr. or Ms.) is written in Devanagari script.



Sahitya Akademi Award

- Instituted in 1954, this award is given for outstanding contribution in the field of **literature**.
- The award consists of a plaque (designed by famous filmmaker-Satyajit Ray) which says 'Sahitya' in devanagari script accompanied by a sum of 1,00,000 rupees. This award is given by the Sahitya Academy, which is India's National Academy of Letters.



- It is awarded annually yearly to the individuals who have accomplished scholarly legitimacy and made recent fads by distributing their works, composition or verse, in any of the 24 significant dialects perceived by the Akademi. Other than the 22 dialects listed in the Constitution of India, Sahitya Akademi has perceived English and Rajasthani as dialects which can be considered for the honor.

National Film Awards

- Awarded annually to those who have achieved cinematic excellence.
- Founded in 1954
- In 1974 the Directorate of Film Festivals was given the responsibility of organising the awards.
- The winners are decided by a National Selection Panel appointed by the Government.
- Awards presented by- The President of India
- The awards are not merely given to Indian Bollywood Cinema but also to regional cinema.

Major categories

Swarna Kamal Or the Golden Lotus Award (five categories)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Best Feature Film • Best Direction • Best Children's Film • Best Popular film providing wholesome entertainment • Indira Gandhi Award for Best Debutant Director
Rajat Kamal or Silver Lotus Award	It has 25 major categories like the best feature film, etc.
Best Feature film in the languages specified in Schedule VIII of the Constitution	12 Categories including Hindi, Bengali etc.
Best Feature film specified in the Languages other than those specified in Schedule VIII of the Constitution	Five categories including English, Bhojpuri, Kokborok, Monpa and Tulu

The National awards also includes Dadasaheb Phalke Lifetime Achievement Award-the most prestigious and coveted award of Indian Cinema. It is presented to those who have spent their entire career contributing to the Indian Cinema.

- The Dadasaheb Phalke Awards are the highest honour in the film industry.
- Named after - Dhundiraj Govind Phalke, also known as Dadasaheb Phalke
- Raja Harishchandra, India's first feature-length film, was produced, directed, and written by Dadasaheb Phalke in 1913. In his 19-year career, he made 95 feature-length films and 27 short films, including Mohini Bhasmasur (1913), Satyavan Savitri (1914), Lanka Dahan (1917), Shri Krishna Janma (1918), and Kaliya Mardan (1919).
- Dadasaheb Phalke is known as India's "Father of Cinema."
- **The Directorate of Film Festivals, an organisation set up by the Ministry of Information and broadcasting,** presents the Dadasaheb Phalke Awards every year at the National Films Awards ceremony.
- Devika Rani was the inaugural recipient of this award, which she got in 1969 at the 17th National Film Awards.

	<p>VIII of the Constitution of India.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The award consists of a cash prize of ₹15 lakh, a citation and a plaque
Vyas Samman	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initiated by K. K. Birla in 1991 Foundation. • Includes a cash payout of ₹250,000. • Eligibility - the literary work must be in Hindi language and has been published in the past 10 years.

Other Literary Awards

<u>Awards</u>	<u>Details</u>
Sahitya Akademi Fellowship	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fellowship by Sahitya Akademi
Bhasha Samman	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Awards are also given by the Sahitya Akademi
Translation Awards	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Given by the Sahitya Akademi to those who have attempted translation of major works from other languages to the 24 major languages. • Special importance is given to those who attempt translation of ancient and medieval literature. • Prize - cash prize of ₹50,000 and a plaque
Jnanpith Award	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Also known as the Gyanpeeth Award (Seat of Knowledge) • Given for outstanding literary achievement. • Instituted in 1961 by the Bharatiya Jnanpith • Awarded to Indians who compose literature in one of the 22 languages listed in the Schedule VIII of the Indian Constitution and English.
Saraswati Samman	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Instituted in 1991 by the K. K. Birla Foundation. • Awarded for outstanding prose or poetry literary works in any of the 22 Indian languages listed in Schedule

60 CHAPTER

Indian Dance



History of Dance in India

Indian Dance origin dates back to ancient period having established its roots as early as the prehistoric period where archeological excavations have found engravings of dance on Bhimbetka rock shelters. Several excavations at Harappan sites have revealed dancing sculptures such as the Bronze dancing girl sculpture dated to about 2500 BCE. However, formally dance was mentioned for the first time in **Bharat Muni's** work, **Natya Shashtra** compiled in 2nd century BC. It is a comprehensive treatise on Indian classical dance which describes all the elements of dance like the postures, emotions, techniques, ornaments, stage and the audience. Its themes have been derived from mythology, legends and classical literature.

It is believed that the element of dance came into being when Lord Brahma created the fifth Veda, known as **Natya Veda**, after combining certain elements from the previous four Vedas. It was created with the thought of creating a pastime as requested by other Gods. Natya is a blend of dance, drama and music and includes-

- Pathya (words) from Rig Veda
- Abhinaya (gestures) from Yajur Veda
- Geet (music) from Sama Veda
- Rasa (emotions) from Atharva Veda

In Indian culture, dance is a symbolic expression of religious ideas. Such as, the Tandava dance of Lord Shiva demonstrates the cycle of creation, preservation and destruction of the universe.

Aspects of Dance

As per Bharata's Natya Shastra, there are two aspects of dance. He traces its source from Lord Brahma. Lord Brahma created a fifth Veda called as 'Natyaveda', representing the essence of four existing Vedas.

- **Lasya**- it lays emphasis upon feminine characteristics of dance such as grace, bhava, rasa and abhinaya. The feminine is soft, lyrical, and graceful and indicates grace, and 'abhinaya'.
- **Tandava**- it lays emphasis upon masculine characteristics of dance such as power, strength, rhythm and movement.

According to Nandikeshwara's treatise on dance-Abhinaya Darpan, a dance form has three basic elements-

- **Nritta**- refers to dance movement in its basic form without any expressions. Rhythms and expressions of the music are reflected in the decorative movements of the hands and body and in the stamping of the feet.

- **Natya**- it is a dramatic representation of dance with expressions reflected through hand gestures, facial movements, eye contact, etc.
- **Nritya**- it involves aspects of both 'nritta' and 'natya'. Emotions and sentiments are conveyed through dance movements. Facial expression, hand gesture, and position of the legs and feet are emphasized. Different mudras are presented to express oneself.

According to Nandikeshwara, there are **nine different rasas or emotions** that are conveyed through dance. These include

Shringara (love), Haasya (laughter), Roudra (anger), Karunya (tragedy), Bibhatsa (disgust), Bhayanak (horror), Adbhudta (wonder), Veer (heroism) and Shaanta (peace).

These above expressions are conveyed through the use of mudras- which is a combination of hand gestures and body movements. There are a total **108 basic mudras**.

Classical Dances of India

The Natya Shastra, written by Tamil scholar Bharat Muni, is the foundational treatise for all classical dances in India. There are presently eight dances that have been conferred classical dance status by the Sangeet Natak Academy. These dances include- Bharatnatyam, kathak, Kuchipudi, Odissi, Sattriya, Mohiniattam, Kathakali and Manipuri. These dance forms are based on ancient traditions and have to conform to rigid rules and guidelines of presentation.



Bharatnatyam

- Tamil Nadu
- Also called Sadir, it is the oldest among all the Classical dances
- The name "Bharatnatyam" is a combination of two names- 'Bharat' is derived from the name of Tamil scholar Bharatmuni, who wrote Natya Shastra and 'nayam' refers to dance in tamil.



- The 'devadasis' system prevalent in Tamil Nadu is said to have kept this dance alive for centuries. Devadasis were young girls 'gifted' by their parents to the temples. They performed dances and were said to be married to Gods.
- The dance finds mention in Silappatikaram (the ancient Tamil epic).
- Symbolism both in its abhinaya (acting) and its goals. The roots of abhinaya were found in the Natyashastra text.
- In its standard form, the dance is generally broken into seven main parts – Alarippu, Jatiswaran, Shabda, Varna, Pada, Thillana and Sloka.
- The dance is well-known for its fixed upper torso, legs bent, or knees flexed out combined with spectacular footwork, a sophisticated vocabulary of sign language based on gestures of hands, eyes, and face muscles.
- In this dance, weight of the body is placed down the center of the body with the emphasis on striking the floor with feet and jumps known as "Bhramaris".
- Themes- Ramayana, Mahabharata, Shaivism, Vaishnavism, Shaktism.
- In this dance form, a dancer plays many roles in a single performance (Ekcharya lasyam)
- Both the Tandava (rhythm and movement) and Lasya (bhava, rasa and abhinaya) aspects of dance are given equal importance.
- Special attention is paid to "mudras". One such mudra is 'kataka mukha hasta' in which three fingers are joined to form 'Om'.
- In this dance, knees are mostly bent.
- Also called the "fire dance" as the body of the dancer resembles a dancing flame during performance.
- Other participants of the dance include- a vocalist, a mridangam player, violinist or Veena player, a flautist and a cymbal player.
- Languages used in performance- Sanskrit, Tamil and Kannada.
- The dance performance ends with mangalam to seek blessings of God.
- Famous exponents of this dance- Mallika Sarabhai, Rukmini Arundale, Radha Krishnamurthy, Padma Subramaniam and Sonal Mansingh.

Kathak

- Uttar Pradesh
- Dance is attributed to the traveling bards of ancient northern India known as Kathakars or storytellers. Kathak is derived from the Vedic Sanskrit word Katha which means "story", and Kathaka which means "the one who tells a story", or "to do with stories" from the great epics and ancient mythology. It is conveyed through dance, their hand movements and footwork and through their facial expressions, songs, and music.



- Origin of dance can be traced through Devadasis in Mughal court.
- Started with Radha-Krishna but later secular themes.
- Kathak evolved during the Bhakti movement. It includes the childhood and stories of the Lord Krishna.
- Lasya predominates in this dance.
- This dance form highlights the rhythmic foot movements, adorned with small bells (Ghungroo), and the movements in context to the music.
- Legs and torso are generally straight and the story is told through a developed vocabulary based on the gestures of arms and upper body movement, stage movements, facial expressions, bends and turns.
- Major focus of the dance becomes the eyes and the foot movements.
- Dance is accompanied by Hindustani dhrupad music.
- Main attraction of this dance- use of footwork and pirouettes.
- A competitive performance between the dancer and the tabla player is the main element of this dance
- The dance shows unique synthesis of Hindu and Muslim art
- The performance ends with 'Kramalaya'- use of fast footwork.
- Different gharanas developed as part of this dance form like the- Lucknow gharana, Raigarh gharana, Jaipur gharana, Banaras gharana, etc.
- Famous exponents of this dance- Lacchu Maharaj, Birju Maharaj, Damayanti Joshi and Sitara Devi. Lady Leela Sokhey (Menaka) revived the classical style of Kathak.

Kuchipudi

- Andhra Pradesh
- Dance derives its name from a village in Andhra Pradesh called Kuchelapuram or Kuchipudi.
- Origin- Bhagavathulu dances in temples.
- Theme- secular theme, primarily based on stories of Bhagavata Purana.
- It was popular under the generic name of Yakshagana.



In the 17th Century, the Kuchipudi style of Yakshagana was conceived by Siddhendra Yogi. He was sheared in the literary Yakshagana tradition being guided by his guru Theertha Naaraayana Yogi who compiled the Krishna-Leelatarangini, a Kaavya in Sanskrit.

- Each character of the performance introduces itself with a small composition of dance and song called “daaru”.
- Also called the “earth dance”.
- Both Lasya and Tandav predominate.
- Includes both solo as well as group performance.
- Ornaments, costume, and jewelry occupy a central place.
- Some solo performances include-
 - Tarangam- the dancer dances on a brass plate with a pot of water balanced on head
 - Jala Chitra Nrityam- the dancer uses his/her toes to draw pictures on the floor while dancing.
 - Manduka Shabdham (story of frog maiden)
- Dance is accompanied by Carnatic music
- Musical instruments used- Mridangam and Violin.
- Famous exponents of this dance- Radha Raddy, Raja Reddy, Indarani rehman and Yamini Krishnamurthy.

Odissi

- Odisha
- The Udayagiri and Khandagiri caves near Bhubaneswar dating back to around 2nd century BC provided the earliest archeological evidence of this dance form.
- Origin: Mahari, Nartaki, Gotipua, devadasi tradition.
- Dance symbolises gracefulness, sensuality and beauty
- Use of mudras in dance as in Bharatnatyam.
- Both Lasya and Tandav predominate.
- Theme: Puranic stories.
- Odissi derives its name from ‘Odra Nritya’ mentioned in Natya Shastra. It was supported by the Jain King Kharavela and largely performed by Maharis.
- Different postures made by the body is a characteristic feature of this dance-
 - Tribhanga posture- body is bended three ways
 - Mobile sculpture- body used to create different geometrical shapes and patterns.
 - Chauka posture- body imitates a square.
- Odissi dance performs Natya combined with an element of acting and dancing.
- The dance is concluded with Moksha (dancer moves joyfully to signify freedom) or Trikhanda manjura (dancer takes leave from stage, the audience and the Gods).
- Also called the “water dance”.
- Dance is accompanied by Hindustani music.



- Musical instruments used- pakhawaj , flute, sitar / violin and manjira.
- Famous exponents of this dance include- Kalicharan Patnayak, Sonal Mansingh, Sharan lower (U.SA) & Myrta Barve (Argentina).

Sattriya

- Assam
- Dance introduced by Vaishnava saint, Shankardeva in 15th century AD.
- The name “Sattriya” originated from the word “Sattras” which means Vaishnava monasteries where the dance was initially practiced.
- Theme- Mythological stories of Lord Vishnu and Krishna.
- A kind of devotional dance generally performed by male dancers called “Bhokots”.
- The dance follows strict rules with respect to footwork and hand gestures.
- Musical instruments used- Khol and Flute.
- Dancers dance to Assamese local music known as ‘Borgeets’ (composition by Shankadeva).
- Both the Lasya and Tandava aspects of dance are emphasized.
- Famous exponents of this dance include- Bapuram Barbayan Atai and Pradip chaliha.
- Gayan-Bhayanar Nach and Kharmanar Nach are the two streams developed in the modern times.



Mohiniattam

- Kerala
- The name is derived from amalgamation of two words- “mohini” meaning beautiful woman and “attam” meaning dance. The name “mohiniattam” literally stands for - Dance of the Enchantress.
- References of Mohiniyattam could be found in the texts Vyavaharamala, written in 1709 by Mazhamagalam Narayanan Namputiri and in Ghoshayatra, written later by poet Kunjan Nambiar.
- A solo female dance performance with circular movements, subtle expressions, and delicate footsteps.



- Movements in Mohiniyattam have been borrowed from Nangiar Koothu and female folk dances the Tiruvattirakali and Kaikottikali.
- The dance combines elements of both Bharatanatyam (grace and elegance) and Kathakali (vigour) but is more erotic, delicate, and lyrical.
- More focus is on the Lasya aspect of dance- grace and elegance.
- Theme- based on feminine dance of Vishnu
- Also called the “air dance”.
- The traditional costume is of special importance- white or off-white colour with gold border (Kasavu saree of Kerala) and golden jewellery with realistic make-up.
- Sopana style of music is followed. The lyrics are in Manipravalam (a medieval south Indian language combining Sanskrit, Tamil, and Malayalam).
- Famous exponents of this dance include- Madhavi amma, Chinnavi amma, Jayaprabha Menon and Sunanda Nair.

Kathakali

- Kerala
- It is a dance-drama performance as the name suggests. “Katha” means story and “kali” means drama.
- Origin: Ramanattam village
- The dance represents the conflict of good and evil.
- Theme- based on epics and puranas
- The dancers undergo vigorous training.
- The Tandav aspect of dance predominates.
- The dancers enact the roles (gods, kings, demons etc.) of the stories with costume make-up and the vocalists narrate the legend and the percussionists play musical instruments.
- Involves minimal use of props.
- Movement of eyes and eyebrows is the chief attraction of this dance
- Elaborate facial makeup using a mixture of rice paste and lime is highlighted in the performance.
- A large head gear is worn by the dancer for different characters.
- Reddish white portion of the eye is the peculiar feature of Kathakali. Different facial colours indicate different mental stages and character.
 - Green- indicating nobility and virtue.
 - Black- evil
 - Red- indicating royalty



- An open air performance usually in theatres or temple premises.
- Brass lamp known as “Nilavillaku” used for lightening purposes.
- Also called the “sky dance”.
- Chakiarkoothu, Krishnattam, Koodiyattam and Ramanattam are few of the ritual performing arts of Kerala which have had a direct influence on Kathakali in its form and technique.
- Weight of a body is on the outer edges of the feet which are curved and slightly bent.
- Carnatic music used. Musical instruments used- drums, chhenda and maddala.
- Famous exponents of this dance include- Guru Kunchu kurup (First kathakali artist to receive a national award), Kalamandalam Gopi, Kalamandalam Murli and Rita Ganguly.

Manipuri

- Manipur
- Devotional dance
- Origin of Manipuri dance is mythological which is traced to the celestial dance of Siva and Parvati all along with ‘Gandharva’ in the valley of Manipur.
- It includes both Tandava and Lasya in which major emphasis is given to Lasya.
- Music- Manipuri music
- The dance gained fame after the start of Vaishnavism.
- Theme- Rasleela
- Main focus of the dance is on hand movements and knee positions.
- A prominent posture in this dance is the “Nagabhanda mudra” in which the body of the dancer forms such a curve that it resembles the number 8.
- Musical instruments used- pung (manipuri drum), kartals, cymbals, flute and dhol.
- Traditional costume worn- a white muslin skirt with dark coloured velvet blouse and a traditional white veil is worn by female dancers, while the male dancer is seen wearing a yellow dhoti, a dark velvet jacket and a crown made of peacock feathers.
- Compositions of Jayadev and Chandidas accompany the dance.
- Famous exponents of this dance include- the four Thaveri sisters- Nayana, Ranjana, Suverna and Dasrhana, Guru Bipin Singha, etc.



- Rabindra Nath Tagore introduced this dance in Shantiniketan thereby bringing back the prominence of this dance form in modern times.

Folk Dance

This is generally performed in rural areas during festivals, fairs or religious and cultural gatherings. Each region or state in India has their own folk dance that is based upon local myths, traditions and culture of that area.



Chhau

- Performed in states of West Bengal, Jharkhand, and Odisha
- Chhau is derived from “Chhaya” meaning shadow.
- A kind of tribal martial dance-drama performance
- Theme based on epics such as Ramayana and Mahabharata.
- Use of masks and head gears along with colourful costumes
- Lord Ganesha is invoked at the start of the performance.
- Three main styles of this dance include- Saraikela Chhau (Jharkhand), Mayurbhanj (Odisha) and Purulia Chhau (West Bengal).
- In mayurbhanj mask are not used.
- Sarpa Niritya, Mayur Niritya etc., are some of the natural themes used in Chhau dance.
- The dance symbolizes the victory of good over evil.
- Musical instruments used- Drums and Shehnai.
- This local dance form has been inscribed on the Representative List of Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity by UNESCO in 2011.



Garba

- Folk dance of Gujarat
- Performed during Navratri and wedding events.
- Performed by women mainly
- Involves clapping of hands and dancing in circular motions with an earthen pot with holes in which a lamp is lit kept in the middle.



Dandiya Raas

- Gujarat
- Prevalent since the time of lord Krishna
- Colourful sticks, called Dandiya is used for performance
- The dance involves circular movements along with a partner



Ghoomar

- Haryana and Rajasthan (in all seasons)
- Performed by girls wearing colorful Ghagras (long skirts) on songs of love, glory or defeat.
- Men also present Ghoomar. Men and women dance in a circle where one half is made of men and the other by women.
- Dance accompanies instrumental and vocal music.
- Accelerated tempo of beats and clapping of hands is a feature of this dance form.



Kalbelia

- Performed by the Kalbelia community of Rajasthan who are primarily snake charmers.
- Musical instrument used- Been
- The dance movement resembles the movement of snake
- Dancers dressed in black skirts perform this dance on festive occasions.
- This local dance form has been inscribed on the Representative List of Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity by UNESCO in 2011.



Bhangra/Gidda

- Punjab
- Performed during happy occasions, weddings, festivals, etc.
- While Bhangra is performed by male members, Giddha is performed by females.



- Dancer's speed and movement depends upon the drummer who sits in the center of the circle.
- Rhythmic cry or joy is shaped by the dancers when they reach the spirit of the dance.
- Musical instrument used- drum or dholak.

Bihu

- Assam
- Dance performance marks the arrival of spring and the Assamese New Year.
- The dancers showcase Assamese handlooms and handicrafts during their performance
- Executed in a group by both men and women.
- Pomp and gaiety are renowned by the dancers who wear colourful traditional dresses.
- Rapid hand movement, group formation, and brisk footstep are the peculiar aspects of Bihu dance.



Raslila

- Mathura and Vrindavan region of Uttar Pradesh
- Theme- love story of Radha and Krishna



Dhobia

- Uttar Pradesh
- Performed by the dhobi (washermen) community of eastern Uttar Pradesh
- Dance-drama performance by male dancers only
- Musical instruments used- drums, cymbals and ghungroos



Madhuri (koppu)

- Telangana
- Performed by both male and female dancers
- Performed during the Krishna Janmashtami celebrations
- Theme- Mahabharat
- Musical instrument used- Nagara



Gaur madia

- Chhattisgarh
- Performed by the Bison Horn Maria tribes who reside in the Bastar region of Chhattisgarh
- Dancers imitate the movements of a bison

Samai

- Goa
- The dance showcases the traditional metallic lamps (called samai) of the region
- Dancers dance with lamps placed on their head while singing and dancing.

Kinnauri nati

- Himachal Pradesh
- Dance performance associated with cultivation
- The dancers imitate movements of all the agricultural operations of sowing and reaping opla (barley) and phaphar (a local grain).

Paika

- By the Munda tribes of Jharkhand
- The dancers enact the famous battle scenes of the historic Paika rebellion against the Britishers.
- Musical instruments used- dhol, nagara, shehnai, and ranbhari
- The dance is mainly associated with dussehra celebrations
- Dancers perform with spears, shields, swords and head gears.

Rouff

- Kashmir region
- Performed by female dancers who sing while doing routine household chores
- Performed during the month of Ramzan
- Musical instruments used- noot, tumbaknari, rabab etc, only when performed in public during celebrations.

Jabro

- Ladakh
- It is a community dance performed by people of Tibetan origin residing in Ladakh
- Performed by both male and female dancers for the celebration of Losar- the Tibetan New Year.
- Musical instruments used- Damien-a stringed guitar-like instrument and flute.

Veerbhadra

- Karnataka
- A warrior dance performed using swords
- Performed during chaitra purnima and the dhalo festival

Koothu or Therukoothu

- It is an ancient art, where artists play songs with dance and music in storytelling the epics, performed in Tamil; it is a folk art originated from the early Tamil country.
- More precisely Koothu refers to either Terukkuttu or Kattaikkuttu. The terms Terukkuttu and Kattaikkuttu are often used interchangeably in modern times; however, historically, the two terms appear to have distinguished, at least in certain villages, between two different kinds of performance: while Terukkuttu referred to mobile performances in a procession, Kattaikkuttu denotes overnight, narrative performances at a fixed performance space.
- Koothu as a form of entertainment reached its peak hundreds of years ago in Tamil Nadu, as mentioned in the Sangam texts about the development of iyal (literature), isai (music) and natagam (drama). Going beyond just a means of entertainment, koothu educates the rural people about religion and their history.

Jhoomar

- Jhumar or Jhoomar is a lively form of music and dance that originated in Multan and Balochistan, also thrived in Punjab.
- It is a slower and more rhythmic form. The word "Jhumar" comes from Jhum/Jhoom, which means Swaying. The songs evoke a quality which reminds of swaying.
- Though the content of these songs is varied - they are usually love with emotional songs too. The Jhumar is a dance of ecstasy.

Changu

- This dance is performed by almost all the regional tribal communities of Orissa that form almost one-fourth of the total population of the state.
- Even though the Changu dance is part of everyday life for all of the tribes, it is considered closer to the Bhuyan tribe of Orissa.
- It forms the central event in any occasion for celebrations and festivities, like harvests and marriages. The Changu dance also serves as a socially acceptable platform for the meeting of eligible bachelors in the village, since the dancers have to be strictly unmarried.

Kummi

- Kummi is a folk dance, popular in Tamil Nadu and Kerala in India, danced mostly by Tamil women in circle. Dancing may be different.
- In some places, it is very simple, with rhythmic clapping or beating of the drums. In other places dancers imitate various harvesting activities

Mayilattam

- Mayilattam is an artistic and religious form of dance performed in the Hindu temples of Tamil Nadu and Kerala in reverence to Lord Subrahmanya.
- Mayilattam performers wear costumes from head to toe like peacock with beak, that can be opened and closed using a thread, and perform specific dances. The performers dance on a tall piece of wood attached at the end of their feet.
- This art requires extensive training and practise. This dance is performed in all Murugan (Lord Subrahmanya) temples as a tradition during festivals. But due to the difficulties in practise and less amount of wages for the dancers, the number of Mayilattam performers is decreasing

Kavadiyattam

- A ritual art related to Lord Subrahmanian, Kavadiyattam is mostly conducted as an offering to the Lord. Also known as Subrahmanian Thullal, in Kavadiyattam the performer carries on his shoulder an ornate Kavadi (a huge bow, richly decorated with peacock feathers) and will dance.
- Kavadi used for the dance is of different sizes and shapes, each with its own significance. Background music of Panchavadyam, Nagaswarm etc is an added attraction.
- The dancers twist and spin in a row. They gradually move in a frenzy, in step with the rising beats of percussion music. Some of the dancers even pierce parts of their body with arrows. It is believed that arrow was the weapon used by Lord Subrahmanian.

Dance	State	Highlights of the dance form
Veeranatyam	Eastern and western region of river Godavari	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• A big flaming plate is balanced on the palm while dancing.• Spears used in the dance
Dollu Kunitha	Karnataka	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• By male dancers with a drum tied to the waist performed by Kurubas, devotees of Beere Devaru• Dancers stand in a circle and move as they begin beating the drum
Pata Kunitha	Karnataka	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use of bamboo sticks decorated with colorful ribbons• Religious dance by male dancers
Matki	Madhya Pradesh	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• earthen pots (matki) placed on head while dancing

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • By female dancers • Dhol used during performance
Ottamthullal	Kerala	Theme- excerpts of Malayalam Literature a solo dance Green makeup and colourful costumes used for performance musical instruments used- Drum and cymbal
Kolattam	Tamil Nadu	Girls dance with stick in their hand to celebrate the birth of Lord Rama
Padayani	Kerala.	-Dancers wear huge masks called "Kollam".
Hojagiri	By reang community of Tripura	Dance of harvest
Karagam	Tamil Nadu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dance dedicated to the worship of mariamman, the goddess of rain and health • Pots filled with water placed on head while dancing
Kavadi	Tamil Nadu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A dance by pilgrims to please Lord Muruga. • A pole is carried by male dancers across his shoulder to carry the favourite hills of muruga to the shrine.
Tamang selo	By Tamang community of Sikkim	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Performed during the festival of dussehra • Musical instrument used- damphu
Chakri	Rajasthan	Performed during weddings and festivals by women wearing colourful skirts musical instruments used- daph, manjira and nagara.
Ramappa chaddhaiya	Odisha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Martial dance form where dancers balance themselves on a stick while dancing. • musical instrument used- drums and 'mohri' dedicated to Lord Shiva
Gotipua	Odisha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Young boys are dressed up as girls while dancing to the love songs of Radha-Krishna. • musical instrument used- mardala-a pakhawaj, gini-small cymbals, harmonium, violin and flute
Cheraw	Mizoram	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Also called "Bamboo dance" as Bamboo sticks are used in the performance. • While the male members hold two sticks to the ground, the female dancers dance in and out of the stick.
Lewatana	By the hajong tribe of Meghalaya	During the festival of diwali
Lezim	Maharashtra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A kind of martial dance form performed during religious and social gatherings • Musical instruments used- dhol, Tasha and jhanj
Dhol cholom	Manipur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The dance belongs to the Sankirtana tradition of Manipur. • Performed with drums and use of fire
Lavani	Maharashtra	The dance symbolizes bravery, pathos, love and devotion. the dance is integral part of Tamasha theatre form
Raee	Bundelkhand regions of Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh	By female dancers to celebrate victory musical instruments used- Algoza, mridanga and dhapali.
Baredi	Madhya Pradesh	Performed during the time of deepawali (kartik amavasya) to kartik purnima. Dance involves worship of Govardhan parbat
Badhai	Madhya Pradesh	Dance used to worship Goddess Sheetla for safeguarding people from natural calamities and ailments.
Oppana	Kerala and Lakshadweep	By female dancers during wedding ceremonies
Daang	Gujarat	Performed by both male and female dancers during holi celebrations a two or three tier dance where dancers balance themselves on top of others while moving in circular fashion.

Choliya	Uttarakhand	Martial dance performed during Kirji Kumbh celebrations to destroy the poisonous Kirji Kumbh flower that blooms once every 12 years.
Kaksar	By Abhuj Maria tribes of Bastar in Chhattisgarh	In celebration of a good harvest.
Jhijhiya	Bihar	To please Lord Indra for rain and Good harvest.
Jabro	Ladakh	Male and female dancers Performed in circles or rows where dancers move forward or backwards hand in hand
Veerbhadra	Karnataka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mainly performed during the Shigmo festival and Gudi Padwa A martial dance form where dancers hold swords in both hands while dancing rhythmically.
Rouff	Jammu and Kashmir	During month of Ramzan by female dancers
Paika	Munda tribes of Jharkhand	Dancers enact the famous battle scenes of the historic Paika rebellion against the Britishers, especially during Dussehra Use of spears, shields, swords and head gears.
Kinnauri Nati	Himachal Pradesh	Dancers imitate movements of all the agricultural operations of sowing and reaping ogla (barley) and phaphar (a local grain).
Samai	Goa	dance with lamps (called Samai) placed on their head while singing and dancing
Gaur Madia	Bison Horn Maria tribes of Chhattisgarh	Dancers imitate movements of bison
Madhuri (koppu)	Telangana	During Krishna Janmashtami celebration by both male and female dancers.
Dhobia	dhobi (washermen) community of eastern Uttar Pradesh	By male dancers only
Raslila	Mathura and Vrindavan region of Uttar Pradesh	Love story of Radha and Krishna depicted through dance.

Significance of Dance

Dance has been an integral part of our culture and tradition since centuries. Dancing in India has evolved starting from the ancient traditional dance forms to today's contemporary dance. Dance is an expression of creativity and imagination that also combines elements of discipline, commitment and work ethic in the performers. The significance of dance can be illustrated from the following points-

- It has been in prevalence since ancient times starting from the Stone Age. Earlier dance forms were a way to communicate with the God, it drew themes from various religious texts, mythological stories and epics.
- Folk dances represent the legends and traditions prevalent in different parts of the country and brings together people and is a way to unite communities,
- Dance reveals various social customs and cultures prevalent in society.
- Dance is a way to express oneself through emotions, gestures, expressions without the use of words.

- Dancing is a means of physical as well as mental refreshment
 - Dancing as a form of entertainment can be fun and joyous.
 - Dancing is a great form of exercise.
- Dance is a universal language as people belonging to a myriad of cultures, traditions, lifestyle, tastes, emotions, and come together as one while dancing.



- Fairs and festivals are an essential part of the intrinsic cultural fabric of Indian society and a continuation of its heritage.
- There are noble causes, meaningful identity and spiritual messages behind each festival and because of that they are enthusiastically organised and celebrated.
- Through their celebration and participation they extend the message of peace, harmony, humanity, tolerance, etc.

Important Fairs

- **Kumbha Mela**
 - There was a struggle between Asuras and Devas for Kumbha (Pot) containing Nectar (Surabhi, Amrit). During the struggle, drops of nectar fell at 12 places in the world. 4 of them are in India – Haridwar, Ujjain, Prayag, Nasik. Mahakumbh and Kumbha are held at these places.
 - Maha Kumbh Mela – Once in 12 years
 - Ardh Kumbh Mela – Once in 6 years
 - Kumbha Mela – 4 times in 12 years
- **Ambubachi Mela** is held annually at Kamakhya Temple, Assam during Assamese month 'Ahaar'.
- **Baneshwar Fair** is held annually at Dungarpur Mahadev Temple, Rajasthan in the month of February.
- **Chandrabhaga Fair** held annually at Jhalrapatan, Jhalawar, Rajasthan in Kartik (Oct-Nov) month
- **Gangasagar Fair** held annually at Gangasagar Island, West Bengal in the month of January - February
- **Pushkar mela** held annually at Pushkar, Rajasthan during the month of Kartik (Oct - Nov)
- **Sonepur Cattle Fair** held annually at Sonepur, the confluence of Ganga and Gandak, Bihar in the month of Kartik (Oct - Nov)
- **Nauchandi Fair** is held annually for the entire one month on the next day of holi at Meerut, U.P.
- **Surajkund Handicrafts Mela** held annually at Surajkund in Faridabad, Haryana during 1st to 15th February



- **Thrissur Pooram** held annually at Vadakkunnathan Temple in Thrissur, Kerala during Malayalam month 'Medam'
- **Medaram Jatara** or Sammakka Saralamma Jatara organised every year at Medaram in Warangal, Telangana in January - February
- **Madhavpur Mela** is organised annually at Madhavpur Ghed in Porbandar (Guj) in March-April for 5 days from Ramnavami.
- **Tarnetar Mela** is held annually at Tarnetarin Saurashtra. It coincides with the festival at the Trinethswar temple, celebrating the wedding of Arjuna with Draupadi. It arranges marriage meets for the local tribes: Kolis, Bharwad and Rabaris.
- **Poush Mela** organised at Shantiniketan of Birbhum, West Bengal. Live performances of Bengali folk music, especially Baul music is the notable feature. The basis of poushmelais the acceptance of Brahma Creed by Debendranath Tagore from Ram Chandra Vidyabagish.
- **Sodal Mela** is one of the main fairs of Punjab and it is organized to pay homage to Baba Sodal, a great soul. Each year, the Mela is organized in the month of Bhadon (September) in Jalandhar. The followers of Sikhism consider this day a very auspicious one.
- **Mahavirji Fair** is observed in March or April and is one of the biggest fairs of the Jain community in Rajasthan. As per the legends the holy statue of Mahavirji was discovered by a cowherd on this day.

Harvest Festivals in India

- A harvest festival is an annual celebration that occurs during the main harvest of a given agricultural region.
- Because of the differences between the climate and crops around the country, harvest festivals can be found at different times at different places.
- Harvest festivals generally feature feasting by family or community, with foods that are drawn from crops that come to maturity at the time of the festival.



Some of the important Harvest Festivals

Harvest Festivals	Celebrated in	Details
Akhatrij or Akshaya Tritiya	Gujarat, Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Goa and Konkan regions	It is observed as an auspicious day by Hindus and Jains in India and Nepal, as it signifies the "third day of unending prosperity
Nuakhai	Odisha	To welcome the new rice of the season. As per the Kosali calendar it is observed on <i>panchami tithi</i> i.e. fifth day of the lunar fortnight of the month of Bhadrapada or Bhadra (August–September), the day after the Ganesh Chaturthi festival.
Bhogali Bihu or Magh Bihu	Assam	Marks the end of harvesting season during mid-January
Chavang Kut	Manipur	Celebrated by the Kuki-chin on November 1st
Deepoli Parba	Karnataka/Kerala	Celebrated by the Tuluva community
Dree Festival	Lower Subansiri District of Arunachal Pradesh	An agricultural festival of the Apatanis of Ziro valley celebrated from 4 to 7 July
Jur Shital	Bihar and Nepal	Celebrated in the Mithila region in Bihar and Nepal during 13 or 14 April.
Kanyarkali	Chittur and Alathur taluk of Palakkad in Kerala	Agricultural festival of the Malayalee Moothan, Nair and Tharakan communities
Nabanna	West Bengal and Bangladesh	Festival of food. It is celebrated with a fair called Nabanna Mela
Onam	Kerala	Harvest festival celebrated by Malayali people
Pongal	South India particularly in the Tamil community	Multi day Hindu harvest festival. It occurs around January 14 and is dedicated to the Hindu sun god.
Puthari or Huthari	Coorg region of Karnataka	
Agera	Mumbai	Thanksgiving harvest festival Catholic roman community particularly in Mumbai region. It falls on the first Sunday of October.

New Year Festivals in India

- In India due to its rainbow diversity various days throughout the year are celebrated as New Year's Day in the different regions of India.



- The observance of such a New Year day is determined by the belief in lunar calendar or solar calendar.
- Following of the various new year's day celebrated in India

New Year's Festival Day	Region, Religion, Community	Time
Ugadi	Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Karnataka	March-April
Gudhi Padwa	Maharashtra, Goa	March-April
Navreh	Kashmir	March-April
Ashadhi Bij	Kutch, Gujrat	June-July
Balipratipada	Gujrat & Rajasthan	October-November
Cheti Chand	Sindhi	March-April
Chaitra Navratri	North and Central India	March-April
Mesha Sankranti/Vaisakhi	Punjab, Haryana, Jammu, Uttar Pradesh, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand	April 13/14/15
Puthandu	Tamil Nadu	April 13/14/15
Vishu	Kerala	April 13/14/15
Chingam	Kerala	August 17/18
Bisu Parba	Tuluva Community	April 14/15
Sajibu Cheiraoba	Manipur	March-April
Buisu	Tripura	April 14/15

Bwisagu	Bodoland	April 13/14/15
Bohag Bihu	Assam	April 13/14/15
Pana Sankranti	Odisha	April 13/14
Pahela Baishakh	West Bengal	April 14/15
Jur Sital	Mithila Region	April 13/14/15
Losoong / Namsoong	Sikkim	December
Galdan Namchot	Ladakh	December
Losar	Arunachal Pradesh	February
Sangken	Arunachal Pradesh	April 13/14
Nowruz	Zoroastrians	March 21

Secular Festivals

Gangaur Festival

- It is a spring festival mostly celebrated in Rajasthan and has roots in medieval Rajput times.
- It is celebrated to honour Goddess Parvati or Gauri, the wife of Lord Shiva.
- However the whole community irrespective of religion celebrates it.
- It is also a celebration of spring, harvest and martial fidelity.

Khajuraho Dance Festival

- It was started in 1975 by the Government of India in collaboration with the Madhya Pradesh Kala Parishad.
- This festival of Dance is organised to promote tourism in the State and highlight the spirit of beauty and eroticism inherent in the Khajuraho temples.
- It also promotes the eternal glory and perseverance of dance and architectural monuments, which reflect our cultural heritage.
- Organised annually during the month of february from the 20th to the 26th
- Location- Khajuraho, Madhya Pradesh, Duration: 7 days

Rann Utsav

- Organised in the silver sands of the white desert in the state of Gujarat
- Fair includes handicrafts and folk performances.
- It is organised during the full moon night in the month of December.
- Location- Bhuj city, Kutch, Gujarat
- It was started to promote tourism in the State.

International Kite festival or Uttarayan

- Uttarayan is celebrated in various parts of India mostly in Gujarat, Telangana and Rajasthan.
- Uttarayan is prominent in cities such as Ahmedabad, Jaipur, Udaipur, Jodhpur, Surat, Vadodara, Rajkot, Hyderabad, Nadiad.

- However, the international Kite festival is celebrated only in Ahmedabad.
- Hundreds of colourful and different kites decorate the skyline during this festival.
- Organised around 14 January of each year during the Makar Sankranti and continues until 15 January.
- Duration: 2 days

Goa Carnival

- It is one of the oldest festivals to be celebrated in Goa.
- Celebrated with vibrant vibes in the sidewalks with astounding costumes of various other famous people.
- Elaborate parades of colourful banners and people dressed as famous celebrities adorn the streets outside the churches of the state.
- It was originally celebrated by Christians, now amalgamated into being a well-composed array of customs and rituals too.
- Organised for 3 days and 2 nights in the month of February in all parts of Goa, especially the capital Panaji.
- It began in the 18th century.

International Film Festival of India

- Founded in 1952, is one of the most significant film festivals in Asia.
- Hosted by: Government of Goa; Directorate of Film Festivals
- Location: Goa, India

Sair-e-Gulfaroshan

- Also called the Phool Walon-ki-sair is a unique 3 day festival of flowers.
- Flowers are considered as the symbol of communal harmony hence this festival is organised by all the communities in the month of Bhadrapad at Mehrauli in Old Delhi.
- Large palm-leaf fans (Pankhas) are decorated with flowers and taken out in a procession to the dargah of Khwaja Bakhtiar Kaki and then to the Jog Maya temple.
- It was started in the early 19th century by the wife of Mughal Emperor Akbarshah II (1806-1837), Queen Mumtaz Mahal as a thankful gesture for the release of her son from imprisonment by the British.

- The festival was banned by the British in 1942 due to the communal tensions, however it was revived and restored to its original glory in 1962.

Desert Festival

- Camel festival and Elephant festival in Rajasthan
- Organised for 3 days
- Folk songs and dances performed
- Events such as turban tying competition, camel races and acrobatics are organised.

Taj Mahotsav

- It is a 10 day event from 18th february at Shilpgram, Udaipur, Rajasthan.
- India's diverse arts, crafts and culture are on display here.
- Celebrated with folk music, Shayari and classical dance performance.
- Also elephant and camel rides, games and food festivals are the main attractions.

North East Festivals

Saga Dawa (Triple Blessed Festival)-

- By Buddhist groups in the state of Sikkim.
- Observed on the full moon day which falls in the Tibetan lunar month of Saga Dawa.
- This month falls between May and June is known as Saga Dawa. or 'Month of Merits.'
- Buddha's birth, enlightenment and death (parinirvana) are commemorated in this festival.

Losoong Festival

- Sikkimese New Year is known as Losoong.
- Every year in the month of December.

Bihu Festival

- It is a set of three major Assamese non-religious festivals: Rongali or Bohag Bihu in April.
- Kongali or Kati Bihu in October.
- Bhogali Bihu in January.
- Most important of the three is Rongali Bihu, falls on Assamese New Year.
- Prime attractions are songs and dances during Bihu.

Hornbill Festival

- Nagaland's most important festivals.
- Every year on the 1st of December, a ten-day festival starts.
- This festival brings together all the big Naga tribes, congregating at the Kisama Heritage Village.
- Costumes, arms, bows, and arrows, and clan headgears are used by all tribes to show their talent and cultural vibrancy

Moatsu Mong festival

- By the Ao tribe of Nagaland in the first week of May.
- It follows the completion of sowing, the stressful work of burning jungles, and clearing fields.
- A time of relaxation and entertainment.
- Songs and dances to mark the occasion.
- Sangpangtu, a large fire is lit and women and men sit around it.

Kharchi Puja

- Originated in Tripura.
- Started as a royal family of Tripura's festival but is now celebrated by ordinary people as well.
- During the month of July and lasts for a week.
- Held in honour of Earth as well as to honour 14 other deities.

Dree Festival

- By the Apatani tribe of Arunachal Pradesh. Dree festival traditions are now being observed by an increasing number of tribes. It is one of the most important festivals in the Ziro valley.

National Festivals

- The three important National Festivals and national holidays are Independence Day, Republic Day and Gandhi Jayanti.
- The celebration of these days not only marks the tribute to these historic events that changed the destiny of Indian Citizens but also they instill the spirit of Nationalism, Patriotism in the new generation along with Indian national values of Unity, Non-violence, Tolerance etc.



Independence Day

- It is annually celebrated on 15 August.
- It is a national holiday to commemorate India's Independence from the United Kingdom on the same day in 1947.
- The provisions of the 1947 Indian Independence Act, which transferred legislative sovereignty to the Indian Constituent Assembly, came into effect on this day.
- Independence Day is observed throughout India with flag-hoisting ceremonies, parades and cultural events.
- The Prime Minister of India addresses the nation from iconic Red Fort, Delhi.

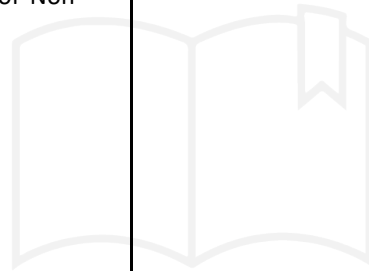
Republic Day

- It is also annually celebrated on 26th January.
- This day is celebrated to honour the date on which the Sovereign Constitution of India came into effect on 26 January 1950.

-
- The main attraction of this day is the Delhi republic day parade organised by the Ministry of Defence.
 - The parade begins with the unfurling of the national flag by the President of India. Then the marching from several regiments of the Army, Navy, and Air Force, along with their bands.
 - Tableaus from different states showing their cultures are displayed. A beating retreat ceremony marks the end of the parade.

Gandhi Jayanti

- It is an annual celebration to mark the birth anniversary of Mahatma Gandhi on 2nd October.
- The main purpose of the celebration is to honour Mahatma Gandhi's contribution in the freedom struggle and nation building as well as inculcating Gandhian values of Nonviolence, tolerance and compassion into the new generation.
- In 2007, the United Nations declared that 2 October will be celebrated as the International Day of Non-Violence.



Toppernotes
Unleash the topper in you

62

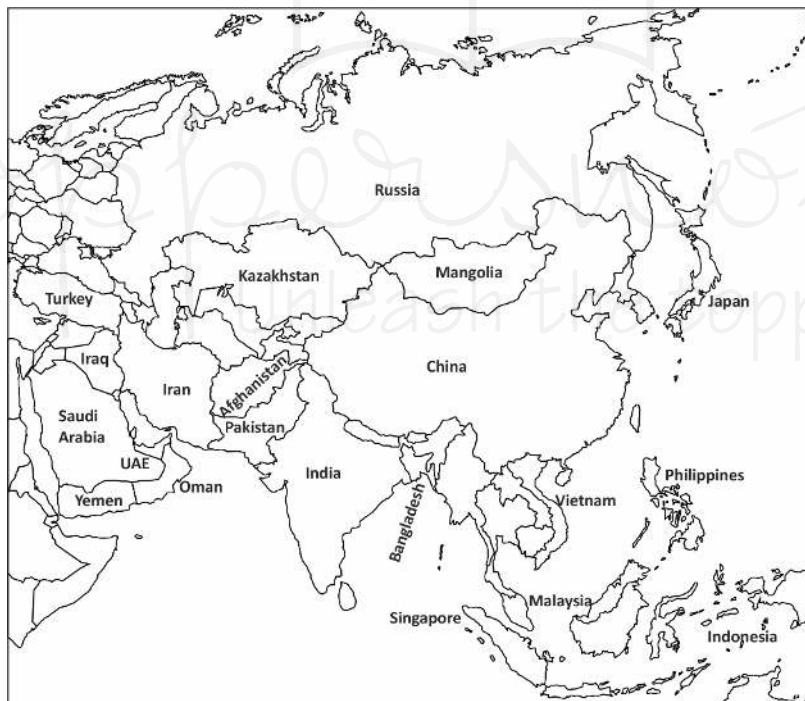
CHAPTER

World Geography



- Continents Top (Area + Population wise): Asia
- 2nd (Area + Population wise): Africa

Asia



Strait: a narrow water body that separates two landmasses/joins two water bodies

Strait of Malacca: Separates Malaysia and Indonesia

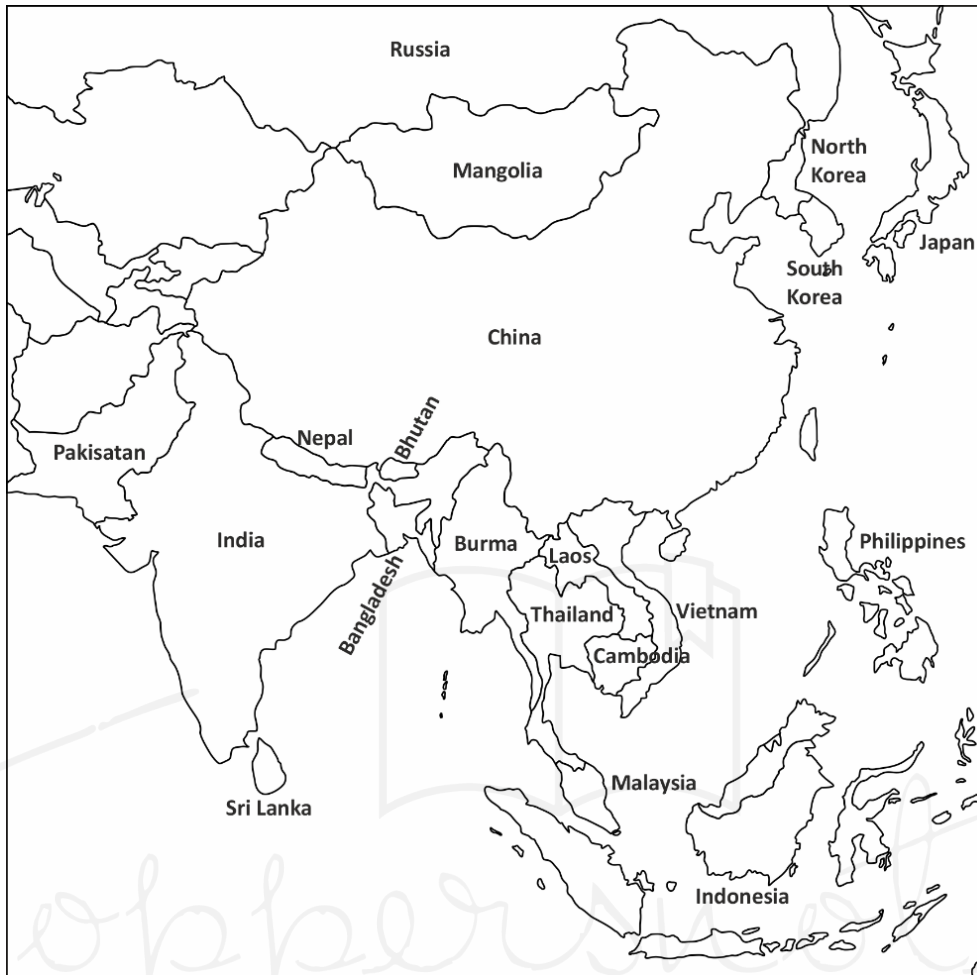
- Joins Java Sea and Andaman Sea

Sunda Strait: Separates Sumatra and Java Joins Java Sea and India Ocean

INDONESIA

- Country with most no. of Muslim population
- Sumatra (Largest Island), Kalimantan, Sulawesi, Java, Papua (5 main islands of Indonesia)
- Capital: Jakarta (at present) Will change to Nusantara Due to Global Warming

MALAYSIA Capital: Kuala Lumpur	CAMBODIA Capital: Phnom Penh	MYANMAR Earlier known as "Burma" Capital: Nay Pyi Taw
EAST TIMOR Capital: Dili	VIETNAM Capital: Hano	PHILIPPINES Capital: Manila
THAILAND Capital: Bangkok	LAOS Capital: Vientiane	



SOUTH KOREA Capital: Seoul Shares border with North Korea	NORTH KOREA Capital: Pyongyang Shares borders with China and Russia
JAPAN Largest island: Honshu Capital: Tokyo	TAIWAN Earlier known as Formosa Capital: Taipei

TURKMENISTAN Capital: Ashgabat	TAJIKISTAN Capital: Dushanbe
UZBEKISTAN Capital: Tashkent	KYRGYZSTAN Capital: Bishkek
KAZAKHSTAN Capital: Astana	



Caspian Sea: Surrounded by 5 countries

- T → Turkmenistan
- A → Azerbaijan
- R → Russia
- I → Iran
- K → Kazakhstan
- Trick → TARIK

Rivers Volga, Ural, and Terek discharge into the Caspian Sea

BLACK SEA: Bordered by

The: Turkiye
 Bu: Bulgaria
 R: Russia
 G: Georgia
 U: Ukraine
 R: Romania
 Trick→ The Burgur

Rivers Danube, Dnieper, Dniester discharges in the Black Sea

KERCH STRAIT: It connects Black Sea and the Sea of Azov Separates Kerch (Ukraine) and Russia

BOSPORUS STRAIT: It connects the Black Sea to the Sea of Marmar

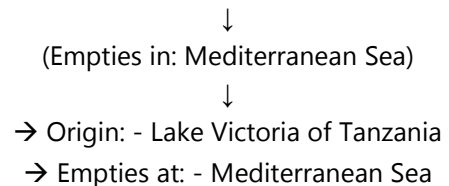
IRAN Capital: Tehran	UKRAINE Capital: Kyiv
AZERBAIJAN Capital: Baku	RUSSIA Capital: Moscow
TÜRKIYE Capital: Ankara Spreads across two continents: Europe and Asia	IRAQ Old name: Mesopotamia Capital: Baghdad

- **Strait of Hormuz:** Connects the Persian Gulf (west) to the Gulf of Oman and the Arabian Sea (southeast)
- **Bab-al-Mandab Strait** →(Gateway of Grief or the Gate of Tears) Connects the Red Sea to the Gulf of Aden
- **RED SEA:** Bordering countries
 - Djibouti
 - Eritrea
 - Saudi Arabia
 - Sudan
 - Egypt
 - Yemen



- Known as "Continent of Continents"
- Known as Dark Continent and Black Continent
- Zimbabwe + Zambia (previously known as)→Rhodesia

Longest river of the world: Nile (formed from Blue Nile + White Nile)



Highest peak of Africa: - Mt. Kilimanjaro

NORTH AMERICA



49th Parallel

- Line Boundary between USA and Canada

Bering Strait

- Connects Arctic Ocean and Pacific Ocean

Panama Canal

- Connects the Atlantic Ocean with Pacific Ocean
- Links North America and South America

Great Lakes: Near Canada-USA border

Great Lakes consists of

- H: Huron
- O: Ontario
- M: Michigan
- E: Erie
- S: Superior

Trick → HOMES

CANADA: Capital: - Ottawa

Desert

- Mojave Desert
- Sonoran Desert

Lake Superior: - largest freshwater lake in the world

Highest peak of North America: - Mt. McKinley (also called Denali)

SOUTH AMERICA



ECUADOR Capital: Quito First country from which equator passes	ARGENTINA Capital: Buenos Aires
VENEZUELA Capital: Caracas	PARAGUAY Capital: Asuncion
BRAZIL Capital: Brasilia Currency: Brazilian Real	BOLIVIA Capital: La Paz
CHILE Capital: Santiago	URUGUAY Capital: Montevideo

ANDES MOUNTAIN RANGE (World's longest chain of mountains)

- Young fold mountains
- **Highest peak:** Mt. Aconcagua (Argentina)
- **Driest desert:** Atacama Desert

EUROPE

- Arati Saha was 1st Indian women swimmer → to cross the English Channel
- Separates → Europe and Asia
- Hindenburg Line between Germany and Poland (German defensive line in French territory during World War I)

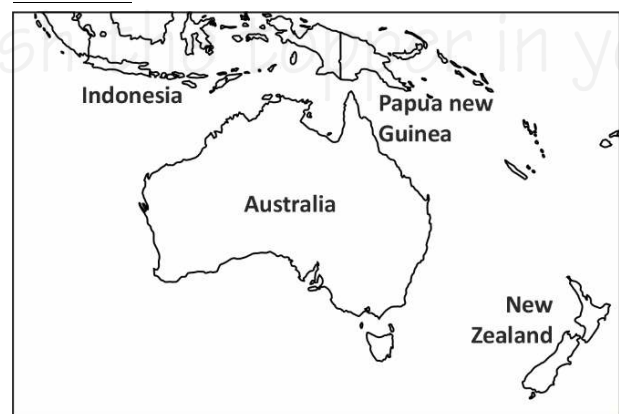
CYPRUS

- Underwater canyon → Eratosthenes

Scandinavian countries: Norway + Sweden + Denmark

- Nordic countries: Denmark + Finland + Sweden + Norway + Iceland
- Block mountain in Germany: Rhine Valley
- Vosges mountain in France

OCEANIA



ARCTIC

- India's first research centre → HIMADRI
- Estd: 2008

ANTARCTICA

- Highest peak: Mt. Vinson
- Indian Research Centre in Antarctica: Bharati, Dakshin Gangotri, Maitri → Estd 1984